DT 821.V3 1812x v.2
No. 3051.5
v. 2.

GIVEN BY
Winslow Lewis M.D.

J. Swaine Sc

A View in the Karree Mountains with Ostriches and Quaggas. see page 209.

London Published May 1st 1815 by Henry Colburn Conduit Street

TRAVELS

IN

SOUTHERN AFRICA,

In the Years 1803, 1804, 1805, and 1806,

BY

HENRY LICHTENSTEIN,

DOCTOR IN MEDICINE AND PHILOSOPHY, AND PROFESSOR OF NATURAL HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN; MEMBER OF SEVERAL LEARNED SOCIETIES; AND FORMERLY IN THE DUTCH SERVICE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN,

BY

ANNE PLUMPTRE,

*
7051.5
v.2.

VOL. II.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR HENRY COLBURN,
BRITISH AND FOREIGN PUBLIC LIBRARY, CONDUIT STREET, HANOVER SQUARE;
AND SOLD BY BELL AND BRADFUTE, EDINBURGH; AND JOHN CUMMING, DUBLIN.

1815.

PUBLIC LIBRARY
OF THE
CITY OF BOSTON

2241

2269

B. Clarke, Printer, Well Street, London.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE volume here presented to the public concludes the Travels of PROFESSOR LICHTENSTEIN. A Supplement, consisting of a civil and political History of the Colony, from its first establishment, the natural History of the Country, and a Geographical Description of it, will complete the Author's original plan.

In the first volume an apology was made for its not being accompanied by a map. This was done under the supposition that one had appeared in Germany, but through some omission was not sent with the copy of the German work, which the publisher received. We are now informed, that though it was intended by the Author that a map should have accompanied the first volume, it was not completed when that was given to the world, and only appeared in Germany with the second volume, consequently it could not be presented sooner with the English translation. A second map, elucidating the Author's journey into the Beetjuan country, the last part of his travels, will accompany the Supplement.

CONTENTS.

EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.....Page xi

PART IV.

JOURNEY FROM GRAAFF-REYNETT THROUGH THE KARROO TO THE CAPE TOWN.

CHAP. XXVII.

Departure from Graaff-Reynett.—Salutations of the Commissary-General upon this Occasion.—The Snow Mountains.—Description of the Country.—Remarks upon the Inhabitants, and on the Account given of them by Mr. Barrow.....1

CHAP. XXVIII.

Maljesfontein.—Houd-Constant.—Illness of the Commissary-General's Daughter.—Arrival of M. Péron at the Cape Town.—Farm of Cobus Van Heerden.—Great Utility of the Breed of Dogs in these Parts.—Madness unknown among them.—Description of the spotted Hyena.—Modes of snaring Wild Beasts.—Burger's excellent Farm at Rhenosterfontein.—His Son's Farm at Rietvalley.—Arrival at Towerfontein.—Four Bosjesmans killed.....11

CHAP. XXIX.

Remarks upon the Eland Antelope...Various Particulars respecting the Ostrich.—Also respecting the Lion, with two Anecdotes of Lion-hunters.—Loss and Recovery of three Horses.—De Clerk's Farm at the Source of the Chamka.—Extraordinary Fertility of the Spot.—On the Nieuweveld Mountains.....23

CHAP. XXX.

Extract from the Journal of General Janssens.—Journey of the General and his Party into the Country of the Bosjesmans.—Their Arrival at the Great-river, or Orange-river.—Met there by a Party of Bosjesmans.—Observations of the Author upon these People.....37

CHAP. XXXI.

Extract from the Journal of General Janssens continued.—A River Horse killed, but carried away by the Stream.—Efforts of the Colonists and Bosjesmans to retrieve it.—Affecting Account of the Eagerness shewn by the Bosjesmans to save one of the Colonists from being drowned.—More Particulars respecting the Bosjesmans.....53

CHAP. XXXII.

Continuation of the Commissary-General's Journey through the Karroo.—The Wandering Men.—Visit to De Beer's Farm in the Kweek Valley, among the Black Mountains.—Character of this Man.—Otto's Place upon the Cat-river.—A Hottentot's Manner of explaining the Proportions of Time.....63

CHAP. XXXIII.

Continuation of the journey over the Karroo.—Rugged Valley among the Black Mountains.—Wolvefontein.—The Zoute Vlakte.—Account of a Drunkard there.—The Rietfontein.—An old Soldier mistakes the Author for one of Prince Lichtenstein's Family.—His unfortunate Situation.—Pinaars Kloof.—The Klipfontein.—Draay.—The term Little Ride, as used by the Colonists, explained.—Mode of conducting Auctions.—Valley of the Hex-river.—Sumptuous Entertainments given by the rich Colonists.—Some of the Dishes described.....73

CHAP. XXXIV.

Arrival of the Party at Goudinie.—Petition presented to the Commissary-General by the People of that Country respecting a Missionary.—Some Observations upon the African Missionaries in general.—Return to Roodezand.—Roodezand-Kloof.—The Country about the Berg-river. Reflections on the Tenures by Fief, and the Frechold Tenures, in the Colony.....86

CHAP. XXXV.

Waggon-maker's Valley.—French Refugees settled on the Berg-river.—The Village of Paarl.—The Paarl Mountain.---Drakenstein.---Fransche hoek.---Illness and Death of the Author's Friend, C. H. Leiste.---Burgersdrift on the Berg-river.---The Author near being drowned there.---Stellenbosch.---Hottentot's-Holland.---Arrival of the Party at the Cape-Town.....95

PART V.

JOURNEY TO ZWELLENDAM AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Preparations for War at the Cape.---Plan of Defence formed by the Governor.---Occasion of the Author's present Journey.---Meyburgh's Farm on the Eerste-river.---Captain Morkel's Farm.---Hottentot's-Holland Kloof.---Plants growing there.---Palmiet-river.---An Englishman, by name Partridge, drowned there.---Houhoek.---The Bot-river.....107

CHAP. XXXVII.

Visit at the House of M. Otto.---Mirth among the young People there.---Discussion concerning the African Women.---Bavian's Kloof.---Zoetemelk's Valley.---The Post-holder, Theunissen.---Passage over the Breede-river.---Zwellendam.---Botanical researches about the Devil's-Bush.---Plants collected there.---Rotterdam.---Account of the old Blind Botanist, John Andrew Auge.....122

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Return to the Cape Town.—Ziekenhuis.—The Black Mountain.—The Hot Springs.—Doctor Hassner's Establishment there.—Account of the Wax Tree, and Manner of preparing the Wax from it.—Military Regulations made by the Governor.—The Author appointed Surgeon-Major to the Hottentot Battalion.—Terrible Epidemic Disease among the Troops.—Explosion of the Laboratory at Zwellendam.—Departure of the Commissary-General De Mist for Europe. 187

PART VI.

JOURNEY INTO THE COUNTRY OF THE BOSJESMANS, THE CORANS, AND THE BEETJUANS.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Division of the Colony into several new Districts.—Journey of the Landdrost Van de Graaff to the Sack River, in 1804.—The Author engaged by General Janssens to accompany the Landdrost in a longer Journey.—His Departure.—The Tiger Mountain.—On African Husbandry.—The Berg River, and the Acorus-Palmita.—Roodezand's Kloof. 149

CHAP. XL.

Stay at Tulbagh.—Mostertshoek.—The Warm Bokkeveld.—The Karroo.—The Paardeberge.—The Hanglip.—The Ongeluk River.—The Goudebloem's River.—The Geitjes, a particular Species of Lizard, held to be very noxious.—The Wind-Hill.—Unwelcome Tidings received at the Foot of the Roggeveld Mountains.—Fine View from the Summit of these Mountains. 159

CHAP. XLI.

The Jackal's Fountain.—Disagreements among the Colonists.—Trial of the Field-Cornet Olivier.—His honourable Acquittal, and Reinstatement in his Office.—Visit from a Party of Caffres.—The Rosin Tree.—Farther Depredations of the Bosjesmans.—The Bonteberg.—The Riet River.—Extraordinary Manner in which a Lion was killed by the Colonist Van Wyk.—Seldery Fountain.—Channakraal.—Great Draught of Fish.—Quagga Fountain.—Sack River's Gate.—Kicherer's Missionary Institution.—The Missionary Christian Botma. 171

CHAP. XLII.

More Conflicts with the Bosjesmans.—Two Men wounded by them.—The Case of one particularly described.—Conspiracy of some Bosjesman Servants to murder their Master.—Consequences of this Conspiracy.—A Scheme proposed to the Governor, for endeavouring to civilize these Savages.—Obstacles to its being carried into Execution.—Description of the Bosjesman Country.—Farther Particulars respecting the Manners, Customs, and Habits of the Bosjesmans. 188

CHAP. XLIII.

The Travelling Party assembled.—Departure from the Sack River.—The Latitude of this River ascertained.—Kopjesfontein.—Patryssefontein.—Lion's Fountain.—The Author and a Party go in Search of Captain Goedhart.—Description of the Karree Mountains.—Large Flock of Ostriches and Quaggas.—Hunting Parties.—Unfortunate Death of Krieger, killed by an Elephant.—His Grave. 201

CHAP. XLIV.

Great want of Water.—The Salt Lakes.—Jokes among the Travelling Party.—The Modderfontein.—Several Meetings with Bosjesmans.—The Great River's Gate.—Arrival at the Orange River.—Description of the River.—Arduous Passage over it.—Visits from Bosjesmans and Caffres on the other Side.—Bands of Hottentot and European Robbers inhabiting the Country.—The Small Pox reported to be raging among the Savages.....214

CHAP. XLV.

Departure from the Orange River.—Another Meeting with Bosjesmans.—Precocity of their Children.—A Hottentot Wedding.—Description of the 't Gorrah, a Hottentot Musical Instrument.—The Broken Red Rock.—Striking Curve of the River.—Rencounter with some Missionaries.—John Matthias Kok.—Different Climate of this Country.—The Hottentot Republic.—Laauwaterskloof.—Mode of Worship of the Missionaries...229

CHAP. XLVI.

Departure from Laauwaterskloof.—Enormous Swarm of Locusts.—Some Remarks upon these Animals.—The Rietfontein.—Account of Cornelius Kok.—Probably known to Le Vaillant.—Description of the Coran Hottentots.—Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot Villages.—Vast Quantity of Wild Animals.—Witwater.—Leeuwenkuil.—The Missionary Anderson.—Account of his Institution.....250

CHAP. XLVII.

Departure from Leeuwenkuil.—Ongeluksfontein, why so called.—Grotesque Appearance of the Travellers.—Remonstrances of the Party against the Prosecution of the Journey.—Two Hottentots murdered by the Bosjesmans.—Their Families rescued by the Travelling Party.—John Bloom's Fountain.—The Dogs of the Bosjesmans.....262

CHAP. XLVIII.

The Caves of Sibihlong.—A Buffalo shot.—Stompjesfontein.—Batavian Deserters.—Hunting the Giraffe.—Extraordinary Manner in which this Creature moves.—A young one shot.—Maputi.—Rissipien.—The Valley of Koossi.—More Hunting of Giraffes, and Dangers encountered by the Author in Consequence.—Arrival of the Party in the Country of the Beetjuans.....275

PART VII.

STAY WITH THE BEETJUAN TRIBE OF MAATJAPING BY THE RIVER KURUHMAN, RETURN TO THE CAPE TOWN, AND VOYAGE TO EUROPE.

CHAP. XLIX.

First Interview with some Beetjuan Herdsmen.—Arrival at the Residence of the King Mulihawang.—Visit of the King to the Travellers.—Friendly Intercourse with the Savages.—Solemn Audience given by the King.—Description of the Town.—A House described.—Visit to the High-Priest.—Names of Individuals.....288

CHAP. L.

Dinner given to the King of the Beetjuans at the Camp.—Conversation with the three Princes.—Their Confidence in the Europeans.—Traffic with the Natives.—Visits from the Women.—The King's Wives.—The Traffic continued.—Slaves offered for Sale.—A Dance.—Embarrassing Proposal made by the King.—Motives for a hasty Departure from the Country.....301

CHAP. LI.

Departure from the Beetjuan Country.—The Fountain of Klaborngani.—Information concerning the Beetjuan Tribes.—Their Modes of Life, Cloathing, and Ornaments.—Their Institutions, their Manner of making War, and various other Particulars.320

CHAP. LII.

Return to the Colony, amidst various Hardships and Privations.—The Author obliged to abandon his favourite Horse.—The Travellers joined by two young Beetjuans.—Some of the party ill with eating Bulbs.—The Dancing and Music of the Corans.—Dangers in repassing the Orange River.—The Red Ebony Tree.—Fruitless Endeavours to shoot River-Horses, and to catch Gerboas.—Baviansbak.—Eruptive Disorder among the Cattle.—Sufferings of the Travellers from Wet and Cold.—The Leeuwenfontein.—The Silurus Anguillaris.—The African Wild-Goose, and its remarkable Nest.—Small-pox among the Bastard Hottentots.—Arrival again at the Sack River.—Extraordinary Train of Caterpillars.—The Roggeveld.—The Karroo.—Arrival at Tulbagh.....334

CHAP. LIII.

A Leopard caught alive by a Colonist.—Fight between him and the Dogs.—Return of the Author to the Roggeveld, to spread Vaccination among the People.—Poorness of Living among the Colonists here.—Their Devotion.—A Hottentot killed by the Author's Side, shot by a Bosjesman with a poisoned Arrow.—Return again to Tulbagh, and afterwards to the Cape Town.—Death of Kok.—A new Journey over the Black Mountain to the Bosjesveld and the River Zonder-end.—The Colony attacked by the English in 1806.—Capitulation of the Dutch Troops.—Departure from the Cape.—Stay at the Island of St. Helena.—Return to Europe.....351

A Map
of the European Territory of the
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE
Compiled & Sketched
FROM
Personal Observation
From the latest Surveys Made by Order of the
DUTCH GOVERNMENT,
& From the best Old Materials
BY H. LICHTENSTEIN.
Engraved by W. Hansom, 4, Mary at Bloomsbury
Lower Roggeveld
Outer Roggeveld
Middle Roggeveld
Little Roggeveld
Nieuweveld Mountains
Karroo
Hantam mountain
Maskama
Bidouw
Cold Bokkeveld
Warm Bokkeveld
Zwartland
Groene Land
Saldanha
Table Mt.
Cape Town
Stellenbosch
Zwellendam
Black Mountains
Kango
Zwellendam
Zoetendal Valley
Cape Agulhas
Cape of Good Hope
St Sebastians Bay
Fish Bay
St Blaize or Mossel B.
Plettenberg Bay or Normans B.
Algoa Bay
Cape des Ricifs
Kowie River Bay or Content B.
Tarka
Bambus Mountains
Agter Bruintjes Hoogte
Camdeboo
Black Ruggens
Winter Mt.
Blands Mt.
Graaff Reynet
Boundary of the Colony
CAFFRE COUNTRY
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
Longitude East of Ferro
London Published March 31st 1811 by H. Colburn Gentlemans Street

EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.

In casting the eye over this map, it will immediately be seen that it differs very materially from that given by Mr. Barrow with his work, as well as from Mr. Arrowsmith's, although the latter, with respect to the line of the coast, is an improvement upon the former. The incorrectness of Mr. Barrow's, notwithstanding that it is infinitely to be preferred to all the older maps, must be so obvious to every traveller in the country, that it was impossible the liberal spirit of the Dutch governor should not be anxious to procure a more complete and correct map of the country. Under his patronage therefore the materials already in existence were first attentively revised, with a view to correcting the errors they contained; and in the second place, the southern coast was carefully examined by some very intelligent and experienced sea-officers, in several voyages which they made from Table Bay to Algoa Bay. The results of these researches were then thrown together on a very large scale, and laid the foundation of the present map. The journey taken by the Governor himself, in which he, as well as his aide-de-camp, Captain Paravicini di Capelli, directed their attention extremely to correcting what was erroneous in Mr. Barrow's map, furnished a stock of materials, which has contributed essentially towards accomplishing the object in view, while the observations which I made in my different journeys have still farther promoted it. Neither in the journey of General Janssens, however, nor in my first with the commissary De Mist, were any astronomical observations taken to ascertain the precise situation of different places; this was only done in my third journey, when I was favoured by the government with some excellent instruments for this purpose, by means of which the situations have been ascertained with a precision which renders the map, as far as my journeys are concerned, one on the veracity of which a safe reliance may be placed.

In a map where, like the present, a large tract of country of several thousand square miles is included within a very small space, great accuracy in the very minute details cannot reasonably be expected. With the greater justice, however, if this be allowed, may the utmost accuracy be required as to the outline and form of the country, as to the principal chains of mountains, and their respective connexions with each other; the rather, since it should seem that the causes of many peculiarities in the climate of Southern Africa, of many properties in the soil, nay, the forms of the mountains themselves, are to be sought for in the directions of these chains, and in their relative

connexions. The complete developement of these particulars is reserved for that part of my work which will treat of the geography and natural history of the country. I shall here only throw together such remarks as are necessary for a general explanation of the map.

Two great chains of hills run parallel with the western coast, having between them and the coast a sandy plain from five to ten miles in breadth. From the easternmost of these two chains branch off three others, running in a direction parallel with the equator, between which are the like number of terraces, including altogether a space of between two and three degrees of latitude. The two southernmost of these chains are united at several points with the western, and form the vast ridges which, under the name of the Black Mountains, run like a steep wall from west to east, broken only at intervals by the streams which flow through them from the Karroo. The two principal of these ridges terminate at Kromme River's Bay, and at Algoa Bay; smaller branches from them run down to Mossel Bay, and Plettenberg's Bay. The level country between the southern ridge and the coast constantly decreases in breadth from the spot where this ridge branches off from the western mountains, till it is lost at Kromme River's Bay. Towards the north, several long and spacious valleys run between the ridges of the Black Mountains, the principal of which are Kochman's kloof, Kango, the valley of the Elephant's river, and Long kloof. It is only at a few points, and even at these not without some danger and difficulty, that the Black Mountains can be crossed to the terrace north of them, and which is some thousand feet higher than the other two terraces, the mention of which occurs so often in these volumes under the name of the Great Karroo. This plain, or terrace, occupies the whole of that very large space lying between the Black Mountains and the third great branch from the western hills, called the Nieuweveld's Mountains. These latter again unite themselves after running for a long extent from west to east, with another chain of mountains running from north to south, forming at their junction that remarkable knot of hills the Snow Mountains. The Nieuweveld Mountains are called by Mr. Barrow the highest in Southern Africa. They are, however, only the highest laid down in his map and in mine. Further north, running in the same direction from west to east, lie the Karree Mountains, the situation of which will be shewn in a second map destined for this work, accompanying the more ample geographical description of the country.

As to what concerns the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, all is here given as distinctly as the small scale of the map would permit. It is my purpose with the last part of my work to give a map of the Peninsula of the Cape upon a tolerably large scale. I must with confidence lay claim to greater correctness than Mr. Barrow, yet the situation of Saldanha Bay is still not absolutely certain. In Mr. Barrow's map it is undoubtedly placed some minutes too much to the south; in my original map of the Cape it was on the contrary too much to the north, which I must impute to a mistake in the engraver. I have therefore taken the arithmetical medium between four

situations given, each differing essentially from the other, and placed the bay accordingly, so that the distance from the Cape Town and from Tulbagh agree with it very accurately.

If farther, I can speak with confidence of having given the country from the mountains of Hottentot's-Holland, Stellenbosch, and Paarl, to the sources of the Elephant's River with the utmost correctness, I will not pretend to say the same with respect to the parts beyond. The course of the Elephant's River, indeed, with our route through that district, is corrected as much as possible, but there lies to the west of it, near the coast, a considerable tract of land, which I have been obliged to take chiefly from Mr. Barrow's map, and for the correctness of which I cannot therefore be myself answerable. The case is the same from the hills eastward of the Elephant's River* to the Lower Bokkeveld, which I never travelled through, and have only given from the best information I could obtain. The country about the Khamies Mountains, and the Koper Mountains, is still in great measure unknown land, and, with the parts north of them, must be more accurately examined before any thing determinate can be stated with regard to them. The country westward from Cape Agulhas to the Roggevelds, particularly about Tulbagh and the Hex River, is another district on which I can rely with confidence that it is very correctly given. I travelled through it three times, and for the most part ascertained the situations of the places from astronomical observations made on the spot. The Karroo and the countries bordering it I can also answer are here given with particular care. The country on the coast, south of the Black Mountains, is the part of the colony by far the most visited, and little remains therefore to be corrected and improved with respect to this part, unless by giving particular and enlarged maps of the different districts. Excepting some errors in the situation of the bays, Mr. Barrow's map may here be of much use. Much more correction is still requisite as to the borders of the Caffre country: all the merit I can here take to myself is, that my map is not so replete with errors as Mr. Barrow's; I am far however from saying that there is no room for improvement in mine. The situation of the mountains and rivers is only here corrected as far as concerns their relative distances from each other, and their courses; this may particularly be said of the course of the Great Fish-river from Agterbruintjeshoogte and Zwagershoek. The situation of Graaff-Reynett is ascertained from an astronomical observation by an English engineer, and the situation and form of the Snow Mountains, as well as of the country north of them, is laid down with no small care and trouble, from comparing the best sources of information that could be procured. The naked and barren Nieuweveld's Mountains were never visited by me, nor can I say any thing concerning

* It must be observed that I speak here of the Elephant's River on the western side of the colony, not of that river of the same name to the south, which runs between the two ridges of the Black Mountains.

the interior of them. I can only say that the representation of them in the map is correct as far as concerns their southern face, bordering on the Karroo. The depths of the water from the Agulhas bank along the rest of the coast are given from Mr. Arrowsmith's map, which may be considered in this respect as very good authority.

H. Lichtenstein.

ERRATA.

Page 16, line 21, for *though* read *so that*.
54 — 18, for *it*, read *he*.
107 — for *Chap*. 37, read *Chap* 36.
122 — for *Chap*. 40, read *Chap*. 37.
124 — 29, for *retrogade*, read *retrograde*.
127 — 2, between *ha* and *ssen*, add an *u*.
161 — 10, for *schurfederge*, read *schurfedeberge*
192 — at the bottom add *made*.
197 — 26, for *accessray*, read *accessary*.
229 — 13, between *and* and *were*, add *we*.
252 — 2, for *gryttus* read *gryllus*.
263 — 18, after *wash* add a comma.

INTERESTING NEW WORKS,

PUBLISHED BY HENRY COLBURN, CONDUIT-STREET, LONDON.

Voyages and Travels.

1. TRAVELS THROUGH NORWAY and LAPLAND, in the Years 1806, 7, and 8. By LEOPOLD VON BUCH, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Berlin. Translated from the German by JOHN BLACK. With Notes, and some Account of the Author, by PROFESSOR JAMESON. 4to. with Maps. 1*l.* 16*s.* boards.

Von Buch, like the celebrated Humboldt, is a Prussian, and a man of sense, enterprise, and observation. His Travels through Norway and Lapland contain much curious and valuable information.—*Edin. Rev.*

2. VOYAGES AND TRAVELS IN VARIOUS PARTS OF THE WORLD, during the Years 1803, 4, 5, 6, and 7. By G. VON LANGSDORFF, Aulic Counsellor to his Majesty the Emperor of Russia, Consul General at the Brazils, &c. in 2 handsome vols. 4to. with 21 Engravings and a Map. Price 4*l.* 10*s.* in bds.

Vol. 1. contains the Voyage to Brazil, the South Sea, Kamschatka, and Japan. 2. The Voyage to the Aleutian Islands and North-west Coast of America, and Return by Land over the North-east Parts of Asia, through Siberia to Petersburgh

The Second Volume is sold separately, price 1*l.* 17*s.* 6*d.* *boards.*

For an account of this valuable and interesting Voyage round the World—See the *British Critic*, &c.

3. TRAVELS IN THE MOREA, ALBANIA, and other Parts of the OTTOMAN EMPIRE. By F. C. POUQUEVILLE, M.D. Member of the Commission of Arts and Sciences, and French Resident at Janina. Translated by ANNE PLUMPTRE. With Engravings. 2*l.* 2*s.* bds.

This Volume will be found highly curious and valuable, being collected by the Author during a long residence in these interesting countries, and describing at large their productions, the manners, customs, religion, and commerce of the inhabitants, &c. &c.

4. LETTERS from the MEDITERRANEAN, containing a civil and political Account of SICILY, TRIPOLY, TUNIS, and MALTA, with Biographical Sketches, Anecdotes, and Observations, illustrative of the present State of those Countries, and their relative Situation with respect to the British Empire. By EDW. BLAQUIERE, Esq. Two large volumes 8vo. with Maps. Price 28*s.*

Mr. Blaquiere has produced an interesting and considerably important Work.—*Eclec. Rev.*

Mr. Blaquiere has given a more minute, full, and entertaining picture of these countries than any of his competitors.—*Edinburgh Rev.* 43.

5. TRAVELS in the CAUCASUS and GEORGIA, during the Years 1807 and 1808. Performed by Command of the Russian Government. By JULIUS VON KLAPROTH, Aulic Counsellor to his Majesty the Emperor of Russia, Member of the Imperial Academy of Sciences at St. Petersburgh, &c. 4to. Price 2*l.* 2*s.* boards.

M. Klaproth is entitled to the most unqualified praise for his exertions, and for the important information which he has collected; and we promise those who may be inclined to peruse this work, that they will be rewarded by much amusement and instruction.—*North Brit. Rev.* No. 2.

6. SICILY AND ITS INHABITANTS. Observations made during a Residence in that Country in the Years 1809—10. By W. H. THOMPSON, Esq. 4to. With Engravings, 31s. 6d.

7. TRAVELS IN GREECE, PALESTINE, EGYPT, and BARBARY, during the Years 1806 and 1807. By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND. Second Edition. Two vols. 8vo. Price 28s. Ditto in French, 24s.

8. TRAVELS IN EUROPE AND AFRICA. By Col. KEATINGE. One vol. royal 4to. Illustrated with numerous Plates.

History, Biography, &c.

1. An AUTHENTIC NARRATIVE of the INVASION of FRANCE in 1814. By M. DE BEAUCHAMP, Author of "The History of the War of La Vendée."

The political and military annals of nations have never supplied such interesting subjects for the contemplation of mankind as are united in the description of this astonishing epoch, in which are exhibited the most memorable events and the most affecting incidents that were ever produced by the sword of war, or recorded by the pen of history.

2. MEMOIRS of LADY HAMILTON, drawn from original sources, and comprising many new and authentic Anecdotes of various distinguished Personages; among whom are the King and Queen of Sicily, Sir Wm. Hamilton, the late Lord and the present Earl Nelson, the Earl of Bristol, the Duke of Queensberry, &c. &c. In one vol. small 8vo. Embellished with a fine Portrait, by Meyer, from an original Painting by Romney.

3. SECRET MEMOIRS of NAPOLEON BUONAPARTE. Written by one who never quitted him for fifteen years. Second Edition, 8vo. 12s.

This work has created an extraordinary sensation in Paris. It contains an infinite number of private Anecdotes—describes him in his retirement, in his fits of passion, in his artifices, and in all his various positions of the Field and the Cabinet—in society and in his Chamber. To this edition is subjoined—1. An Historical Survey of the Character of this extraordinary personage, drawn from his own words and actions. 2. The itinerary of Buonaparte from the period of his residence at Fontainbleau to his establishment on the Island of Elba. And, 3. An account of the Regency at Blois; with many curious and authentic Anecdotes.

N. B. These additions are also sold separately to complete the former edition.

4. RECOLLECTIONS OF ITALY, ENGLAND, and AMERICA. By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND. Editions in French and English. Two vols. 8vo.

5. AN HISTORICAL, POLITICAL, and MORAL ESSAY on REVOLUTIONS, Ancient and Modern. By the same distinguished Author. Editions in French and English. One vol. 8vo.

6. THE BEAUTIES OF CHRISTIANITY. By F. A. DE CHATEAUBRIAND, Author of "Travels in Greece and Palestine," "Atala," &c. With a Preface and Notes by the Rev. HENRY KETT, B. D. Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. In 3 vols. 8vo. price 31s. 6d. bds. Ditto in French.

7. HISTORY of the WAR in SPAIN and PORTUGAL, from 1807 to 1814. By GENERAL SARRAZIN, one of the Commanders of the Legion of Honour. Illustrated with a Map, exhibiting the Routes of the various armies. Octavo, 12s.

A more luminous view of the great scenes which occurred in Spain and Portugal will not easily be found; and it is but justice to the author to say, that while he has detailed the operations with the perspicuity of a man of science, he has treated the Commanders on both sides with great impartiality.

New Monthly Magazine.

8. MEMOIRS of GEORGE FREDERICK COOKE, Esq. late of the Theatre Royal, Covent-Garden. By W. DUNLAP, Esq. In 2 vols. 8vo. with a fine Portrait from an original Miniature, 21s. bds.

We have seldom been more amused and instructed than by the perusal of these volumes.

Theatrical Inquisitor, October.

9. MEMOIRS AND CORRESPONDENCE of BARON DE GRIMM and DIDEROT, from the Years 1753 to 1790. Translated from the French. The Second Edition, in 4 large vols, 8vo. price 2*l.* 16*s.* in bds The French Edition forms 7 vols. price 4*l.* 18*s.*

For some account of this highly curious and interesting work, see the Edinburgh & Quarterly Reviews.

10. MUSICAL BIOGRAPHY; or, Memoirs of the Lives and Writings of the most eminent MUSICAL COMPOSERS and WRITERS who have flourished in the different Countries of Europe during the last three Centuries, including the Memoirs of many who are now living. In 2 vols. 8vo. 24s. boards.

11. MEMOIRS of GOLDONI (the celebrated Italian Dramatist) written by himself. Translated from the original French by JOHN BLACK. Two vols. 8vo. price 21s. Ditto in French.

Gibbon, the Historian, has pronounced the Memoirs of Goldoni to be more truly dramatic than his comedies. Lord Byron has also pronounced the Life of Goldoni to be one of the best specimens of auto-biography It is replete with Anecdotes of the most distinguished persons.

12. MEMOIRS of SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS, Knt. late President of the Royal Academy. By JAMES NORTHCOTE, Esq. In 4to. 3*l.* 7*s.* 6*d.*

13. A BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY of LIVING AUTHORS, with a complete list of their Works in order of publication. One vol. 8vo.

14. KLOPSTOCK and HIS FRIENDS. A Series of LETTERS written between the Years 1750 and 1803. From the German, with a Biographical Introduction. By Miss BENGER, forming a Sequel to Miss Smith's Life of Klopstock. One vol. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

15. THE NEW MONTHLY MAGAZINE, and LITERARY REGISTER.—This interesting Miscellany, the first Number of which was published on the 1st of February, 1814, is printed in octavo, on good paper, with a clear type. Each Number contains six sheets, comprehending a quantity of matter exceeding an ordinary octavo volume of three hundred pages. Price only 2s. (forming a most acceptable present to friends abroad, to whom it may be regularly sent by applying to any Postmaster.)

TRAVELS

IN

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

PART IV.

JOURNEY FROM GRAAFF REYNETT THROUGH THE KARROO TO THE CAPE TOWN.

CHAP. XXVII.

Departure from Graaff Reynett.—Salutations of the Commissary-General upon this Occasion.—The Snow Mountains.—Description of the Country.—Remarks upon the Inhabitants, and on the Account given of them by Mr. Barrow.

AFTER a week's stay at Graaff Reynett, the preparations for continuing our journey being concluded, we left the Drosty early in the morning on the thirteenth of December. Although the Commissary-General had desired that the customary expenditure of powder in honorary salutations might be waved, yet the people could not be prevailed on to depart from their usual practice. The three two-pounders were fired, while a salutation of musketry from all the neighbouring houses intimated to the departing travellers the good wishes of the inhabitants for a safe and prosperous journey. The Field-Commandant Gerotz, with the Counsellor of State, accompanied the Commissary-General for a short distance; and a number of the inhabitants of the town, as well as of the neighbourhood, followed him, as a manifestation, after their fashion, of their gratitude and attachment to him. To

those who recollected how little of this kind of respect these people were in general accustomed to evince towards any government, the sentiments thus manifested could not be regarded otherwise than with the greatest pleasure, and hailed as a prosperous omen. The number of our company was from this place considerably diminished, since the young men who accompanied us in the former part of the journey quitted their service even at Bruintjeshoogte, and the Waldeck Jägers departed at Graaff Reynett to return to Algoa Bay. Captain Alberti, however, who had occasion to take a journey to the Cape Town, accompanied us the remainder of the way, to our no small satisfaction.

We directed our course at first northwards towards the Snow Mountains, that by means of this little circuit we might obtain a more accurate knowledge of that country. At the commencement of our route we followed the course of the Zondag's River, but soon quitted it, and, ascending by degrees, arrived in a few hours upon the first terrace of the hills which form the district of the outer Snow Mountains.

The whole range of hills which is included under this name forms a large group, at which the two great parallel chains from the west, with another not less extensive chain from the north-east, and a smaller from the south, are all united. The name in itself indicates a pretty considerable height, and, in fact, the highest point, called the *Compass Hill*, is, according to the calculations of Colonel Gordon, about three hundred feet higher than the summit of the *Komberg;* consequently, six thousand five hundred feet above the level of the sea. This hill is distinguished more particularly from all others in Southern Africa, by being less insulated; that is to say, it is surrounded every way by hills of a constantly decreasing elevation, till they are lost at length in the plain. On all sides, the slopes are gradual from the summit, so that the traveller may be constantly ascending for several days together, by tolerably commodious paths, without encountering any dangerous steeps, any deep chasms, or rugged precipices. The heights are all rounded like domes; the valleys are spacious and open; even considerable plains stretch in some places between one ascent and the next. The aspect of the whole mountain is rather naked and uniform, than wild and majestic: from the gentleness of the acclivity, and the level nature of the valleys, the water does not rush down in torrents, or form deep channels, but rather

sinks into the earth. To this circumstance the fertility of these mountains is to be principally ascribed. Not being intersected, like most of the other mountains, with deep wooded chasms, but presenting in many parts low marshy hollows, in these the horned cattle find excellent pasture; while the ridges and heights being scattered over with small aromatic plants, like those which are found in the Roggeveld, particularly the *cotula globifera*, by these the sheep are furnished with abundance of the most salutary nourishment. The climate in the higher parts is cold in winter, and deep snows fall, which continue to lie upon the ground for many weeks together. Notwithstanding this, the greater part of the country remains habitable:—the inhabitants of the few places that are not so, descend into some of the lower parts, where they have a *legplaats*, or winter habitation, for the short time that they are obliged to quit their more elevated situation. In this respect, the Snow Mountains have a very decided preference over the Roggeveld;—the weather, besides, in winter, though cold, is clear and bright, whereas in the Roggeveld there are often thick fogs, which are very injurious to the cattle. Whence this difference arises will be easily seen by those who pay attention to what has been said of the different forms of these hills, the former consisting of rounded domes, the latter of rugged flats.

Three considerable rivers have their sources in the Snow Mountains, which are constantly supplied with water the whole year round from the melted snows and the rain water. Towards the south flows the Zondag's River; towards the east several small streams, which at last unite to form the great Fish River; and at the foot of the mountains, on the north side, rises the Sea-Cow River: this flows after a while into the Orange River; and the latter, subsequent to this union, continues its course for more than a hundred miles, when it falls into the sea on the western coast. Both the other rivers run in a southerly direction:—a description of them, near the mouth of each, has been given in a former part of this work.

The uppermost stratum of the Snow Mountains consists of a large grained sandstone, intermingled at intervals with quartz. Lower down, they consist of a schist, varying in different parts exceedingly both in thickness and colour;—granite is no where to be found. The soil is throughout a stiff argile, which, as well as the sandstone, is in many parts extremely oxydated. Almost every where the ground is strewed over with loose stones, which

contribute essentially towards keeping it cool in summer, and assist no less in promoting the vegetation of the plants.

The advantages and disadvantages of this country almost point themselves out, from what is said above. There is no want of springs, and the country is therefore tolerably populous: it is very favourable to the breeding of cattle, and most of the inhabitants are in easy circumstances. There is very little land wholly useless, as in the plains of Camdeboo and Bruintjeshoogte, therefore, every one confines himself readily within his own allotted boundary, consequently is less in danger of being engaged in disputes with his neighbour. On the other hand, one of the disadvantages is, that, though the springs continue to flow the whole year through, they do not yield a great abundance of water, consequently the fields cannot in many parts be watered sufficiently for agricultural purposes. Where there is a supply of water, very good corn is grown, particularly wheat. But little fruit can be procured, partly from the want of water, partly from the nature of the soil. Not a tree grows on these hills; and Mr. Barrow's remark, that there are people here who never saw a wood, or even a copse, in their lives, is perfectly just and correct. In those places only, where the rivers begin to flow into the plains, are they shaded with mimosas and other little trees. In the higher parts, the beds of the rivers are often broad, and composed of an argillaceous schist; the stones in many places form a sort of steps, down which, during the rainy season, cascades rush from step to step in a very picturesque manner. In the summer time, when the streams cease to flow, the greater part of the springs are seen rising from the interstices of these steps.

The want of wood is here so great, that no supply can be had even for fuel, and the people are obliged to burn the dung of their cattle dried. The bleak wind which blows in winter is particularly adverse to the cultivation of nut or fruit trees; even the oak will not thrive. A still greater evil than any yet enumerated is the swarms of locusts which often overspread the country, devouring not only the corn but the pastures, so that not a leaf, not a morsel of green of any kind, is to be seen as far as the eye can reach. Game abounds, but for that very reason there are also a great many lions and leopards, which often do terrible mischief among the flocks and herds. But of all the enemies which the country has to dread, the Bosjesmans are

the most formidable. The smallest loss that can be expected from their maraudings must be estimated at five out of every hundred of the sheep and oxen annually. The inhabitants of the outer Snow Mountains are more particularly exposed to their incursions; and many a farmer has on a single occasion suffered such heavy losses, as to throw him several years behind hand in his circumstances.

The breeding of sheep is the most important occupation of the colonists in these parts. The sheep of this country, and of the Roggeveld, are the most weighty of any in the colony, and their flesh is reckoned the best flavoured. Some farmers have flocks to the amount of six or seven thousand, and few have less than three thousand. From the calculations already given, an estimate may easily be made of the great profits to be derived from such a stock. Lately, through the intervention of the commission for promoting the improvement of agriculture and the breeding of cattle, Spanish rams have been introduced, which have improved the breed so much, that many farmers have now excellent wool to bring to market. When the advantages to be derived from these improvements in the breed shall be more extensively known and allowed, so that it shall become a matter of general adoption, it will easily be seen what a vast source of profit must be opened to the colonists of these parts.

The cattle are an object of scarcely less profit to these people. The cows give richer milk than elsewhere, and in greater abundance; the butter made here is carried in great quantities to the Cape Town, where it is always eagerly bought up. Mr. Barrow reckons that a herd of fifty cows will produce at least a hundred pounds of butter in a week. I have been assured, however, that such a produce is only to be expected at the best time of the year, and under particularly favourable circumstances. The horses in this country are extremely subject to the prevailing murrain; none are therefore bred here; they are bought in from other parts.

The inhabitants of the Snow Mountains are a vigorous and cheerful race. The healthy coldness of the climate, affluence of circumstances, their frequent journeys to the Cape Town, and their exertions in the chace, have a decided influence upon them, as well as upon the inhabitants of the district of Hantam. It must not, however, be supposed that there is the very striking difference between them and all the other colonists that Mr. Barrow

represents: they share all the virtues and all the failings of their fellow-countrymen, only that they are, generally speaking, less indolent, and more peaceable than the rest. But among them also are individuals who are guilty of very great misbehaviour towards those who are under them, and towards the Bosjesmans—who even participated, and that with no light or sparing hand, in the fatal disturbances from which Graaff Reynett suffered so severely. The humour which the traveller himself happens to be in at the moment, as I can answer from my own experience, has often a great influence in the estimate he forms of those with whom he associates. In this country the people are seldom to be known but in their domestic capacity. The traveller enters with them immediately into the relationship of host and guest, and the more or less friendly reception he experiences, must unavoidably, unknown almost to himself, give a bias to his judgment. Not much accustomed to the visits of persons of distinction, the colonist is easily embarrassed,—he endeavours to conceal his embarrassment, under various ill-chosen deviations from his ordinary manner, or, to give himself an air of consequence in the eyes of the stranger, assumes the lordly manner which he exercises towards his slaves and Hottentots, and so presents himself under a much worse aspect than really belongs to him. On the contrary, should it happen that the traveller and his host meet in a favourable humour, the one enters with confidence, the other receives with hospitality; a pleasant conversation immediately commences; each is open and frank towards the other; and the whole visit goes off to the satisfaction of both parties. Thus the stranger forms his general judgment of the people of the country, according to the good or ill-humour in which he has happened to find the few families he has had an opportunity of seeing,—according to the auspicious or inauspicious circumstances under which he has visited them. Mr. Barrow, in his journey through the Snow Mountains, had the good fortune to be entertained by some of the most worthy and respectable people of the colony —the excellent Gerotz, the honest Van der Walt, Louis Van Wyk, Cobus Van Heerden, and others; and if he formed his opinion of the rest by these specimens, that opinion could not but be favourable. Equally respectable people are, however, to be found in every part of the colony; and Mr. Barrow, had he travelled under more propitious circumstances, would have met with them every where.

That my readers may know the dark as well as the bright side of the question, and may see how easily single experiments may lead to partial and prejudiced judgments, I cannot resist transcribing a passage from the journal of a friend of mine, which will place the inhabitants of the Snow Mountains under a very different point of view. This gentleman, an officer of rank, was travelling through the country upon government business in the winter season, when he came in the evening of a cold rainy day in July to a farm, whither he had sent to announce his intended visit, and where he consequently hoped to find things prepared in some order for his reception. To his great astonishment, however, the owner of the house was absent, he having gone that very day to his legplaats, as if purposely to avoid seeing and receiving his guest. The officer waited a long time before any one made his appearance from the house: at length a slave came forth, from whom, however, he could learn nothing, for the unfortunate creature was deaf and dumb. After awhile, he dismounted from his horse, and went into the house, half starved with cold. An old German invalid soldier, who served the farmer in the capacity of overseer of his slaves, who was lame with the gout, and crying out with pain, now crept from a corner: to him the officer addressed himself, begging some assistance in unsaddling the horses, and bringing in the effects. An old slave, with grey hair, immediately went out with the officer upon this business, the invalid calling after the latter to bid him beware of the slave, for he was a worthless wretch, and would steal whatever he could lay his hands on. Besides this grey-haired slave, and the deaf and dumb one, there was a third (who was also deaf, and had but one eye), with a fourth, who had only been there a few weeks, having been recently purchased at the Cape Town, who did not understand a word of Dutch, and was no less ignorant of every thing relating to the business in which he was to be employed: to complete the party, a little Bosjesman girl, who had wrapped herself up in a sheepskin, was crouching in a corner with the flock. With some difficulty a few chips of wood were collected together to make a fire, but they were unfortunately wet with the rain, and sent forth the most horrible exhalations. Though this was the house of one of the most substantial men in the country, not a candle was to be procured, and the guests were obliged to content themselves with the little light afforded by this smoaky fire. The host's bedchamber was locked up, and

the whole company, consisting of some officers, a small escort of dragoons, and several Hottentots, were obliged to pass the night without beds, nestling together round the fire. To complete their misfortunes, it happened to these good travellers, as sometimes happened to us in wet and bad weather, that on account of the roads being very slippery, the waggons could not keep pace with them, but were left much in the rear;—the company were obliged therefore not only to remain in this dirty, smoaky place, but to remain there destitute of every kind of accommodation, even of food. The ever-complaining invalid, however, gave them an invitation to make use of the sheep which was hanging skinned near the flock, saying that it was killed for the travellers. For want of any thing better, the party were obliged to accept of this invitation, and one of the European servants cut out some pieces, which were cooked, though in a very indifferent manner, since the house was wholly destitute of kitchen utensils: the meat was besides so lean, and so exceedingly ill-flavoured, that very little of it was eaten. To shorten in some measure this tedious night, the company entered into conversation with the little Bosjesman girl, as the only amusement attainable. She was not at all bashful, and answered with great naïvetè in broken Dutch, mixed with the Hottentot and Malay languages. She represented herself as very unhappy, and said she had once run away, and returned to her parents, but the *Baas* had sent after her, and brought her back. The people reminded her, she said, that she was much better off among the Christians than in her own kraal; but this she roundly denied, making many complaints of the treatment she experienced. The conversation was then turned to the lean sheep, on which the company had been just regaling themselves, when the girl very innocently related, that two had died of disease, and this was at the point of death when it was killed. The discovery was not very agreeable, and put the party so much the more out of humour, as they found from the lists given in to them upon their journey, that this farmer was the owner of flocks to the amount of seven thousand four hundred head. My infirm old countryman made many apologies upon the subject, saying that his master was indeed over and above stingy; the situation of the slaves, therefore, was truly lamentable, for he only brought such from the Cape Town as were to be purchased at a very cheap rate. As for him that had but one eye, that was indeed a mere accident, and

happened from his master having by mistake hit him one day somewhat too hard. It will easily be imagined that the company quitted this inhospitable retreat the moment that the waggons arrived.

It is scarcely necessary to observe how much to blame the traveller would be, even though he should by chance meet with a similar instance of inhospitality among the Snow Mountains, were he to consider the eulogium lavished upon them by Mr. Barrow as entirely unfounded; and yet this is a failing into which that gentleman himself has very frequently fallen. I have ventured above to hazard an opinion, that the case would have been different had he travelled under more favourable circumstances, but nothing could have been more impoliticly conducted than his whole journey. He had been but a few months at the Cape when it was undertaken, and he entered upon it totally unacquainted with the general habits and modes of life of the colonists, exceedingly prejudiced against them in every way, and very little acquainted with the Dutch language. He regarded every colonist as turbulent, seditious, and a disturber of the public peace, who must be judged according to the utmost rigour of the law, and with whom it was scarcely worth any man's while to make a farther acquaintance; and while this was the case on his side, the colonists on theirs considered him as a rigorous judge, as the delegate of a government which they did not love, and had grievously offended. To this may be added, that he brought with him the former Landdrost Meinier, who, as we have seen above, had neither motive or inclination to think favourably of these people, and whose presence was enough to crush any confidence that might be germinating in their bosoms. As Mr. Barrow, therefore, saw with the eyes of others, heard with the ears of others, it was very easy to represent every thing to him in the most unfavourable light, and to make the quiet and submissive appear as odious as the daring and rebellious. I am the more anxious to enforce these remarks, since, of all that this meritorious writer has published concerning the colony of the Cape, nothing has been read with greater avidity, or more eagerly treasured up in the memories of the readers, than his accounts of the ignorance, the brutality, the filthiness, and the perverseness of the African farmers. While his valuable remarks upon the nature of the country, upon the political importance of the colony, upon the Caffres, and many other not less important objects, are already nearly forgotten, every one

remembers that an African colonist will have his slaves and Hottentots scourged during the whole time that his pipe is burning out, and that he will make a fire under his draught oxen, when the poor tired animals can go on no longer; assertions, the universal untruth of which I am not in a situation positively to assert, but I can truly say that no instance of the kind ever fell under my observation. No where have these horrors been retailed with greater assiduity than in Germany; the journals and almanacks have been emulous who should bring forwards with the greatest adroitness, acts which, supposing them true, are in the highest degree disgraceful to human nature. I will not endeavour to trace out the motives of such a disposition, or examine whether these relations were prompted by pure humanity and compassion for the unfortunate sufferers: I shall be satisfied if I can succeed in leading the public to form a more correct opinion of the actual situation of the African colonists—in truth, not an enviable one.

It must not be believed that it is so very easy a matter to acquire an accurate knowledge of these people; it cannot at least be obtained in a single journey, particularly if that journey be performed on government business, and in the character of a magistrate. I only learned to form a correct estimate of the domestic lives of many, from travelling several years among them, from living among them for months together upon the most sociable and confidential terms. Much of what I thought I observed in this first journey, and had noted down, I found two years after very incorrect, and was forced to recant what I had written. To make this appear more clear and comprehensible, I need only observe, that in our own country one class of people is seldom accurately known by another; that it is even considered as an art for the higher classes to keep up any intercourse with the peasantry. How much more must this necessarily be the case, when an European of education goes among a set of rough Africans, where prejudices on both sides, and an ignorance of each other's language present many additional obstacles in the way of obtaining the desired information. I hope I shall be pardoned this digression; it was necessary that it should find a place somewhere.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Matjesfontein.—Houd-Constant.—Illness of the Commissary-General's Daughter.—Arrival of M. Peron at the Cape Town.—Farm of Cobus Van Heerden.—Great Utility of the Breed of Dogs in these Parts.—Madness unknown among them.—Description of the spotted Hyena.—Modes of snaring wild Beasts.—Burger's excellent Farm at Rhenosterfontein.—His Son's Farm at Rietvalley.—Arrival at Towerfontein.—Four Bosjesmans killed.

The first place which we visited in the district of the outer Snow Mountains, is called Matjesfontein. Excepting in a small garden close to the spring, not the smallest trace of a tree, or even of a bush, was to be seen within the whole circuit of the horizon. Two families who inhabit this place distinguished themselves by their hospitality, by their eagerness to serve us, and by the gentleness and mildness of their manners. We were met here by Mr. Stockestroem, the new Landdrost of Graaff-Reynett, who conducted us in the afternoon to Houd-Constant, the habitation of one James Olivier. The road to it was somewhat more hilly; and we passed a deep chasm, which presented us with a very unexpected and most pleasing spectacle. The passage from one steep to another was directly at the edge of the precipice, down which, in the rainy season of the year, rushes a fine cascade. At present we saw below us a dark chasm of more than a hundred feet in depth, the moist sides of which were cloathed with a beautiful verdure: down them trickled a small stream, which was lost at the corner of the hill in an inaccessible valley.

Our waggons had not been able to leave Graaff Reynett till very late this morning, two of the oxen belonging to them having been driven away in the night by the Bosjesmans, and others to supply their place could not be immediately procured. Some of the waggons had, besides, been overturned, through the awkwardness of the drivers, which contributed to retard them so much more, that it was midnight before they joined us. The place we were now at had been once inhabited by several families, but most of them quitted it, because they were so much annoyed by the Bosjesmans. As the

buildings were not very spacious, the greater part of our company were obliged, notwithstanding a pretty considerable degree of cold, to pass the night in the open air. At break of day some tents were pitched, and in one of them the Commissary-General installed the new Landdrost of Graaff Reynett with all due form into his dignity ; this done, that officer hastened back to take possession of it.

We ourselves set off at nine o'clock in the morning, under very inauspicious circumstances, to continue our journey towards the top of the Snow Mountains. The daughter of our chief, for some days before our departure from Graaff Reynett, had been attacked with a considerable degree of fever, which now began to assume a very menacing and alarming character. It was not possible to postpone our departure, and she herself was very unwilling to be separated from her father, and left in so inhospitable a place, under the care of her companions and the physician. A bed had been therefore prepared for her in one of the waggons, in the most commodious manner that the circumstances would admit; and thus was she to be conveyed from place to place. She was, however, so much fatigued with the first day's journey, that she was evidently at night much worse, and her situation was such as to occasion the most cruel apprehensions. It was besides impossible for medical aid to be administered with any considerable effect, since the requisite mediums for administering it were either entirely wanting, or were bad in their kind. For example, it was no trifling evil, that not a drop of water was to be had in the country perfectly pure, free from natron and other foreign matter. When the question was started, whether to remain where we were, or further to prosecute our journey, our poor sufferer assured us that she felt strong enough to proceed, and begged that she might be permitted to follow us. The whole company participated most sincerely in the trouble and anxiety of the afflicted father, and the following days, through the constantly increasing illness of the daughter, and the alarms on her account, added to the almost melancholy uniformity of the country, were among the most unpleasant of our whole journey.

A short time before our departure from Houd-Constant, a messenger arrived from the Cape Town, who brought dispatches for the Commissary-General, and also several letters for me from my friends there. By the same hand I further received a letter from M. Peron, who had just landed at the

Cape, in his return from a voyage to the South Sea. The sight of a literary foreigner, with whom I was then only united from a conformity of pursuits, would have been doubly delightful to me at so great a distance as I then was from all literary society; and a letter which it enclosed from General Decaen, Governor of the Isle of France, in order to introduce me to the personal knowledge of this well-informed and worthy naturalist, made me regret very much that I happened just at that moment to be absent from the Cape.

About noon we arrived at the habitation of Cobus Van Heerden, where we were entertained with as handsome a dinner as the poverty of the country would permit. Besides several sorts of game, fresh fruit grown upon the spot was set before us as a very great rarity. On the night before our arrival, our host's dogs had killed a large spotted hyena, which hunger attracted too near to the sheepfolds. The corpse of the animal, and of two dogs, who had lost their lives in the combat, were lying together on the field of action. The rest of the dogs had retired in a body to the shady side of the house, where they were licking their wounds. It would be difficult to find more resolute and courageous dogs than the breed which are cherished by the African colonists, and for this peculiar property they are indebted to the dangerous conflicts which they have such frequent occasion to sustain with the hyenas and leopards. At those farms where sheep are bred in any numbers, it is not uncommon to find from ten to fifteen large dogs, which are commonly so fierce, that it is not safe to go very near them, either by day or by night. They are fed with the entrails of the slaughtered sheep, but are commonly so lean and wretched in their appearance, that it is quite lamentable to see them. The race most in request is a large dog, something of the kind generally known by the name of the Danish dog: three of these are a sufficient match for the largest leopard. They are early trained to this practice, and are the more useful from their sparing powder and shot, which are often articles of great scarcity among the colonists, particularly if any delay occurs in the customary supplies arriving from Europe. At many farms the dogs will go out, three or four together, to the chace, to bring home game for their master; and in a country where game is abundant, they seldom fail to kill a hartebeest, a wood antelope, or a mountain antelope. In this case, one of them comes alone to the house, and is never quiet till some one goes with him to bring home the prey; the others remain

to watch it, that it may not be seized and carried off by the wild beasts. I was an eye-witness to an occurrence of this kind, at the farm of M. Meiburgh, on the Eerste river, where, in my presence, a dog ran up to his master, and made him understand by his movements that something was caught. The dogs were counted over, and it was found that two more were absent: this was a sufficient indication that they had gone spontaneously upon a hunting party. We followed the dog, and in about three quarters of an hour came to the spot where the two others were lying with a slain antelope. They had bit it in the throat, and had regaled themselves with licking up the blood as it flowed from the wound. The entrails were immediately taken out, and given to the hunters as their reward.

How exceedingly useful a companion the dog is to man in all countries, can nowhere be better attested than by the solitary African colonist; nowhere do all his properties, even those that belong to him in a somewhat wild state, seem so fully called forth as here. Not only must he keep away robbers and pilferers, but he must not shrink from encountering savage animals endowed with strength far beyond his own: instinct here comes to his assistance, and teaches him not to seize the enemy by the throat, but by the ear, by which means he can hold him much faster, and wound him in the mortal part much more securely.

It is not too much to assert, that without dogs, and such dogs, this country would be absolutely uninhabitable. By them the inhabitants are not only defended from their four-footed enemies, but they are an equal defence against the Bosjesmans. Nothing can be compared to their watchfulness: the leopard, the jackal, even the lion himself, are terrified with the barking of the faithful troop, and hasten to retreat. The colonists, who undoubtedly do adhere with great pertinacity to ancient habits, should not be arraigned in this instance, if they prefer the breed of dogs in question to all others, and keep them as pure as possible: it is certain that they degenerate exceedingly in various ways by the breed being mixed with that of the shepherd's dog. Dogs kept merely for their beauty, are not to be met with all over the colony, except that occasionally, though rarely, the shaggy pudel and the pointer are to be seen in the possession of Europeans at the Cape Town. The English have brought over Newfoundland dogs, as well as some others of the large and hardy breeds; but it appears as if the climate will not agree with them,

since it is universally observed, that they are soon seized with a sort of murrain, from which very few recover. Mr. Duckett, a well-informed English agriculturist, has made many experiments to introduce other breeds of dogs, but they have uniformly failed. It is very remarkable, that no example of madness among the dogs was ever known in the colony; an additional proof that this disease does not so much originate in the temperature of the atmosphere, as in other properties belonging to the climate. Perhaps the effect here noticed may be very much ascribed to the nature of the water, which, almost throughout the colony, is strongly impregnated with natron.

The spotted hyena, *hyäna crocuta*, is here called simply the wolf. It is a very common practice to call objects purely African by the name of any European object to which they have the nearest affinity. This animal is by far the most abundant of any among the beasts of prey in the colony; even in the chasms about the Table Mountain, there are so many, that the farms nearest to the Cape Town are often extremely annoyed by them; nay, in the year 1804, it once happened that a hyena came by night absolutely into the town itself, as far as the hospital. These animals keep, in winter, about the heights of the mountains, but in summer they frequent the marshy parts of the plains, which in that season are dry. Here they lurk among the high reeds to catch hares, viverrae, and gerboas, which in the hot season resort much to such spots for coolness, and to seek nourishment. The proprietors of the lands in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town make parties almost every year to hunt the hyenas, which are called wolf-huntings: of some of these parties I have myself partaken. There are in the plains, about the town, many low spots overgrown with large reeds: one of them is surrounded, and fire is set to the reeds in many places. When the animal becomes oppressed by the heat, and attempts to quit his retreat, the dogs which are stationed about fall upon him, and the sight of this combat forms the great amusement of the party. Besides the advantage of destroying these animals, another is derived from the reeds being burnt, that the ground always produces larger and stronger reeds the following year. Indeed, if the hyenas in the neighbourhood of the town are in some respects a great annoyance, they are not without their concomitant use: they eat up the carrion, and diminish very much the thieving, mischievous apes, and the crafty genet-cats. It is seldom that we hear in this thickly inhabited country of sheep

being killed by the hyenas, for they are by nature shy, and fly from mankind. No example is known of their having ever attacked a man; and often as I have myself met them by night, particularly between Constantia and the Wynberg, I always found them take to flight immediately. A circumstance with regard to these animals, held by many to be a fable, I can from my own knowledge aver to be a fact, that they appear by night to be much larger, and of a brighter colour than they really are; they even appear wholly white. I do not by any means pretend to account for this phenomenon, but I have been myself convinced by my own eyes of its truth. The natural colour of the species is a dirty white with irregular black spots; its heighth is about three feet and a half, its length about four feet; its hair is stiff and bristly, but longer and thicker on the back than in any other part; the head is less pointed than that of the striped hyena, but is carried in the same way, bent down, with the neck arched; and the creature is characterised by the same evil and malignant eye. It is asserted of this species of hyena, as of that in the north of Africa, that it partakes of both sexes, or changes its sex: but this idea arises solely from the circumstance, that often when very young it is extremely difficult to determine of which sex it is. Mr. Frederick Kirsten had once the goodness to send me twin foetuses, taken out of the body of a female hyena which was killed at his estate in the Wynberg. No difference whatever was to be discerned in their exterior, though it was impossible to determine to which sex they belonged; when dissected, however, it was very evident that the one was a male, the other a female. They were both of a dark grey colour, had perfectly the form and appearance of little puppies; and I observed, that, like them, they must be born blind.

At almost every farm is to be seen, at some little distance from the dwelling-house, a *wolvehuis*, as it is called; that is, a snare for catching hyenas. It is a building from six to eight feet square, constructed of rough stones, with a trap-door, and a bait within, which closes upon the same principle as a mouse-trap, on the animal attempting to seize the carrion within. Snares of the same kind are made to catch the leopard, only that they are closed by a beam from above, whereas the wolf-traps are quite open, because this animal neither springs nor climbs. While I was staying in the neighbourhood of the Paarl, a dreadful accident happened with one of these snares to a colonist, by name Lattaignant: he had just set it, and was creeping out on

all-fours, when the door fell upon his legs and broke them both. In some places spring-guns are set for the wild beasts, which are managed with very great dexterity. A tolerably deep trench is dug in the ground, in which lies the gun, to the spring of which a string is fastened, and this communicates with the bait. The end of the trench is spread out much wider, and the bait is laid in such a manner, that the animal in seizing it must be exactly in the direction which the ball will take. The crafty jackal alone sometimes manages to draw the bait out by the side so as to avoid the bullet. In the neighbourhood of the Elephant's river, on the western coast, it is a common practice to kill the hyenas with poisoned flesh. A tree grows there, which is peculiar to that part, bearing a fruit something like a nut, and this fruit, gathered unripe and boiled with the flesh, is an infallible poison to them. The tree is known under the name of wolfsbane. I never was able to procure a sight of it, and cannot therefore say whether the leaf has any resemblance to the laurel. As time and circumstances never permitted me to make an accurate examination of a dead hyena, I was obliged to content myself with cutting off the head of one, to add to my collection of skulls.

On the evening of this day we reached one of the highest habitations among the Snow Mountains, called Rhenosterfontein, belonging to a certain Barend Burger, who had been once a principal magistrate in Graaff Reynett, and had filled his office with particular rectitude and dignity. According to the universal suffrage, he was one of the most honest and intelligent persons in the whole colony, and in support of this opinion, it is to be observed, that very few farms could be compared to his. The fertility of this country, of which I have already spoken, is here, by means of an extraordinarily abundant spring, carried to its utmost height. Every drop of water that this spring yields is collected with the utmost care, and conducted about the lands by little channels, one of which is a mile in length, and leads to the richest part of the land. Extensive orchards produce excellent peaches, apricots, pomegranates, bananas, figs, grapes, almonds, and oranges, in the greatest abundance, and of the very best quality. In the lower parts were spread out the stubbles of very extensive corn fields, and in the evening numerous flocks and herds of sheep, goats, cattle, and horses, returned home from their pastures. Burger has employed a part of his wealth in building a dwelling-

house, such as is rarely to be seen in the colony, at least in a country so destitute of wood as the Snow Mountains; the houses here are in general built in the same style as the huts in the Roggeveld. Round about the dwelling-house are a number of small neat buildings for the slaves and Hottentots, for barns, storehouses, workrooms, &c. &c. Even in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, not many farms are to be seen that have a greater appearance of comfort and affluence. The mild and pleasing manners of the inhabitants of this place, the family harmony that reigns among them, and the healthy cheerful appearance of the slaves, all prove what a beneficial influence some refinement in the enjoyments of life has upon the whole moral conduct of mankind; indeed, every thing here reminded us strongly of the patriarchal mode of life. It was not without the sincerest regret that the next day we exchanged this truly agreeable abode for the accustomed fatigues and uniformity of African travelling.

We passed, in the course of the day, a small river, known by the name of the Buffalo's river, the banks of which we afterwards followed. We now saw, towards our right, the summit of the Compass Mountain, which Governor Plettenberg, accompanied by Colonel Gordon, ascended in the course of their journey in the year 1778. The name by which it is known at present was then given, because, with the assistance of the map, the whole country round may be reconnoitred from it. By continuing a west-north-westerly direction, keeping along the dry bed of the river, we came at length to the ruins of a pretty large farm, which had belonged to the brother of Barend Burger, but was now, from the drying up of the spring, totally deserted. It is one of the evils of this country, and one which renders many an apparently eligible speculation wholly abortive, that a spring which has yielded abundantly for time immemorial, will at length suddenly fail, and become wholly dried up. From that moment all the buildings erected upon the premises, all the gardens, all plantations of trees are lost; and what had perhaps cost the owner several thousand guelders, falls below any price that could be named: happy if the burden of debts contracted in the speculation does not press him to the ground entirely. Then must he, with all his household, his stock of sheep and cattle, his whole property in short, seek another habitation, and begin, as it were, the world anew.

Towards noon we were received in a very friendly manner at the Rietvalley, by the son of Barend Burger. This young man had not been long married, and, supported by his father, was beginning to improve his farm, which had been too much neglected by the former possessor. Here our invalid, who for the last two days had been in a very alarming state, first began to afford hopes of her recovery. The refreshments we had found at our last place of rest, with some strong medicines, perhaps even the gentle motion of her mode of travelling, and breathing the fresh air, all contributed to produce so happy a change. Here, for the first time since her attack, she enjoyed two hours of quiet and refreshing sleep, and from that moment her fever gradually subsided.

After performing the remainder of this day's journey, constantly descending, we came, towards evening, to the last place within the circuit of the Snow Mountains, which was inhabited by a son-in-law of Burger's. The old man had accompanied us to this place, and when we took leave of him, we remarked that he must find it a very great pleasure to have all his children so near him. His answer was, that it had indeed cost him a great deal of money to purchase so many places, but that it was amply repaid by the invaluable pleasure of having all his children and grand-children collected round him on a Sunday, and uniting with him in the solemn worship of the Supreme Being. The remainder of the Sunday, he said, was passed in walking about, or in cheerful conversation, and on the Monday morning they all dispersed, and returned to their respective homes and occupations.

The place where we then were is called Brakfontein, and the water has indeed so disagreeable a taste that is scarcely drinkable. The greater part of our company had, however, by degrees become pretty well reconciled to drinking bad water; on our journey to Hermannuskraal, we were once driven by excessive thirst to drink the water of a stagnant pool, which was so muddy, that we were obliged to strain the little we could procure through a cloth; since that time we had never experienced any nausea against the water when assailed by the cravings of thirst.

We came now to the Koub, as it is called, or the New-field. The latter name was given the country because it was the last ground inhabited by the colonists. It forms a part of the great Karroo, and is tolerably level, but, excepting in some few places, is for the greatest part of the year arid and

uninhabitable. We had therefore here not the most pleasant prospect imaginable presented to us, that of meeting with only two houses in the next seven day's journeys, the one was to be reached in a few hours, the other in two days. On the heights of the Snow Mountains we had always found the heat moderate, but here it rose to so insupportable a degree, that, as in the plain of Camdeboo, it seemed almost to ascend glowing to the sight from the naked and hard clay.

The sight of the last farm was therefore the more delightful to us, in proportion as it was a spectacle of which we were to be so long deprived. It is called the Towerfontein, or the *Enchanted Fountain*, * and was inhabited by a very kind and hospitable family, that of Jonathan Jacob van Aschwege. Here again it was striking to see what a paradise this country might be rendered, if every part were but well supplied with water. In the midst of the waste, one tolerably copious spring suffices to render a considerable extent of land exceedingly fertile. All sorts of fruit, pulse, and other garden products, grow in the utmost luxuriance, and those which are but of a moderate kind when first planted, in a few years improve astonishingly. The wine which the owner gave us was beyond all comparison superior to what we had drank at Graaff Reynett, and the almond trees were the largest we had seen in the colony. It is every where allowed that no ground is so fertile as the Karroo ground when it is well watered; so much the more is it to be lamented that the solitary and remote situation of this *enchanted spring* does not admit of the blessings it affords being turned to the utmost possible account. But such is its situation, that not the most distant hope appears of the profits which might be derived from the sale of many among the different

---

* In the same manner there are in many places about the colony mountains which bear the name of Towerberg, that is *Enchanted Mountains*. Mr. Barrow confuses this word with the English word *Tower*, and quotes thereupon, not very much to the purpose, a passage from Shakespeare, in which a hill is likened to a tower.

Above the rest,
In shape and gesture proudly eminent,
Stood like a tower. †

† It must be observed, that the German author here seems to make a mistake in the author Mr. Barrow quotes, since Mr. Barrow himself could hardly quote this celebrated passage of Milton as Shakespeare's. It is, besides, not a *hill*, but Satan that is likened to a tower.—TRANSLATOR.

productions here cultivated, being sufficient to defray the expenses of the very long and wearisome distance they must be transported to any market. The owner, therefore, confines himself principally to the breeding of cattle and sheep : from these his income is chiefly derived : a very small portion arises from the sale of raisins and other dried fruits.

The solitary situation of this place has, besides, this disadvantage, that it is with much more difficulty defended against the Bosjesmans and the wild beasts, both of which are of course the more abundant in proportion as the country is destitute of other inhabitants. The neighbourhood of this farm is often the theatre of terrible strifes with the Bosjesmans : and Van Aschwege related to me with great simplicity, as a matter of perfect indifference, that at only a few hour's distance, lying out in the open fields, were the skeletons of some Bosjesmans, who had been shot a few years before by the owner of the place, as they were stealing some of his oxen. Long as I had been anxious to procure the skull of one of these remarkable people, I entreated our host to permit some of his slaves or Hottentots to go and fetch me one of the skulls, for which I would give them something to drink : to this he willingly consented, but neither menaces or entreaties could prevail on any of them to earn the promised recompence. They declared they would much rather carry the heaviest burden all the way from Graaff Reynett, than the head of a dead man the distance of only a quarter of an hour. So universal, indeed, was this prejudice, that even the host himself, however obliging he was in all other respects, when I begged him to send me a skull by some opportunity to the Cape Town, peremptorily refused my request. All I could obtain was that one of the slaves should accompany me to the place where the skeletons were lying ; for this service he would not, however, accept money, but begged of me some article of old cloathing. At the place indicated, I found the bones of, as I supposed, about four men, but the carcases had been so torn, gnawed, and scattered about by the wild beasts, that I could with great difficulty find among the fragments parts of two skulls : these, for want of better specimens, I was forced to carry away with me as a great treasure. My conductor stopped at some distance, where he remained until I returned to him, nor would he offer to carry my burden for me a single step of the way.

It was already night when I rejoined our party, who had in the meantime

pitched their tents in the neighbourhood of the Buffalo's river. In one small spot in the river, we procured a supply of tolerably drinkable water: round it grew abundantly several sorts of *rhus*, which are here all comprehended under the one appellation of *Karreeboom*. From them the spot is often called *Karreebosch*. The number of traces of wild beasts, particularly of lions, which we found about the water, proved at the same time, that every thing which has life in this country must quench its thirst, and that probably farther on no water would be found. We, however, dispossessed these ancient proprietors of their right to the spot for one night; but in consequence of our usurpation, were assailed with such a howling and noise all around us, that to sleep was impossible; our cattle were rendered even more uneasy by it than ourselves. Towards evening a messenger arrived from the friendly Aschwege, bringing us a quantity of pulse and fruits, designed more particularly for the refreshment of the invalid. This messenger was the same Hottentot who had in the afternoon remonstrated the most strongly against the expedition to seek the Bosjesman's skull. I asked him whether he was not afraid to go by night among all the lions and other beasts of prey? He answered, pointing to his gun, that he knew very well how to shoot a lion through the body, but against a dead man's head there was nothing to be done. I will not venture to decide whether these superstitions fears of the natives belong naturally to them, or whether they have been instilled into them by the intruding white men. I am inclined to think, however, that the germs of them lurk in the souls of even the wildest and most uncultivated part of mankind; and 'tis not a very small degree of cultivation that must be requisite, to divest a whole people of their prejudices with regard to the mysterious power attached to the remains of the human body.

CHAP. XXIX.

Remarks upon the Eland-Antelope.—Various Particulars respecting the Ostrich.—Also respecting the Lion, with two Anecdotes of Lion-Hunters.—Loss and Recovery of three Horses.—De Clerk's Farm at the Souree of the Chamka.—Extraordinary Fertility of the Spot.—On the Nieuweveld Mountains.

On the following day we proceeded on our journey over a long extent of uniform dry, barren waste, stopping awhile towards noon at an ausspanplatze, called the Waayfontein. Here one of our guides had once found the skeletons of a leopard and a gemsbock together, which he adduced as a confirmation of the opinion that this sort of antelope can, with its long and pointed horns, strike at a wild beast so as to wound him mortally. The gemsbock, of which a more ample description will hereafter be given, is the most courageous of all the antelope tribe, and defends itself with a striking degree of boldness against the dogs, by which it is pursued. From the manner in which its horns grow, one may easily suppose, that by bending the neck very much, which the apprehensions of the animal itself will naturally urge, it may then drive its horns into a leopard, as the latter endeavours to spring upon its back, and wound the creature mortally.

The hardships of this hot and wearisome day's journey were, in a considerable degree, compensated by the number of wild animals, both great and small, that we saw. Among them were several troops of quaggas, hartebeests, gemsbocks, eland-antelopes, and ostriches, intermingled at times with steinbocks, hares, and partridges. Towards evening we met a jackal, a wild cat, and three wild boars. One of our guides, who had set off to hunt a troop of eland-antelopes, came back after some time, and announced that he had killed one of them. In order to see it, we were obliged to return back on our road the distance of a good hour, but we were amply repaid for our trouble by finding an ostrich's nest, in which were nineteen eggs. The eland proved to be a large male, the weight of which must have been not less than eight hundred pounds. This is the largest species of antelope, and

forms the next gradation to the ox tribe: its length is commonly from seven to eight feet,* and its height four feet, or somewhat more. The hair is of a light grey colour, and very thin, so that the skin, which is somewhat blackish, appears through. The whole form of the body and head is like that of the ox, only that it is more slender: its most striking distinction, however, is in the upright horns, which almost form a perpendicular with the forehead and nose: in the old animals the points even bend in a slight degree forwards. This is the only antelope that has the perfect tail of an ox. The boundary of the colony is the part principally inhabited by the elands; there they are sometimes found in groups of twenty or thirty together, but more commonly of about eight or ten, of which seldom more than one or two are males. They feed upon the same plants which, in inhabited parts, serve as food for the sheep and cattle. The aromatic properties of these plants seem highly salutary to all sorts of graminivorous animals. In cutting up the entrails of such as feed upon them, the odour of the plants in the stomach absolutely perfumes the air around. It is somewhat remarkable, however, that if gathered dry, the same plants have scarcely any smell: their strength is only to be discovered by the taste. The eland runs very swiftly, nor could it be overtaken by a horse, if its powers of continuing the race were equal to its swiftness; but it is soon wearied, and the peasants assert, that it is easier for a man to run down this animal than any other, even to hunt him to death. They add, as a very remarkable circumstance, that when killed in this way, the fat about the outer case of the heart, which in many weighs as much as five or six pounds, is always found in a liquefied state; and they consider this melting of the fat as the cause of the animal's death. The flavour of the eland's flesh is essentially the same as that of the ox: but it has a sort of accessary flavour, which becomes disagreeable if a man be constrained to feed upon the fresh-killed meat for many days together: when smoked it loses this flavour entirely, and the thigh-tongues, which have been described on a former occasion,† are a true *gourmandise*.

The distance that we were from the place destined to be our night quarters prevented our turning this booty to the best possible account. We

* Mr. Barrow calls them ten feet and a half long, but he must probably have included the tail.

† See Vol I. page 97, English translation.

however left one of our Hottentots with it, that he might cut away the best parts of the flesh; and when we arrived at our camp upon the Zont river, dispatched two more to assist him in bringing away the flesh and the skull. These new messengers, met their comrade by the way with a very trifling portion of the spoils: as soon as the evening began to close in, a lion, availing himself of the right of the strongest, had appropriated the greater part to himself.

Among the ostriches' eggs which we found, not many were eatable; the greater part had been brooded, and had already half-grown chicks in them. Our Hottentots did not consider this as any objection, and cooked them in the shells with mutton fat. Though this dish at first appeared extremely revolting, in the sequel I became perfectly reconciled to it, and was often not sorry to procure it.

The habits of the ostrich are so remarkable, and have been so imperfectly described by travellers in general, that I cannot forbear bringing together here all the knowledge I acquired upon the subject, both in this and subsequent journeys. I have noticed, on a former occasion,* a large flock of ostriches which we met in the neighbourhood of the Komberg. In that country the drought and heat sometimes compels these gigantic birds to leave the plains, and then they pursue their course together in large flocks to the heights, where they find themselves more commodiously lodged. At the time of sitting, there are seldom more than four or five seen together, of which one only is a cock, the rest are hens. These hens lay their eggs all together in the same nest, which is nothing more than a round cavity made in the clay, of such a size as that it can be covered by one of the birds when sitting upon it. A sort of wall is scraped up round with their feet, against which the eggs in the outermost circle rest. Every egg stands upon its point in the nest, that the greatest possible number may be stowed within the space. When ten or twelve eggs are laid, they begin to sit, the hens taking their turns, and relieving each other during the day; at night the cock alone sits, to guard the eggs against the jackals and wild-cats, who will run almost any risk to procure them. Great numbers of these smaller beasts of prey have often been found crushed to death about the nests, a proof that the ostrich does

* See Vol. I. page 110, English translation.

not fight with them, but knows very well how to conquer them at once by her own resistless powers: for it is certain that a stroke of her large foot trampling upon them is enough to crush any such animal.

The hens continue to lay during the time they are sitting, and that not only until the nest is full, which happens when about thirty eggs are laid, but for some time after. The eggs laid after the nest is filled, are deposited round about it, and seem designed by nature to satisfy the cravings of the above-mentioned enemies, since they very much prefer the new-laid eggs to those which have been brooded. But they seem also to have a more important designation, that is, to assist in the nourishment of the young birds. These, when first hatched, are as large as a common pullet, and since their tender stomachs cannot digest the hard food eaten by the old ones, the spare eggs serve as their first nourishment. The increase of the ostrich race would be incalculable had they not so many enemies, by whom great numbers of the young are destroyed after they quit the nest.

The ostrich is a very prudent, wary animal, who is not easily ensnared in the open field, since it sees to a very great distance, and takes to flight upon the least idea of danger. For this reason the quaggas generally attach themselves, as it were instinctively, to a troop of ostriches, and fly with them without the least idea that they are followed. Xenophon relates that the army of Cyrus met ostriches and wild asses together in the plains of Syria.

The ostriches are particularly careful to conceal if possible the places where their nests are made. They never go directly to them, but run round in a circle at a considerable distance before they attempt to approach the spot. On the contrary, they always run directly up to the springs where they drink, and the impressions they make on the ground in the desolate places they inhabit are often mistaken for the footsteps of men. The females, in sitting, when they are to relieve each other, either both remove awhile to a distance from the nest, or change so hastily, that any one who might by chance be spying about, could never see both at once. In the day-time they occasionally quit the nest entirely, and leave the care of warming the eggs to the sun alone. If at any time they find that the place of their nest is discovered, that either a man or a beast of prey has been at it, and has disturbed the arrangement of the eggs, or taken any away, they immediately destroy the nest themselves, break all the eggs to pieces, and seek out some

other spot to make a new one. When a colonist therefore finds a nest, he contents himself with taking one or two of the spare eggs that are lying near, observing carefully to smooth over any footsteps which may have been made, so that they may not be perceived by the birds. Thus, visits to the nest may be often repeated, and it may be converted into a storehouse of very pleasant food, where every two or three days as many eggs may be procured as are wanted to regale the whole household.

An ostrich's egg weighs commonly near three pounds, and is considered as equal in its square contents to twenty-four hen's eggs. The yolk has a very pleasant flavour, yet it must be owned not the delicacy of a hen's egg. It is so nourishing, and so soon satisfies, that no one can eat a great deal at once. Four very hungry persons would be requisite to eat a whole ostrich's egg; and eight Africans, who are used to so much harder living, might make a meal of it. These eggs will keep for a very long time: they are often brought to the Cape Town, where they are sold at the price of half a dollar each.

In the summer months of July, August, and September, the greatest numbers of ostriches' nests are to be found; but the feathers, which are always scattered about the nest at the time of sitting, are of very little value. I have, however, at all times of the year, found nests with eggs that have been brooded; the contrasts of the seasons being much less forcible in this part of the world than in Europe, the habits of animals are consequently much less fixed and regular. The ostriches sit from thirty-six to forty days before the young are hatched.

It is well known that the male alone furnishes the beautiful white feathers which have for so long a time been a favourite ornament in the head-dresses of our European ladies. They are purchased from the people who collect them, as high as three or four shillings each: they are, however, given at a lower price in exchange for European wares and clothing. Almost all the colonists upon the borders have a little magazine of these feathers laid by, and when they would make a friendly present to a guest, 'tis generally an ostrich's feather. Few of them are, however, prepared in such a manner as to be wholly fit for the use of the European dealers. The female ostriches are entirely black, or rather, in their youth, of a very dark grey, but have no white feathers in the tail. In every other respect, the colour excepted,

their feathers are as good as those of the males. It is very true, as Mr. Barrow says, that small stones are sometimes found in the ostriches' eggs; it is not, however, very common; and among all that I ever saw opened, I never met with one.*

The heat of the last day was sometimes as great as we had experienced in our fruitless journey to meet the Caffre king, or in the dreary plain of Camdeboo. It was judged highly dangerous therefore for our invalid, who was still very weak, to continue her journey by day, and we determined to adjourn the remaining twelve hours to the Lion's river, till the following night. The day was consequently devoted to hunting, to catching insects, and to the continuation of our journals; and as evening came on, the tents were struck, and preparations were commenced for proceeding forwards. When our horses, who, as usual, had been sent out to graze on the neighbouring heights, were to be driven home, three of them were discovered to be missing, nor were they any where to be found, notwithstanding that the most diligent search for them was immediately commenced; it was consequently presumed that they had been driven away by the Bosjesmans, fresh traces of whom were visible all over the country. The greatest part of our company nevertheless set off, whilst myself, with some others, remained behind to wait for the return of some new messengers dispatched in search of the horses. They returned just as the twilight came on; and indeed their arrival was most fortunately timed, since it was no longer safe for us to remain where we were, a lion having suddenly made his appearance at the distance of not more than thirty paces from us. We had now been twenty-four hours in possession of the place, the only one where water was to be found, and so long a time had prevented the rightful owners from coming to quench their thirst. Our number seemed, however, to alarm the lion, for he stopped, stared at us awhile, and then laid himself down. Our African guide immediately set about preparing to receive him, but said he must come nearer before he could fire at him with perfect security. But he soon rose up, went some steps back with a half growl, then laid himself down again,

* Some farther remarks of mine upon the ostrich may be found in the Brunswick Magazine for October, 1809, and in the thirty-second volume of H. G. Florke's Repertorium of the newest and most important researches in Natural History, 1811.

looked at us for several moments, rose up once more, and began to fly in the utmost haste.

On this occasion I learnt the following particulars, which in the sequel were confirmed to me by many experienced lion-hunters, and other persons of the most perfect credibility. The lion, like all other animals of the feline tribe, seizes his prey by a spring, and does not attempt to spring upon any man, or other animal, till he has measured his ground, and is at the distance of ten or twelve paces from him, when he lies crouching on the ground, previous to lancing himself forwards. Of this circumstance the hunters avail themselves, and it is a rule among them never to fire upon the lion till he lies down, at this short distance, so that they can take aim directly at his head with the most perfect security. If any one have the misfortune to meet a lion unarmed, his only hope of safety is in courage and presence of mind: he who flies is inevitably lost, but he who stands still is never attacked: he must not even stir, though he sees the animal approach, and crouch as if going to take his spring; that spring will not be hazarded, if the man have only courage enough to remain motionless as a statue, and look the animal in the eyes with perfect steadiness and composure. The erect figure of the man inspires the lion—supposing that he does not previously know by experience how easily a man may be subdued—his erect figure inspires the creature with respect and awe, and makes him distrust his own powers, an impression which is increased at every moment, by the body being kept perfectly still; but all is over if the least movement be made which seems either to betray fear of the lion, or to dare him to his own defence. The event proves that the animal can be as easily impressed with fear as the man; for, after some time, he rises, slowly retreats some steps, looking earnestly about him, then lies down again, then again retreats, till having thus by degrees got quite out of what he seems to feel as the magic circle of the man's influence, he sets off, and flies in the utmost haste.

How unanimously soever I was assured by persons in all parts of the colony of the truth of this statement, I cannot help being of opinion that the experiment has not very often been made: not that it seems to imply any contradiction in itself: the principal thing to be urged against it is, that it would not be very easy to find many men with sufficient firmness of mind and nerve to sustain such a rencounter. It must besides be allowed, that those

who may have had the courage thus to stand against a lion, were accustomed to the looks of the animal, knew all his ways and habits accurately, and by having for a long time pursued the hunter's life, were become hardened against dangers of the kind. Nor does it seem at all improbable, that the same thing might occur with any other animal as with the lion, provided the person had prudence enough first to weigh the danger with calmness, and strength of mind to wait the attack. A panther is too malignant; his rage too fiery: as soon as he thinks there is a possibility of attacking, he rushes blindly upon the enemy, as if sure of throwing him down and conquering him. If all that has been said from such very remote times, respecting the magnanimity of the lion, be not considered as wholly unworthy of credit, what is above related seems to me much more credible than a hundred of those tales.

Formerly, when lions abounded much more in these parts, and the colonists had not so fully learnt the art of managing them, large parties used to be formed for a lion-hunt. They sought to entice the animal into the plain, when they completely encircled him, and as soon as he endeavoured to make his way out, the person on the opposite side fired at him, when he, turning angrily round, was attacked from all quarters with such a shower of balls, that he fell. At present, the people generally go singly in chase of the lion; nay, those who are extremely good marksmen, and who can depend on their weapon not missing fire, will even venture alone to follow the track of a lion, and attack him in his retreat. Such an undertaking is, however, extremely dangerous, and many accidents have occurred from it. Two examples of the kind will serve, as well as twenty, to illustrate this truth.

The Field-Commandant, Tjaard Van der Wolf, the same that lost his life in the Caffre war, and his brother John, who is still living, followed, not far from their dwelling-house, on the eastern declivity of the Snow Mountains, the track of a large lion, which had done a great deal of mischief among their cattle, and found him at last in a ravine, grown over with brushwood. They took their stations on each side the entrance of the ravine, and sent in their dogs, to hunt the lion out. The plan succeeded so far, that the animal rushed towards the last-mentioned brother, crouched to make a spring at him, and was at the same instant shot by him; the shot however unluckily did not hit a mortal part; it only grazed the ear, and one side of the breast,

so that the monster, after being stunned for some seconds, recovered and rushed forwards, foaming with rage, and the smart of the wounds, towards his enemy, who had barely time to leap upon his horse, and endeavour to fly. The lion was instantly after him, and sprung upon the back of his horse, who, overpowered with the burden, could no longer move; when the enraged animal stuck his claws into his victim's thigh, and at the same time tore his under-garment with his teeth. The man clung with all his force to the horse, that he might not be torn off; when at the same moment, hearing his brother galloping after him, he called to him, begging him for God's sake, to fire, not regarding who or what he might hit. The brave Tjaard descended instantly from his horse, and taking his aim coolly, shot the lion through the head, the ball fortunately lodging in the saddle, without injuring either horse or rider.

Less fortunate was a person of the Zwarte-Ruggens, by name Rensburg, who, with a cousin of the same name, set off on a lion-hunt. The adventure took exactly the same turn as the former, only that the lion, instead of springing on the back of the horse, sprang upon the side, and fastened his teeth in the left arm of the rider. Very different, however, was the conduct of his cowardly companion from that of the brave Tjaard; he chose to avoid all risk himself, and ran to call two Hottentots, who were stationed at another entrance of the coppice, to his assistance. Rensburg, in the mean time, while the creature tore and mangled his left arm, with his right drew a knife from his pocket, with which he stabbed the foe in several places; and when those who were called to his rescue came up, they found him torn from his horse, swimming in his blood, his left arm and side shockingly mangled, and the dead lion, with the knife still in his throat, fallen upon him. He was not yet absolutely dead, but expired in a few minutes, exhausted with the loss of blood. The life of the pusillanimous companion has ever since been embittered by the upbraidings of his own conscience, and the not very mild reproaches made him by the relations of the deceased.

The people of the country distinguish three different sorts of lions. First, a small dark brown lion with a thin mane, the most courageous, the fiercest, and the strongest of all. Secondly, a large tan-colored lion, with a thicker mane: and thirdly, a lion of a brightish yellow, who is very cowardly and little to be feared. How far this difference may arise from the age, from the

time of year, or from varying in their habits, I cannot take upon me to determine. The two last sorts seem only to manifest any decided difference as they advance in age. The first sort I never heard mentioned excepting here, and on the borders of the Caffre country.

Besides the lion mentioned above, whose appearance gave occasion to this dissertation, we saw not far from us a wild boar, *sus æthiopicus* who appeared, in like manner, to come in quest of water; and the roaring of other lions, which sounded in our ears, gave us warning to remove our quarters. We were therefore obliged to set off without our horses, in the melancholy conviction that they had become the prey either of the lions or the Bosjesmans: and this seemed the more probable, since, being tied by the head and knee, they could not run away very fast. Three nights after, one of the people of the country, whom we had visited at his habitation among the Snow Mountains, and who was travelling to the Cape Town, having stopped here, made a fire, when he was exceedingly alarmed by hearing three horses coming towards him. They were our poor wanderers, who had sense enough to follow the fire, in the assurance that it would lead them among men again. The colonist recognized them immediately as our's, loosed the bridles from their legs, and, tying them behind his waggons, brought them to us, to our no small joy. Although the poor animals had been several days without water, they soon recovered, and held out to do us good service till the very end of our journey.

The part of the company who had set out before us, waited our coming up at a little wood of tolerably high stemmed mimosas, having kindled a fire, which served as a mark to us at a great distance, where we were to look for them. A trifling accident occurred at kindling this fire.—A powder-horn, from which they were shaking some grains of powder upon the burning tinder, in order to produce a flame, caught fire, exploded, and slightly wounded some of the byestanders.

After resting a short time, we proceeded on our journey, and arrived by break of day at the house of the Field-Commandant, Abraham De Clerk. It is at the source of the Chamka, or Lion river, in so solitary a spot, that Aschwege, who has been already mentioned, and who lives at the distance of twelve miles* from him, is his nearest neighbour. The disadvantages of living

* Twelve German miles, or sixty miles English measure.

in a spot so far removed from any of his fellow-creatures, can only be in any degree compensated by the extraordinary fertility of the land. So great is this fertility, that the farm can maintain a flock of eight thousand sheep, affording also pasturage for nourishing a proportionate quantity of horned cattle and horses. The principal advantage of this farm is, that the owner of it can appropriate the land for many miles round entirely to his own use, and he is therefore absolute ruler over an extent of country equal to many an European principality. If the sheep have eaten one part entirely bare, their lord and master has only to drive them to another part at some distance, where a superfluity of food will be presented; and this continual change of place and food is precisely the thing of all others which contributes most to render the sheep fine and healthy. Does a murrain prevail among the horses in any place, the most effectual remedy for it is flight; commonly a change of place, though it be only to the distance of a few miles, is sufficient at the same time to restore the diseased, and to preserve those that remain untouched from taking the infection. With such resources, any great loss is easily averted or repaired. A year after our visit, I was talking with De Clerk at the Cape Town, when he told me, with perfect composure, that he had recently lost three thousand sheep at one stroke, by the bursting of a water-spout, but he hoped that the loss would be completely repaired in less than two years, without his being obliged to submit to any privations.

This De Clerk was a man of much personal bravery. He was now forty-six years of age, and had killed in the course of his life thirty-one lions and nine leopards. Hyenas and game he had slaughtered in such numbers, that he kept no account of them. The colonists held him in great esteem as a leader, and in the last Caffre war, he obtained the approbation of the English government, not less by his mildness than by his bravery. This man was, nevertheless, not master in his own house; that was governed by a mother seventy-five years of age, who was eternally scolding from morning till night. In every thing that concerned the economy of the house, he was allowed no more than humbly to offer his advice; nay, he was often obliged, for the sake of peace and quiet, to submit to her revoking orders, which he had given without her consent, even when convinced that his own were far the most adviseable. "My son," she said to us, herself, "is commander in the field, but here I am absolute ruler, and will continue so as long as I live." The

respect of children for their parents, and their submission to them, even to their latest years, is a very estimable feature in the character of the African colonists, which again has a great resemblance to the patriarchal days. Though brothers are often to be seen very much at variance with each other, yet they are always united in this one circumstance, of the respect shewn by both to their parents. It is rare, however, for the latter to employ their influence in becoming the peace-makers between their children; they commonly do not concern themselves with their quarrels, that they may not seem to favour the one more than the other.

De Clerk had long wished to build himself a new mansion, instead of the old ruinous one which we saw him inhabiting; but the mother insisted upon it, that she would live and die in the house which her dear deceased husband had built with his own hands. De Clerk had married, but losing his wife very soon, forbore to contract a second marriage, merely to please his crusty old mother. No immediate prospect appeared of his being released from this thraldom, since of all the women in the colony that I had seen, above fifty years of age, she was by far the most active and alert. She had only returned from the Cape Town a few days before our arrival; having been there, without her son to accompany and take care of her; and having transacted all her business entirely by herself. She now, not only directed every thing in the house with the most uncommon activity, but often went into the field to look after the flocks and herds; even in her seventieth year she had taken short journeys on horseback. I mentioned to her the wife of the Field-Commandant Gerotz, who once, when the Bosjesmans, in the absence of her husband, had stolen a large quantity of sheep, mounted her horse, and set off in pursuit of the robbers, accompanied only by a single Hottentot, fought with them for some time, and at length put them wholly to flight. My old lady heard me with attention, and when my story was ended, said, that she was herself, even then, capable of doing the same thing; and that she had, in the course of her life, engaged in many dangerous adventures of a similar nature. Indeed, however indolent and spiritless the African women may appear, when seen only seated at their tea-tables, they shew the utmost resolution in any time of danger, and many striking examples of female heroism, particularly in the last Caffre war, have been exhibited by them.

The other products of the earth in this place are proportionally good with the pastures. Besides the necessary corn for bread, De Clerk had this year gathered a rich harvest of barley, which he used as food for his horses. At this present time a murrain was prevalent among the horses, so that they were all at a distance from the house. Our host, however, assured us, that we need not be under any apprehensions for our cattle, since the disease was not produced by any momentary impression; it arose entirely from continuing the use of the same pasture, and the same water, too long together. It was, therefore, a thing scarcely ever known, for the horses of travellers to take the infection; for the same reason, it was generally found, that a change of place was an infallible means of stopping the progress of the disease. Near the house was a large garden, in which were cultivated fruits of various kinds. At this moment there was an incredible abundance of peaches and grapes, of the very best sorts, ripened in the best manner. The slaves of our host were employed in drying these fruits, which was done by spreading them on reed mats, raised about three or four feet from the ground. The raisins were particularly excellent; and our host assured us, that, notwithstanding the distance of the Cape Town, they answered extremely well the being transported thither. We were the more surprised to find the wine pressed from the same grapes of so very inferior a quality; this must be owing to some great fault in the making it.

The river, at the head of which lies this solitary farm, is called the Chamka, or the great Lion river, to distinguish it from another, which takes somewhat of a westerly direction, under the name of the Little Lion river. Both cross the Karroo in its greatest breadth, uniting before they quit it, after which they flow into the Elephant's river, which itself joins the Gaurits, as we have seen above, and, with that, flows into the sea. Both arms of the Chamka are not only dry for a great part of every year; but there are years, sometimes even several years together, when they have no water the whole year through. Though rain falls about the Nieuweveld Mountains, in which both have their source, the water seldom spreads over more than half the bed before it is absorbed and exhausted by the Karroo.

The Nieuweveld Mountains are among the most considerable in Southern Africa. They run parallel with the Black Mountains, and bound the Karroo in its whole length to the north. The hills of the Roggeveld, and the Kom-

berg, may be considered as their extreme western boundary, and the Snow Mountains as their boundary to the east. They do not, however, immediately join the Snow Mountains, but are united with them by a chain of hills, which appear as nothing in comparison with their colossal neighbours. Directly to the north of the Snow Mountains, the Nieuweveld Mountains send out a branch in a direction towards the equator, on the eastern side of which runs the Sea-cow river, which flows into the Orange river, between the twenty-ninth and thirtieth degree of southern latitude. This circumstance leads Mr. Barrow into the erroneous idea, that the Nieuweveld Mountains are the highest chain in Southern Africa. Since this opinion is not supported by any measurement, I am inclined to doubt very much, whether the highest point of these mountains is really higher than the outer range of the Black Mountains; the appearance to the eye, which, however, is here deceitful, since the plain of the Karroo must be taken as the level, and that declines towards the south, supports my opinion. What more I have to say on this subject must be referred to the place when I shall speak of the Karree hills, as the third great parallel chain of this country. The part of the Nieuweveld in which we now were is called the Green-hills. The plain in which lies De Clerk's farm is called de *Hooyflakte*, the Hay-plain.

We were met here by a new messenger from the Cape Town, who brought dispatches, requiring a speedy and diffuse answer from our chief. This occasioned us to make a stay of three days, which served as a salutary rest, previous to our arduous journey over the Karroo. I shall avail myself of the interval to give another extract from the journal of General Janssens; it is on the subject of the Bosjesmans, and I trust will be found not less interesting than that already given respecting the Caffres.

CHAP. XXX.

Extract from the Journal of General Janssens.—Journey of the General and his Party into the Country of the Bosjesmans.—Their Arrival at the Great river, or Orange river.—Met there by a Party of Bosjesmans.—Observations of the Author upon these People.

On our journey from the Snow Mountains hither, we left a very remarkable tract of land to our right, which, among all the country inhabited by white men, has remained the least altered from its original state, and is inhabited by numberless flocks of wild beasts, together with several hordes of the miserable aborigines of the country, as well as the new settlers;—I mean the neighbourhood of the Sea-cow river. Although Governor Plettenberg, so long ago as the year 1778, included it within the boundaries of the colony, it was not till about the year 1790 that any of the colonists settled there. No other part of the colony stretches so near to the Orange river, consequently in no part of the colony do the Bosjesmans, whose proper home is on the banks of that river, appear so much in their genuine form as here. Mr. Barrow, therefore, in order to become better acquainted with the situation of these very remarkable people, and to fulfil the benevolent views of the English government with regard to them, extended his journey to these parts. General Janssens, not less desirous if possible to ameliorate their miserable condition, took the same journey, and the notes and observations made upon this occasion by his adjutant are well worthy of being given as a sequel to those of Mr. Barrow, in order to make the public more fully acquainted with so peculiar a race.

He who would travel into this country from Graaff Reynett, must ascend the Snow Mountains on their eastern side, and leave the Compass Mountain to the left. This was the route pursued by the Governor and his train. Although it was now the winter season, when the colonists commonly leave their habitations on the Snow Mountains, they had the attention to be there to receive their distinguished guests; several, indeed, after having entertained them in the most hospitable manner that the circumstances would admit,

resolved to accompany them in the journey. Such a party may be very numerous, without greatly increasing the cares for their nourishment and accommodation. The Africans are at all times ready for travelling, and easily satisfied. Very little more preparation is necessary, than to sling the powder-horn and bag of shot about the body, to see that the fowling-piece is in good order, and to fasten to the saddle a little bag with some bread and smoaked flesh. Thus equipped, the traveller mounts his horse, taking with him on another horse a Hottentot, commonly a lad of twelve or fourteen years of age, whose destination is to look after the horses, and sometimes to carry his master's gun; commonly he besides leads a third horse, that the work may be occasionally lightened to the two others. Any change of linen or cloaths is not thought of in travelling, and when the little provision of food is consumed, the chace furnishes a fresh supply. Is he to pass the night out in the field, the saddle of his horse serves him for a pillow, and the master, with his servant, alternately keep watch to guard themselves and their horses against the lions. In this manner an almost incredible quantity of ground is gone over in a short time. If any one goes to visit a friend who lives as far off as from Frankfort to Leipsick, still it is called only taking a ride. With such a company, for the greater part uninvited, did General Janssens find himself on the top of the Snow Mountains on the twelfth of July, 1803. It was bitterly cold; a sharp north-west wind drove the rain, and a sort of small hail, like snow, through the air, so that the summits of the mountains were soon whitened over. The night was dark as pitch; presently it began to lighten very smartly, and a loud clap of thunder was heard: such a phœnomenon, according to the unanimous testimony of all the colonists, was unprecedented at that time of the year among the mountains.

On the following day, the company descended the Snow Mountains, leaving the Rhinoceros Mountain and the Table Mountain* on one side, and passed the night in a small empty house, the owner of which, with his cattle, had descended into their winter quarters, before the coming on of the severe cold. In the next day's journey they passed the Red Mountain, which belongs to the same great cluster as the Snow Mountains and the Rhinoceros Mountain,

* There are many mountains of this name in the colony, the tabular form being very common among the mountains.

and whose summit rises to a very considerable height. From the south side of the Red Mountain flow the Brakke river and the Great Fish river, which empty themselves into the Indian Ocean, while the springs on the north side supply the Sea-cow river, which takes its course to the Atlantic. A farm of the Commandant John Van der Walt, near a hill called the Wolf's head, was the next night quarters of the travellers: the cold was severe, and in the morning there was ice upon the water three lines thick. The lions came in the dark within sixteen paces of the house, but without doing any mischief. In the course of the next day the travellers saw a great many gnus, hartebeests, and eland antelopes. After passing the next night at a farm called Charles's Port, they descended into the plain, where they found on all sides such an incredible number of elands, that the hunters killed no less than seventeen. By this means several thousand pounds of flesh were obtained; a much larger provision than could be carried away.

From hence the ground was constantly upon the descent towards the valley of the Sea-cow river. To the left were the hills on which Governor Plettenberg erected his boundary stone, and to the right, at a great distance, towered the lofty summit of the Zuureberg, with the summits of many other hills, to which no names have yet been given. About noon, the travellers being at no great distance from the Enchanted Mountain, came to a spring, which is called Van der Walt's fountain, in memory of the deceased Field-Commandant, by whom it was discovered. The colonists assured the Governor that a tolerably good understanding subsisted between them and the Bosjesmans of this country; indeed, wherever, as here, there are plenty of wild animals, on which they can feed, or if they inhabit the banks of a river, so that they can subsist very much by fishing, they are always more orderly and live upon a more peaceable footing with the colonists near them, than in the barren country about Camdeboo, Bruintjeshoogte, and the Roggeveld. One of the colonists, as a proof of the truth of what they asserted, rode forwards, and kindled several fires upon the hills, for a signal to the savages that a christian commander had arrived among them. It was not long before four men, armed with bows and quivers, made their appearance in the camp, who displayed so much courage and confidence, that when a quantity of eland's flesh was given them, they immediately set about cutting it to pieces, and devoured it half raw. As it was the Governor's intention to proceed farther that day, time

would not permit of a longer intercourse with them; they were soon dismissed with some presents.

The company arrived in the evening at a gateway, as it is called, between two high hills, where they found a very fine spring, grown round with large reeds; here the tents were pitched for the night. From this spot to the Great river was a journey of two hours. Not far from the spring a gnu was shot, which was examined with tolerable accuracy, and a pretty exact drawing made of it. As this animal, on account of its extraordinary form, has attracted in a high degree the attention of all African travellers, and is pretty accurately described by all, I may venture to refer my readers to them. It is the same animal whose doubtful formation occasioned, for a long time, so much embarrassment to the naturalists. It has the mane and tail of the horse; the form of the head and the horns resemble the ox; and in the legs and delicate make of the body it appears of the antelope species, to which it should seem, on this account, properly to belong. I must observe, that the name by which it is called here, *net wilde beest*, is falsely interpreted, *the wild beast;* since the name *beast* designates the ox tribe, and *wilde beest*, signifies neither more nor less than the *wild ox*. One of these animals was sent by General Janssens to France, on board the vessel *The Geographer*, as a present to the Empress Josephine, by whom it was placed in the menagerie of the botanic garden at Paris. For the rest, it is now in every respect tolerably well known, and has lost the charm of rarity, which it had some years ago to the readers of travels in Southern Africa.

The next day, early, the travellers arrived at the Great river, or Orange river, as Colonel Gordon named it, in honour of the house of Orange. It is a considerable stream; and in a country where a river, tolerably full of water, is a very great rarity, appears a no less delightful than remarkable phœnomenon to the traveller. It has its source in several high hills, which bound the still unknown countries of Mathimba, Maduana, and Immbo to the west. The abundant thunder showers, which fall the whole summer through, keep it constantly supplied with water; sometimes, even at that season of the year, it swells to an incredible height; in winter it is at the lowest: its banks are high and steep. Along its whole course, run considerable hills, both on the north and south side, which in some places contract the valley so much that they almost meet; by this means the river

is so confined, that it presses through the strait, when it is at all swelled, with such amazing force as to carry rocks and trees away with it, and these forming in the end a sort of dam, obstruct the course, and make the waters rise to a height which must appear wholly inexplicable to one not acquainted with this circumstance. In proportion, however, as it approaches the coast, the banks become more flat, and the height of the surrounding hills diminishes. At length it reaches the great sandy plain, which renders the whole western coast of Africa so inhospitable, and presents an eternal invincible barrier against its ever becoming habitable to any extent, or being converted into the seat of trade and business. But this also impedes the course of the river, and after winding its way over an extent of more than a hundred and fifty geographical miles of country, reinforced by several streams, which flow from the districts of the Corans and Beetjuans, breaking itself, by the force of its stream, a way through rocky vallies,—after all this, its strength is exhausted by the opposition of the constantly moving sands. Its proud flood, humbled, spreads over the wide extended plain, and is by degrees exhausted or absorbed before it reaches the coast. This phœnomenon may be explained by the peculiarities of the climate, on the African coasts; the rivers here having the greatest quantity of water at that season of the year, when the almost perpendicular sun has parched and dried the sandy plain, and having, on the contrary, least water in the cold season of the year, when abundant rains fall on the western coast, there is never, at the period when the sands are the most penetrable, force of water sufficient to break a way through them. Thus, the rivers either fail entirely in forming themselves a mouth; or, if they succeed in penetrating as far as the sea, that mouth is always obstructed by shoals and quicksands.

It was on the eighteenth of July that our travellers arrived on the banks of the Orange river, a few hours distance above the place where it is joined by the Sea-cow river. As usual, at this time of the year, the water was low; notwithstanding which it was so broad, as to be a good gun-shot over, and in no part throughout the country is the river ever fordable. The tall trunks of trees, torn up by the roots, lying on the banks, served as a mark to shew the height to which the waters had risen in former inundations, and by comparing the rapidity of the stream, in the present low state of the water, with what it must be at the height it had reached when these trees were deposited

on the shore, a very accurate idea might be formed of the terrific appearance made by the stream at those moments.

A number of sea-cows, or rather river-horses, take up their abode in this river, where they are scarcely ever disturbed by the hunters. The traces of their ponderous footsteps were to be observed every where on the shore; and as numbers were soon seen in the water, coming to the surface to inhale the air, a general chace of them was agreed upon. The huntsmen have two modes of catching these monsters; they either watch for them on the banks of the river at night, when they come on shore to feed, or, with a dexterity peculiar to themselves, seize the moment when the nose of the animal is above the water to draw in the air, and fire at it. Although the wound thus given is scarcely ever in itself mortal, yet the pain and loss of blood sustained occasions the animal to rise more frequently, and higher above the surface of the water, and thus the hunters are furnished with new opportunities to repeat the fire again and again, till the animal is at length subdued, and must submit to his fate. These hunts are, however, seldom fortunate, if the hunters be very numerous; every one then is eager to precede the other in firing, and a single shot fired prematurely will entirely frustrate the whole undertaking. So was it on the present occasion. Abundance of the animals were seen frequently rising above the water, snorting and blowing, but the very first shot was injudiciously fired, and taking fright, they hastened to the opposite shore, where they were soon at such a distance that no farther opportunity was afforded of attacking even a single one. After remaining for some time in the vain hope of better fortune, the hunters were obliged to return to the camp, with nothing for their pains but an empty powder-horn.

In the mean time, several Bosjesmans had arrived at the camp, with whom the General was engaged in an amicable intercourse, presenting them with food and other trifling presents. They were all strikingly low in stature, and seemed as if half famished. One of them, and by no means the least of the party, was measured, and found to be only four feet three inches high; he appeared between forty and fifty years of age. The women were still less, and ugly in the extreme. The colour of their skin was lighter than that of the Hottentots; some among them were even less yellow than the Spaniards at Teneriffe; at the same time it must be observed, that the genuine colour of the skin can seldom be accurately distinguished, on account of the grease

with which it is smeared over.* The physiognomy of the Bosjesmans has the same characteristic features as that of the Hottentots, but their eyes are infinitely more wild and animated, and their whole countenance far more expressive, exhibiting stronger symptoms of suspicion and apprehension: all their actions indicate strong passion much more forcibly. This difference originates undoubtedly in the constant exertions of mind and body, occasioned by the wretched life they lead. They have no property to furnish them with food, in an easy and convenient manner, like many of the savages of Southern Africa, who feed upon the milk and flesh of their herds, but are obliged constantly, by means of fraud and artifice, to procure a supply of the most pressing necessaries. Thence have they been led to the invention of poisoned arrows, with which they can hit to a certainty those wild animals of the field, whose strength and swiftness would otherwise be an overmatch for them. The effect of the poison is so rapid, that they are sure to find the animal who has been touched with it in a quarter of an hour, if not absolutely dead, yet so stunned and powerless, that the effect is the same. To kill it entirely, to cut out the poisoned part, and to begin devouring the prey, are acts which follow each other with the utmost possible rapidity, nor is the spot quitted till the last bone is entirely cleared.

Larger animals, whose thick skins their poisoned arrows cannot penetrate, become not the less the prey of their cunning and contrivance. The banks of the Great river are full of pits made by the Bosjesmans, to catch the sea-cow in its nocturnal wanderings. These pits are large and deep, with a sharp-pointed stake planted in the midst, and are most dexterously covered over with twigs, leaves, and grass. The animal that falls in dies a death of the most horrible torture, for the stake, driven deep into the body, prevents his moving about in so confined a space, out of which he might otherwise, perhaps, be able to work his way by the exertion of his vast strength; nor is it much in the power of the Bosjesman himself, with his imperfect weapons, to release him speedily from his torments. In some places, even the prudent elephant falls, in this way, into the hands of the Bosjesmans. Nor are these

* The principal part of the following remarks upon the Bosjesmans are not from the Journal of General Janssens, but are the result of my own experience; they are introduced here as serving to elucidate what is to follow.

people less subtle in ensnaring fish, for the sake of which they haunt very much the neighbourhood of the larger rivers. They make a sort of pointed baskets of the twigs of trees, which have very much the form of our eel-baskets, and are used in the same manner; or if they expect a swelling of the stream, while the water is still low, they make upon the strand a large cistern, as it were, enclosed by a wall of stones, which serves as a reservoir, where, if fortune be favourable, a quantity of fish are deposited at the subsiding of the waters.

In other parts, they spy about from the heights, to discover the nests of the cunning ostriches, and find a most wholesome and refreshing food in the eggs stolen from them. Snakes in abundance are caught by them, on account of the poison with which they tip their arrows; but after cutting, or biting off the head, and taking out the bag of poison, the animal itself serves them as food. They know very well, that the most poisonous serpents may be eaten with perfect safety; that the poison only kills by being mixed immediately with the blood. The swarms of wandering locusts, which to the civilized world are so great an annoyance, furnish to the Bosjesmans another resource for supporting life. How easy soever it may be to catch them by handfuls in a common way, so as to be furnished with a hearty meal, this is not enough; to increase the quantity taken, they make long and deep trenches, from which the locusts, if they have once fallen into them, cannot easily rise and fly away. A very favourite food of these savages is the *termes-fatale*, or white ant, and their eggs. The species of this animal formerly described,* which makes such large heaps, or hillocks, does not belong to this part of the country; it is a species somewhat smaller, which builds below the surface of the ground, spreading over a very large space. In the midst of these nests a hole is made by the Bosjesmans, considerably deeper than the nest itself, and they are then certain, in a short time, to find a number of the animals at the bottom of the hole, they having fallen in on all sides, in running about from one part of their habitation to another. At certain times of the year, or before any great change of weather, these animals are particularly busy; they are seen in great numbers upon the surface of the ground, heaping up leaves, very small twigs, and splinters of

* See Vol. I. page 62, English translation.

wood, over the entrance to their mine, as a sort of roof. This is the most favourable moment for the Bosjesmans to practise their mode of catching them.

Sparing as nature is here in the distribution of her gifts, necessity has taught the Bosjesmans the use of several plants, wholesome to appease hunger, which in more abundant countries no one would think of applying to that purpose. Many of the lily species have a mealy nutritive bulb, which, roasted in the embers, has very much the flavour of a chesnut; it is most in order to be eaten when the flower is just gone off. There are, however, several sorts very pernicious, which occasion sickness, and which, by an inexperienced person, might easily be mistaken for those which are salutary. Many sorts of the mesembryanthemum bear a pleasant acid kind of fruit, called by the colonists Hottentot-figs, which are also eaten by the Bosjesmans; and those on the other side of the Great river feed much upon the bulbous root of their kambroo, a plant yet little known to the botanists, and undefined by them.

It is not, however, to be inferred, that no tract of country is so poor but that it produces wherewithal to support the miserable lives led by these savages. In some parts, as on the banks of the Great river, they can procure easily and abundantly the means of supplying their daily wants; but in others, which are deficient in game, in ants, in locusts, and in bulbs, they are often in a deplorable situation; and, from a long privation of sufficient nourishment, waste away to the leanest, most wretched figures imaginable. Does a more favourable time of the year, however, come on, or do they change their quarters to a more fertile region, it is amazing how soon the traces of this misery disappear; in how short a time they become quite different beings. Alas! instead of chusing the latter means of alleviating their misery, they have too often recourse to another, which draws hatred and contempt on all their nation;—that is, robbery. Wholly unaccustomed as these people are to any ideas of property, or to any of the other ties that bind civilized society, possessors of no other wealth than their bow and arrows, their whole attention turned only to satisfying their animal necessities in the quickest and most convenient manner, ought it to be considered as a matter of very great reproach to them, that they are ready to take what they want, wherever it is to be found? The situation of their neighbours, I

readily grant, is not rendered more palatable by this reflection; and even though they do not feel their attacks to be very atrocious, they are not the less justified, nor is it the less incumbent on them to defend to the utmost themselves and their property. In this very circumstance lies the principal obstacle to the Bosjesmans ever being civilized; and it is certain, that there are not, over the whole globe, any savages whom it would be more difficult to inspire with new ideas, or to form to new habits.

To say all that might be said upon this subject, without suffering myself to run into a wearisome amplification, would be almost impossible. I shall therefore restrain my pen to giving some few of the leading features in the modes of life, and character, of the savages in question; these, connected with such particulars as are already known to the public, and such as may be hereafter given, will enable them to form satisfactory results. The Bosjesman has no settled residence; his whole life is passed in wandering from place to place; it even rarely happens that he passes two nights together on the same spot. One exception may, however, be found to this general rule, and that is, when he has eaten till he is perfectly gorged; that is to say, when he has for several days together had as much as his almost incredible voracity can possibly eat. Such a revelry is followed by a sleep, or at least a fit of indolence, which will continue even for weeks, and which at last becomes so delightful to him, that he had rather buckle the girdle of emptiness round him,* than submit to such an exertion as going to the chace, or catching insects. He is fond of taking up his abode for the night in caverns among the mountains, or clefts in the rocks; in the plain he makes himself a hole in the ground, or gets into the midst of a bush, where, bending the boughs around him, they are made to serve as a shelter against the weather, against an enemy, or against wild beasts. A bush that has served many times in this way as the retreat of a Bosjesman, and the points of whose bent boughs are beginning to grow again upwards, has perfectly the appearance of an immense bird's nest. In this state many sorts of the

* In Germany it is a common practice for people of the ordinary class, who are riding journeys, if they feel themselves empty, to buckle a leathern girdle round them very tight, which prevents the empty stomach feeling so much the shaking of the horse. This girdle is called the *schmachtriemen*, the *girdle of emptiness*. TRANSLATOR.

pliant *tarconanthus*, abundance of which grow on the other side of the Great river, are often to be found; and if they have been recently inhabited, hay, leaves, and wool may be seen, forming the bottom of the nest. It is this custom which has given rise to the name by which the savages in question are now known. *Bosje* signifying in African Dutch a shrub or bush; *Bosjesman*, consequently, a *bush-man*. An additional reason for giving it being derived from their often shooting at game, or at an enemy, from this retreat. Whoever travels over this treeless country, can scarcely forbear laughing at the mistake of many translators, who have made of this word *bosje*, a wood, or perhaps, forest, and called these people *Wood-Hottentots;* or, as some of the French translators have it, *Hommes des forets.*

The holes in the ground above-mentioned, which sometimes serve these people as beds, are only a few inches deep, of a longish round form, and even when they are to serve for a whole family, not more than five or six feet wide. It is incredible how they manage to pack together in so small a space, perhaps, two grown persons and several children: each is wrapped in a single sheepskin, in which they contrive to roll themselves up in such a manner, round like a ball, that all air is entirely kept from them. In very cold nights they heap up twigs and earth on the windward side of the hole; but against rain they have no other shelter than the sheepskin. In the hot season of the year, they are fond of lying in the beds of the rivers, under the shade of the mimosas, the branches of which they draw down to screen them from the sun and wind. In this situation were they found by Patterson, who has pretended to give a sketch of what he saw, but it is defective on the side of accuracy; nor is it difficult to discern, that the sketcher has introduced a great deal of his own imagination into his picture.* Household utensils

* I cannot help inserting here, with reference to the opinion I have given in my first volume, respecting the origin of the Hottentot tribes, a passage from *Heeren's ideas relative to the political state and commerce of the most celebrated nations in the ancient world.* He is comparing the information we have received from the English traveller, Bruce, with what we know from the ancients respecting the Æthiopian tribes; and shews, very acutely, the conformity of the modern writer with the relation given by Agatharcides. "The Hylophagi," says this latter, "live under the shade of trees, the branches of which they bend down to the ground, to form "themselves a sort of tents. The Dobenahs, the most powerful tribe of the Shangallas, live on "the flesh of elephants and rhinoceroses; the Basi, in the plains of Siré, eat the flesh of lions,

they have none, unless that name may be given to shells of tortoises, of ostriches' eggs, and of gourds. Some of those who inhabit the neighbourhood of the more civilized Caffre tribes, of the Beetjuans, for instance, have knives, but they are not at all a necessary to them, since they generally eat their flesh raw, and chew it very little. If they dress it, they scarcely make it hot through, and bite it with their teeth the moment it is taken out of the ashes. The incisive teeth, therefore, of the old Bosjesmans are commonly half worn away, and have one general flat edge. They drink out of the rivers and streamlets, lying down flat on their bellies, even when the bank is very steep, so that they are obliged to support themselves in a fatiguing manner with their arms, to avoid falling into the water. The Caffres, on the contrary, and many of the savage Hottentot tribes, have a way of crouching down to the water, and throwing it into their mouths with the forefingers of both hands. I do not recollect ever to have seen any of the different savages of Southern Africa drinking out of the hollow of their hands.

As the Bosjesman lives without a home, and without property, he must be without the great medium of moral refinement, the social union. A horde commonly consists of the different members of one family only, and no one has any power or distinction above the rest. Every difference is decided by the right of the strongest; even the family tie is not sanctioned by any law or regulation: the wife is not indissolubly united to the husband; but when he gives her permission, she may go whither she will, and associate with any other man; nay, the stronger man will sometimes take away the wife of the weaker, and compel her, whether she will or not, to follow him: I must, however, add, that such instances are not common. The almost instinctive love of the parents for their common children unites the far greater part for their whole lives, and habit makes them inseparable companions. Infidelity to the marriage compact is, however, not considered as a crime; it is scarcely regarded by the offended person. I have, on a former occasion, in my remarks upon the languages of these savages, observed, as a thing worthy of

---

" of wild hogs, and of snakes. Farther westward, beyond these, is a tribe that in summer " feed on locusts, which they dress, and then keep in baskets dried; during the rest of the year " they live on crocodiles, river-horses, and fish. The most eastward of all are the Struthiophagi, " or ostrich-eaters." On how many of these things do the Bosjesmans now feed?

notice, that they seem to have no idea of the distinction of girl, maiden, and wife; they are all expressed by one word alone. I leave every reader to draw from this single circumstance his own inference, with regard to the nature of love, and every kind of moral feeling among them. As little is the son considered as bound to the father, the brother to the brother; every one leaves his horde, and attaches himself to another, entirely at his own pleasure.

Very little intercourse subsists between the separate hordes; they seldom unite, unless in some extraordinary undertaking, for which the combined strength of a great many is required. For the most part, the hordes keep at a distance from each other, since the smaller the number, the easier is a supply of food procured. So trifling is the intercourse among them, that the names of even the most common objects are as various as the number of hordes. Their language is disagreeably sonorous, from the frequent clacking of the teeth, and the prevailing croaking in the throat; and it is extremely poor, no less in words than in sounds; they understand each other more by their gestures than their speaking. No one has a name peculiar to himself, though they distinguish themselves as a people by a general name.*

---

* Pliny says the same thing of some of the people in the North of Africa. "*Atlantes degeneres sunt humani ritus, si credimus. Nam neque nominum ullorum inter eos appellatio est —neque insomnia visunt, qualia reliqui mortales. Troglodytæ specus excavant. Hæ illis domus, victus serpentium carnes, stridorque non vox: adeo sermonis commercio carent. Garamantes matrimoniorum ex-sortes, passim cum feminis degunt, &c.*" Hist. Nat. lib. v. sect. viii. "The Atlantes, a people of Mount Atlas, in Africa, if it may be believed, are "destitute of human rites; for they have no nominal distinction among themselves; neither "is their sleep attended with dreams, as that of other mortals. The Troglodytes, a people of "Ethiopia, dig caverns in the ground, which they make their habitations; they feed on the flesh "of serpents; they make a croaking kind of noise, but have no voice; thus they are strangers "to the intercourse of speech. The Garamantes, a people of Zaara, in Africa, having no "marriages, cohabit promiscuously with women."

The same description is given by Pomponious Mela: "*Troglodytæ, nullarum opum domini, strident magis quam loquunter, &c.*" "The Troglodytes, possessing no intellectual faculties, make a shrill noise rather than speak, &c." Both give their relations after Herodotus; and how fabulous soever this account of the African nations may appear, they were probably almost founded on experience. Thus much at least they prove, that even the most extraordinary circumstances which I have related, with regard to the Bosjesmans, are not wholly new and unheard of.

When a horde has taken any thing in the chace, or by plunder, it is concealed as much as possible from all the others; since whoever learns that there is something to be eaten, comes without any ceremony, or waiting for an invitation to partake of it. As every thing is common property, the booty cannot be withheld, or a part of it at least, from any one who requires it. Thence the incredible voracity with which they immediately devour whatever they catch in the chace,—thence their avoiding the possession of living animals,——thence the inefficacy of every attempt which has been made to keep them quiet, by paying them a tribute of sheep and cattle,—thence the fruitlessness of all endeavours to accustom them to milder and more civilized habits. I cannot find any other ground than this envy and jealousy, this fear of being obliged to share what they get with others, for one of the most odious and revolting features in their character, their passion for destruction. Every thing that comes in their way, which they cannot appropriate on the spot to their own use, is destroyed, that it may not be of advantage to others. If they discover an ostrich's nest, and circumstances do not permit their continuing on the spot till all they find there is consumed, they eat as much as they can, but the rest of the eggs are destroyed. Do they meet a large flock of springbocks, they wound as many as possible, although six or eight are sufficient to last them several days: the rest are left to die, and rot on the ground. I have already related, that when they fall upon any of the herds or flocks belonging to the colonists, they will rather destroy every one, though they cannot possibly carry them away, than leave any for the owner.

I would not by any means place these unfortunate people in a more odious point of view than they deserve; I will, therefore, readily admit, that this last-mentioned proceeding may very probably be urged, by the idea of carrying away the plunder at a more convenient time; but I must, in any case, vindicate, in great measure, the anger and thirst of revenge excited among the colonists. Who among the most civilized Europeans, would not be transported beyond all bounds, at seeing his whole wealth, the fruit perhaps of many years of labour and industry, wantonly destroyed; the whole flock or herd, so long carefully watched and nurtured, among which many a particular animal is, perhaps, become very dear to him from its faithful services, left, while the ruthless destroyer himself is fled, to end their lives in the most cruel torments? It is very true, that the colonists may justly be reproached with

many and great offences against the Bosjesmans, and their harsh rough manners have led them to acts of revenge which are a disgrace to Christians, to persons who derive their origin from cultivated and civilized nations. I will not here repeat the accusations brought against them; they are sufficiently known from the writings of my precursors: such acts are certainly not to be excused; yet it is but justice to urge, what can fairly be urged in mitigation and palliation of them. The Bosjesmans did not originally inhabit the countries whence they now carry on their most injurious warfare against the colonists; it cannot therefore be urged, that the savages are but revenging themselves for being dispossessed of their own country. At the time when the Europeans settled in the Roggeveld, in the Snow Mountains, in Agtebruintjeshoogte, and other parts, there were no Bosjesmans there; it was the wealth of the colonists which first attracted them thither, from their own proper districts on the banks of the Great-river. The colonists were not the aggressors; for, in truth, these savages had nothing of which they could be deprived; and no idea was ever entertained of making slaves of them. Even supposing they had been driven from their native country, which was not the case, since those parts now inhabited by the colonists were all peopled by tribes of Hottentots; even supposing this had been the case, what had a people like the Bosjesmans to lose; they who are every where at home, who know not the value of any land, who have behind them a fertile territory of several thousand square miles? What had they to lose, but the possession of a dry and almost uninhabitable country, which could not, in any way, be of use, had not Providence sent thither the frugal sheep, as it were, to its own peculiar district?

The rude rough man, left entirely in a state of nature, is not in himself evil and wicked, still less is he so from principle: but he follows blindly the impulse of his passions, which lead him to acts, that to us, in the high point of civilization we have attained, appear as crimes; but which can only be justly considered in that light, when the perpetrators themselves are sensible and conscious that they really are so. Hunger and inclination will naturally lead the Bosjesman to robbing and plunder, nay even to murder, in the desire of procuring some better kind of food than snakes, ants, and the tallow of sea-cows, without his conscience making him any severe reproaches upon the subject, without any man being justified in therefore finding in his

skull the organization of the robber or murderer. As little does the colonist see any great ill, if, in defending his property resolutely against these savages, even at the hazard of his own life, he chances to kill some of them: neither act can fairly be judged upon those principles by which, in well-constituted states, robbery and private vengeance would be judged and punished. The rude laws of nature must inevitably, in great measure, rule here; and the government can, alas! only interfere if the colonist, forgetting the duties of humanity, should put his Bosjesman prisoner to death, with cruel and protracted torments; then, indeed, the punishment of the offender becomes essential, that all superfluous unnecessary horrors may be restrained. Entirely to prevent retaliation, is a thing which cannot be thought of, unless it were in their power entirely to prevent the aggressions of the savages. Before the evil can be wholly removed, the manners of the contending parties must be softened, all their habits and ideas must be ameliorated and refined; then, and then only, can the criminal code established in civilized Europe be made to rule here supreme. But a few simple facts prove more than the most able reasonings. The reader is therefore requested, when he has gone through the account of my travels, and not before, to form his final opinion upon the situation of the Bosjesmans, and their relations with the colonists.

CHAP. XXXI.

Extract from the Journal of General Janssens continued.—A River-horse killed, but carried away by the stream.—Efforts of the Colonists and Bosjesmans to retrieve it.—Affecting account of the eagerness shewn by the Bosjesmans to save one of the Colonists from being drowned.—More Particulars respecting the Bosjesmans.

The Bosjesmans, who were now guests to the General, were, like all the other savages of this country, cloathed in skins. Some of the colonists observed to the Governor, that most of them wore the skins of antelopes; that few were in sheep-skins. They said, that by this circumstance it was easy to judge, whether the horde was among the most peaceable and orderly or not. When they were dressed in sheep-skins, as these could only be obtained by robbery and plunder, they must accordingly be considered as among the disorderly; whereas, the contrary was to be inferred, when they were clad in antelope-skins, which are the fair product of the chace. To the honour of the colonists, it must be observed, that the Bosjesmans did not evince the least fear or distrust of them; on the contrary, towards some among them, who spoke their language, and served as interpreters, they shewed the utmost confidence. As these people related to the Governor, that they came not unfrequently into that country, and often in their hunting-parties had met these Bosjesmans, and had some intercourse with them, the confidence shewn by them was a pleasing proof to him, recollecting, as he did, how much difficulty Mr. Barrow had found to induce them to stop with him, that the colonists had, since that time, treated the Bosjesmans with mildness and humanity. The colonists had, indeed, for some time past, engaged the Bosjesmans so much in a sort of amicable intercourse, that they had given names to some of the oldest and most distinguished among them, by which they were now called; one had the name of Cupid, another the Curlew, another Kakkerlak, &c. &c. The men had no other cloathing except the skin thrown over the shoulders, and a jackal's skin in the centre of their bodies; but the women had a number of large pieces of leather, tied

one over the other, as aprons. Their only ornaments consisted in the intestines of animals, hung round the neck, as necklaces; and instead of beads round their heads, they had a bandeau of little pieces of ostrich egg-shell, all rounded to the same size, and strung upon twine. All of them, women as well as men, seemed passionately fond of tobacco, with which, to their great delight, they were richly furnished.

In the bed of the Great-river are found many pretty little pebbles, particularly of jasper, of agate, and of chalcedony. The Governor had, in his walk along the bank, collected a number of them, when news was brought him, that a colonist, who went out that morning by himself, had, at about an hour's distance up the stream, shot a river-horse, which he begged the Governor to come and inspect. The whole company immediately repaired to the spot; but before they arrived, the stream had carried away the monster, without the possibility of its being prevented. The leather thongs with which he was fastened to the shore, notwithstanding their strength and thickness, could not resist the force of the stream, but were torn asunder. Some Bosjesmans were dispatched along the bank of the river, to discover, if possible, whither it had been carried; and these brought word the next morning, at the very moment when the company were about to strike the tents, and proceed on their journey, that the dead river-horse was hanging on a rock, a good way down, on the other side of the stream; and they thought it very possible that he might be disengaged from the rock, and become a valuable booty. When the party reached the spot, the breadth and rapidity of the stream occasioned many doubts in their minds of the practicability of such an undertaking. However, the experiment appeared worth making; it was therefore proposed to unite together all the leather straps, which serve for harness to the draught oxen, and send the Bosjesmans, who were indisputably the most dexterous swimmers, over with them, to see what was to be done. This the savages were very ready to undertake; and four of them immediately set about the task. Each took the stem of a tree, across which they laid themselves; two of them took in their hands the ends of the leather thongs; a third carried the cloaths of himself and his comrades; and the fourth a firebrand, that they might have the means of warming themselves when they reached the opposite shore; thus only one hand of each was at liberty to assist them in swimming. It was astonishing to see, notwith-

standing, the rapidity with which they proceeded, and the two latter very soon reached the opposite shore. The other two had scarcely got to the middle of the stream, when the thongs they held in their hands became an auxiliary to the current, which carried the swimmers irresistibly down with amazing force, constraining them at length to abandon their enterprize and return. A living river-horse itself would, in truth, scarcely have had strength to draw such a weight directly across the stream.

Some other means of accomplishing the proposed end were now to be devised, and many were suggested, but none found practicable. The hope of retrieving the prize, however, induced a young colonist to attempt swimming over; but on account of the vast force of the stream, he was constrained to return, ere he had reached a fourth part of the way. In the mean time, the two Bosjesmans who had attained the other side of the water, having made a large fire, cut a quantity of the fat off the monster's back, which they baked and eat most voraciously. This sight tempted five more of the Bosjesmans to make a new essay; and this was conducted much more judiciously than the former. Each took a light flat piece of wood, which was fastened to the right shoulder, and under the arm; when in the water, the point was placed directly across against the stream, so that the great force of the water must come upon that, while the swimmer, with the left arm and the feet, struggled against the stream, in the same manner as a ship with spread sails, when, according to the sailor's language, it sails before the wind. They arrived quicker than the first, and almost without any effort, directly to the opposite point, and immediately applied all their strength, though in vain, to loosening the monster from the rock on which it hung.

In the mean time, a freed slave belonging to the Governor's train, an eager, spirited young fellow, and a very expert swimmer, had the boldness to attempt following the savages, without any artificial aid, and got, though slowly, very successfully about half way over; here, however, his strength failed him; he was carried away and sunk, but appeared again above the water, struggling with his little remaining powers to reach the shore. All efforts were vain; he was forced to abandon himself to the stream; but luckily at a turn in the river, which soon presented itself, he was carried to the land half dead. The Bosjesmans, when they saw his situation, quitted their fire, and hastening to his assistance, arrived at the spot just as he

crawled on shore exhausted with fatigue, and stiffened with cold. It was a truly affecting sight to behold the exertions made by the savages to recover him. They threw their skins over him, dried him, and rubbed him with their hands, and when he began somewhat to revive, carried him to the fire and laid him down by it. They then made him a bed with their skins, and put more wood on the fire, that he might be thoroughly warmed, rubbing his benumbed limbs over with the heated fat of the river-horse. But evening was now coming on, and in order to wait for the entire restoration of the unfortunate adventurer, it was necessary for the whole party to resolve on passing the night where they were. Some of the Bosjesmans on this side exerted themselves to carry the poor man's cloaths over to him, that he might not be prevented by the cold from sleeping and recovering strength for his return.

Early the next morning the Bosjesmans were seen conducting their *protegé* along the side of the stream, to seek out some more convenient spot for attempting to recross it. They soon arrived at one where was a small island in the river, which would of course much diminish the fatigue of crossing: a quantity of wood was then fastened together, on which he was laid, and thus the voyage was commenced. The young man, grown timid with the danger from which he had escaped, could not encounter the water again without great apprehension: he with the whole party however arrived very safely and tolerably quick at the island, whence, with the assistance of his new friends, he commenced the second, and most toilsome part of the undertaking. Two of the Bosjesmans kept on each side the bundle of wood, while the young man himself exerted all his remaining powers to push on his float. When they reached a bank in the river, where they were partially aground, having water only up to the middle, he was obliged to stop and rest awhile; but by this time he was so completely chilled, and his limbs were so benumbed with the cold, that it seemed almost impossible for him to proceed. In vain did his comrades, who looked anxiously on to see the termination of the adventure, call to him to take courage, to make, without delay, yet one more effort; he, as well as an old Bosjesman, the best swimmer of the set, seemed totally to have lost all thought, or presence of mind. At this critical moment, two of the Bosjesmans, who had remained on our side of the water, were induced, after some persuasion, to undertake the rescue of these unfortunate adventurers.

A large bundle of wood was fastened together with the utmost dispatch; on the ends of this they laid themselves, and to the middle was fastened a cord; this was held by those on shore, so that it might not fall into the water, and incommode them in swimming. It was astonishing to see with what promptitude they steered directly to the right spot, and came, notwithstanding the rapidity of the stream, to the unfortunate objects they sought. The latter had so far lost all coolness and presence of mind, that they had not the sense immediately to lay hold of the cord, and their deliverers were in the utmost danger of being carried away the next moment by the stream. At this critical point, the third, who was standing on the bank, seized the only means remaining to save his two companions. He pushed them before him into the deep water, and compelled them once more, in conjunction with him, to put forth all their strength, while the other two struggled with their utmost might against the stream. In this manner he at length succeeded in making them catch hold of the rope, by means of which all five were ultimately dragged in safety to the shore.

The Governor and his whole company were to the last degree affected with this transaction, and could not enough express the feelings inspired by the courage and humanity which the Bosjesmans had evinced throughout. Care was taken immediately to make a large fire, and to revive them with warm wine; the freed slave and three of the Bosjesmans were indeed in great want of such restoratives, for they were almost deprived of their senses through cold and fatigue, and a considerable time elapsed before they were perfectly recovered. The colonists were besides emulous with each other in shewing their kindness and good will towards the Bosjesmans, repeatedly assuring us that they should never have expected so much from them. The Governor embraced this opportunity to represent very forcibly to these people the injustice of which they were guilty towards the poor savages, exhorting them earnestly to reflect well upon what had passed, and thenceforward to change their conduct towards them. Such an admonition would certainly have been infinitely more necessary, but it would also have been far less effective in the neighbourhood of Graaff-Reynett. The present company protested unanimously that they were all inspired with the most lively desire to recompense the Bosjesmans for the behaviour they had that day witnessed. In fact, the

sequel proved that they were perfectly in earnest in their declarations and promises.

When the Bosjesmans were entirely recovered, the General ordered more ample presents of cloaths, with cloth, and a large provision of tobacco, to be distributed among them. While the people were executing these orders, a woman came forwards, and pointed to the river, over which a Bosjesman was now swimming with the cloaths of the freed slave. By means of the interpreter, she explained that he was her husband, and that he deserved equally a share of the presents. A part was immediately destined to him, and as he struggled with the stream, she looked perpetually towards him, making a very odd trilling noise, by striking her tongue against the roof of her mouth; this noise, it appeared, on enquiry, she considered as of great use in assisting a person in danger.

On the same morning the Governor prepared to continue his journey. Before his departure he summoned all the Bosjesmans to appear before him, when, by means of the interpreter, he assured them that if they would observe a quiet and orderly behaviour, no pains would be spared on the part of the Christians to render their lives more easy and happy, and as opportunity might be afforded, to administer to their little wants and necessities: he would himself, he added, from time to time send some of his own people to see how things were going on, and whether the promises made them were strictly observed; nay, he assured them that the government would never cease to shelter, to protect, and to love all Bosjesmans who abstained from plunder and murder, and shewed that they wished to live in peace with their neighbours. The field-commandant, Van-der-Walt, he concluded, whose possessions were the nearest to their present abode, and in whom they had already shewn so much confidence, should be commissioned by him to promote their good in every manner consistent with justice, and to assist all their laudable undertakings. They expressed their satisfaction by a variety of gestures, and by some incomprehensible words uttered to one another in a kind of singing tone; expressions which were redoubled when the General on taking leave held out his hand to the man who stood nearest to him. Many of them continued to run by the side of the waggons, and only separated themselves by degrees from the company on the second and third days.

A year after, General Janssens had the happiness of receiving a striking proof of the interest he had acquired among these savages. In July, of the dry and unfruitful year 1804, the field-commandant, John Van der Walt, came to the Cape Town, when he informed the Governor, that he, with his neighbours, had adhered strictly to the injunctions given them, and behaved in the most lenient and amicable manner towards the Bosjesmans. This conduct was attended with such happy consequences, that no robberies had been heard of in the country during the whole year: the Bosjesmans had, on the contrary, often come to them in a peaceable and orderly way, to beg food or tobacco. On such occasions, they had either given them food from their own stock, or gone with them into the field to shoot game for their supply. From the drought of that year, however, the quantity of game was exceedingly diminished, many having died, and others having gone to seek more hospitable quarters; even of the tame cattle, numbers had been carried away by hunger or disease, so that an universal scarcity of food was felt, which fell particularly hard upon the Bosjesmans. One day, therefore, a Bosjesman came to him, the same old man who had shewn so much ardour in rescuing the freed slave, bringing with him his son, a boy about ten years of age, begging that he would carry him to the Groot-Baas, who, the year before, had, in such a friendly manner, promised them his protection. He had nothing, he said, for the child to eat; and could hope for nothing better than that he and his mother would die of the hardships and necessities they endured. He was sure that the Groot-Baas was so good that he would not suffer the lad to perish, but would provide him with plenty of food and cloaths. The General freely granted the old man's petition; and the child was received into his house by the name of Flamingo, where he was educated, and became so attached to the family, that when the colony was taken by the English, he begged to accompany his benefactor to Europe. This is the very same lad who was at Paris with the General in 1807, and who was often mentioned in the papers of that time. I shall have occasion to mention him frequently in the sequel.

The company had not travelled many hours after parting with the last of their new friends, when they discovered another horde at a little distance from the road. The whole party rode up to them, and found two men and three women, of different ages, with several children. They did not evince

the least alarm, though the visit was quite unexpected to them, and greeted some of the colonists as old acquaintance. Some presents were made them of beads, buttons, &c. but they begged for tobacco; for this, they were told, they must come to the camp, as the company had none with them. One of the dragoons, however, having a small quantity, gave it to them, when they commenced a loud and singing sort of cry, during which they plucked some old reeds up from the earth, and began to smoke. On enquiry into the meaning of the cry, they said it was an eager expression of joy, and repeatedly assured the company that nothing was so grateful to them as tobacco. The habitations of these people consisted of holes in the ground, such as have been already described: there were two large ones, and several smaller for single persons or children. They had also a sort of earthen pot, but very rough and clumsily formed; and they evidently preferred for use the half shell of a gourd. The company soon quitted them, but were followed by some into the camp, which was pitched for the night at Sea-cow river's Port. Some of the huntsmen, just before the arrival of the savages, shot several head of game, solely with a view to their entertainment.

From all that has been here said, it is evident that the colonists of these parts, have, in the latter years, lived upon much better terms than formerly with the Bosjesmans. Whoever remembers the description given of these savages by Mr. Barrow, that in order merely to get a sight of them, they must be surrounded and fallen upon suddenly; and since great alarm is excited by such a step, conflicts often ensue which cost the lives of many.—Whoever remembers this account, will learn with pleasure, that they are become much more approachable, and that hopes may be entertained, that, at least during the lives of these hordes, peace will be maintained. It must, alas! however be added, that the conduct and behaviour of the savages is not the same everywhere, and at all times; and also that there is no other part in which the colonists are well-judging and humane enough to maintain such a relation with the Bosjesmans, as a concurrence of favourable circumstances had contributed to establish here, at the moment of which we treat. Sorry am I indeed to say that I shall seldom have an opportunity of presenting such pleasing and favourable pictures of the reciprocal conduct of the colonists and Bosjesmans towards each other. What I learnt and experienced in my later travels, will, at the utmost, excite the compassion of my readers for both parties; but will

scarcely ever be of a nature to excite interest or benevolent feelings towards them.

The friendly intercourse was here carried so far, that the colonists, when they had any thing to say to the Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood, or had little presents to make them, could always collect them together only by lighting a fire upon one of the surrounding hills. Things had even gone so far, that a few years before, a large stick, ornamented with metal buttons, had been given to the most intelligent person in one particular kraal, to distinguish him as a commander among them, and the rest were strongly exhorted to obey him as such. This man soon died, leaving the stick to his son; but, unfortunately, the latter died very soon after his father, which created such an alarm among the rest, that they brought back the stick, saying that they should all die if they kept it any longer. For the rest, they are exceedingly superstitious; and there are among them, as among the Caffres, people who are considered as magicians, and who are believed to have the power of commanding rain, wind, and thunder, at their pleasure. If unluckily one of these magicians happens to have predicted falsely several times in succession, he is thrust out of the kraal, and very likely burned, or put to death in some other way. One of the Bosjesmans, who visited the General on this journey, related, that such had been the case with his wife. Although at first a very great magician, latterly her prophecies had all proved false, and she was therefore put to death by the rest. He himself, for fear she might trouble him after her death, had dashed the head of the corpse to pieces with large stones, then buried her; and, for greater security, made a large fire over the grave.

The travellers now followed the course of the Sea-cow river upwards, and the next day, the twenty-second of July, reached the boundary-stone, which Governor Plettenberg erected not far from this river, on his progress through the country, in the year 1778. Fragments of the pillar were lying about the pedestal, on some of which were remains of the arms of the East-India Company sculptured upon them. Here the Governor was met by a messenger from the Cape Town, who brought him information of the renewal of war between France and England. This occasioned him to perform the remainder of his journey by the shortest route, with the utmost possible dispatch, and with a very small part of his train. A journey of one hundred and seventy hours was performed by him in only ten days, so that he re-entered the Cape

Town on the first of August. The companions from whom he parted company continued their journey under the conduct of Captain Paravicini, proceeding, by short days' travelling, along the bank of the Sea-cow river; and on the twenty-sixth, reached the north-west angle of the Snow Mountains, called Africa's Hoogte. From thence they proceeded nearly the same way through Koub and the Nieuweveld, by which the reader has accompanied the commissary-general, and on the thirtieth reached the farm of the commandant, De Clerk. Here we will take leave of these travellers, leaving them to pursue their journey leisurely to the Cape Town, and return to our own company, whom we left resting for the day at the source of the Chamka.

CHAP. XXXII.

Continuation of the Commissary-General's Journey through the Karroo.—The wandering Men.—Visit to De Beer's Farm in the Kweek Valley among the Black Mountains.—Character of this Man.—Otto's place upon the Cat River.—A Hottentot's Manner of explaining the Proportions of Time.

All the necessary preparations for our departure were made in the course of the day, and ample information procured how our journey through the desert might be performed in the safest and most convenient manner. It was resolved, in consequence of this information, to travel only the latter half of the day, in order to avoid the insupportable heat, which is so great about noon in this low flat country, that it soon overpowers both man and beast. We therefore set off on the twenty-first of February, in the afternoon, having dispatched our waggons forward in the morning. We followed the course of the Chamka, which we crossed very often, without finding in it the least traces of water; and having continued our progress for more than an hour by the light of the full moon in very serene pleasant weather, our tents were pitched for the night by the side of the river, and supper was prepared. The same order was observed on the following days, which passed one after another without the occurrence of any event, or any change of objects worthy of notice. As soon as breakfast was over, the tents were struck, and the waggons packed and sent slowly forwards. The thickest copse of mimosas that we could find was then sought out, under the shade of which we reposed till the hottest part of the day was over, and the sun began to decline, when we proceeded forwards, and by the time that night was fully closed in, reached the place where we were to pass the night, and where the camp was already prepared for us.

Notwithstanding this well-imagined regulation, our journey through the Karroo was attended with many hardships, as any one may easily conceive who has attended to the description of this country which I gave on a former occasion. At that time, when we crossed it, between the Roggeveld

and the Bokkeveld, the hot season was not so far advanced, and water was still to be found in the rivers; our journey through it, besides, lasted only a few days, and we were provided with many necessaries, of which we were now bereft, while neither we ourselves nor our horses were so much exhausted and so weary as we had been rendered by the exertions of the last three weeks.

So great was the want of water, that we were obliged almost always to dig holes in the bed of the river to the depth of four or five feet, in order to procure this indispensable necessary; and when thus procured, it was commonly so impregnated with particles of salt, or other foreign matter, that it was extremely nauseous. Even this miserable liquor would not have been obtained without the assistance of our experienced guide; for it must not be supposed that in an African river 'tis only necessary to dig, and water, such as it is, may any where be procured; such places are, on the contrary, very rare, and are only to be found where considerable cavities in the original masses of stone have been filled up with sand, clay, and argile. These spots are recognized by cross banks of the firm stone which appear not far from them down the stream, and which serve as dams to retain the subterranean water. Commonly there is also a considerable fall in the river above one of these reservoirs, and wherever such a fall occurs, it may almost be depended upon that water will be found a little way below.

The scanty supply of water, and the bad quality of the little we could procure, were doubly felt by us, since our stock of wine and other necessaries was very sensibly diminished; some articles, indeed, among our stores, were entirely exhausted. Our food had consisted for several days of nothing but mutton and biscuit. The wine which we brought with us from Graaff-Reynett had fermented with the heat, and was become perfectly sour; and even of this, our stock was so small that none could be spared for the dragoons and Hottentots; the only thing we could afford to strengthen and support them was a small ration of bad African brandy. Game was a thing we never saw in our whole progress through the Karroo, and though we would gladly have killed a young heifer, which we had bought by the way, the want of salt precluded us from availing ourselves even of this resource.

Every day's journey now carried us farther and farther from the Nieuweveld Mountains, and the monstrous wall of the Black Mountains rose before us at every moment more and more distinctly. These mountains form the whole

southern boundary of the Karroo, and divide it almost inaccessibly from the fertile country upon the coast. In looking back towards the northern mountains, one group was particularly distinguishable, from its striking resemblance with the mountains that bound the Table Valley and the Cape Town on the south side. A high hill, flattened on the top to a considerable extent, stands in the middle, which is encompassed by several other hills not so high, with rounded heads. The former bears the name of the Table Mountain, and the two next in height are called the Devil's Mount, and the Lion's Head, exactly like those at the Cape.

For five days we followed the course of the Chamka river, but then quitted it to take a direction towards the foot of the Black Mountains, intending to pass into the fertile country beyond them through a cleft broken by the Hex river. For the use of future travellers, I shall here set down the names of the Ausspannplatzen at which in the first four days we found a small supply of water.

On the 21st February, *de Holdrift*,—The Hollow Ford.
22nd ——— *de Koedoeskopf*,—The Antelope's Head.
23rd ——— *de Remhoogte*,—The Blockade Height.
24th ——— *de Blauwekranz*,—The Blue Girdle.

Late in the evening of this fourth day, before we reached the place where we were to stop for the night, we were met by a colonist on horseback, an inhabitant of the mountains that lay before us, who having heard of the Commissary-general's arrival in these parts, came with a pressing invitation that he would make a circuit of about half a day's journey, and rest himself at his farm for a day or two, where he might recruit his strength for the remainder of the way through the dreary Karroo. This man had, moreover, been so attentive to our probable wants, that he brought with him some stone flasks full of costly red wine, the produce of his own lands; this, after having been so long deprived of any good wine, and having had so many hardships to encounter, was a wonderful refreshment to us. He supported his invitation not a little by offering to replenish our nearly exhausted stores with a supply of this wine, and with many other productions of his lands. Among other things which he offered, not the least important was forage for our horses, the apprehended failure of which had already occasioned us no little uneasiness with respect to our future progress. Another strong reason for

accepting his invitation, was the still continued weakness of our poor invalid; from her continued exertions, and the want of proper nourishing food, her recovery was very much retarded. Finally, we were determined by the assurance that if this opportunity was lost, we could not in less than another week reach any place where our numerous wants might be supplied.

Our worthy host, therefore, whose name was Samuel de Beer, and who was field-cornet of his district, rode home that same night, to prepare every thing for our reception, and the next morning sent us fresh horses, that we might accomplish our day's journey with the greater ease and celerity. We set off early, and found about half way another human habitation, though only composed of reeds; but it was inhabited by a well-looking young man, and a neatly dressed woman, who had three or four young children about them. They regaled us with fresh milk, and regretted very much that they had no bread to offer, since they lived entirely upon the flesh of their flocks. These people were of the poorest class in the colony, who call themselves *wandering men*, because they have no fixed habitation, but move about with their flocks from place to place. There are many such nomade families, particularly in these parts; and in general they may be said to be of a description of persons very far from respectable: they often render themselves liable to punishment by atrocities towards the savages, and disobedience to the government, from whom they can often find the means of concealing their very existence. As they possess no lands, they are strangers to husbandry; they live upon the produce of their flocks, and are no way connected in society with any of their fellow creatures, so that they are almost sunk to the situation of savages. The government, it may well be supposed, do all in their power to repress such an abuse; to them it is a further injury, by their being deprived of the taxes which every land-owner is obliged to pay. To the rest of the colonists these people are often a great annoyance in another point of view: that they not unfrequently appropriate to their own use the places destined as Ausspannplatzen for travellers, and leave for the next person who comes that way nothing but the bare and naked soil. But the government has, alas! never been able to exert its utmost energy for the suppression of this grievance, since many families, whose houses and lands were burnt and destroyed in the last Caffre war, have been compelled through necessity to adopt a wandering life; while others, just within, or

perhaps even without the boundaries of the colony, by their plundering and marauding, bring an odium upon the name of christian, contriving at the same time to keep out of the reach of justice, and to set the laws at defiance.

The nearer we approached to the Black Mountains, the more hilly the country became. On the naked heights we found the *Geranium spinosum* growing in abundance, but at this moment it was destitute either of leaves or flowers; nothing was to be seen but tall thick woody stems, of an ash-grey colour, stuck all over with thorns of about half a finger's length. Farther on, we came to the Black river, a small stream of fine clear water, prettily overshadowed with African willows and Karree bushes. From thence, in half an hour, we reached Kweek Valley, the Field-cornet de Beer's place, and were received by him with new and very unexpected marks of honour. He had collected together the whole population of his district, consisting of about twenty persons, who were ranged in two rows on each side of the way up to his house. Every one had his musket with him, and as the Commissary-General rode through the ranks, the field-cornet, who was distinguished as the officer by a scabbard of gaily painted leather hanging by his side, and a drawn sword in his hand, made them present their arms. While the good peasants performed, to the best of their abilities, the manœuvres they had learned so hastily, two of our host's children, that the proper accompaniment of music might not be omitted, played upon a couple of miserable fifes the popular song which has for some time been so much in vogue in Africa, *Rejoice, ye of the living*. These forms gone through, the field-cornet, with a very important air, made his people form a line in front of the house, and at his command fire three salutes. The tricoloured Batavian flag was all this time waving over the house; and that the whole solemnity might conclude in a proper military manner, the people were made to continue under arms till the field-cornet had ushered our chief with all due ceremony into the house, and given the word of command to them to march off.

These ceremonials compleated, the field-cornet now appeared without his sword and scabbard, as the simple host alone, to welcome our chief and all the party most heartily to his house. His wife immediately set the table out with excellent grapes, melons, water-melons, and other fruits, and various sorts of costly wine, all the produce of their own lands. The dinner con-

sisted of several excellent dishes of fresh vegetables, poultry, and veal. Whoever does not understand the nature of this country, must consider it as something very extraordinary, to find, in the midst of such a dreary waste, a place so rich in productions of the earth of various kinds; but the whole enigma is explained to those who do know the country, by the single circumstance that an abundant spring flows from a chasm in the hill behind the house, and waters the fields, the vineyards, and the gardens. So much is done in this mild climate by such a bountiful and never-ceasing spring, that even the most ungrateful soil may be made to yield abundantly all that France and Germany together number among their most costly productions. Alas! such happy spots are, however, rare to be found, and they are, for the most part, at such a distance from all commercial intercourse, that their fertility is of no farther use than for the maintenance of a single family. An increased population and improved habits of industry, may, perhaps, among future generations, make such places considered as a principal source of the national riches: whereas, in the present time, in many of them, the unconquerable indolence of the owners is confined to providing but slenderly the absolute necessaries of life.

Many of the productions of this place are carried to the Cape Town—as, for instance, butter, dried fruits, and wine; the latter is of so excellent a quality, that it pays well the long transport. I carried a sample of it to Europe, which was esteemed by connoisseurs almost as highly as Constantia. Farther within the mountains there are places of equal fertility, among which may be particularly mentioned that of the widow Van der Burg, and another which belongs to a Dane, by name Nielsen. This latter, a very intelligent man, knew not how better to employ his great superfluity of oranges, than to extract the aetherial oil from the blossoms and the rinds of the fruit, in which he has succeeded so well, that he has already made it an object of great profit. He had lately begun to cultivate, with the same view, peppermint, anniseed, and fennel; and had found a ready sale for them to the apothecaries at the Cape Town, who had hitherto imported the aetherial oil of these plants from Europe. To the best of my knowledge, this is the first attempt of the kind ever made in Africa. The number of his orange-trees, of different kinds, amounted to two hundred and forty-four. He had sent this year to the Cape Town eighty-three bushels of dried peaches, and four

hundred pounds of raisins. In good years, besides gathering this quantity of grapes for drying, he makes from twelve to fifteen vessels of good wine.

As the grapes that grow in this part of the country are not all of equal goodness with those of the Kweek Valley, they are, for the most part, only used for making brandy; and the northern countries of Koub, Nieuweveld, and the Roggevelds, are supplied from hence with that article. At De Beer's farm the people were, at this very time, employed in sorting the grapes, in order to make brandy from the worst. But the brandy here, how strong soever it be made, has always an unpleasant flavour, one which is peculiar to spirits distilled from the fruit of this colony, and which must proceed from substances that would probably render the abundant use of it very injurious to the health. My friend Polemann, whom I have elsewhere mentioned as a very able chymist, has succeeded, by distilling it anew with charcoal-powder, in taking off this disagreeable flavour entirely, and making it almost equal to the best Cognac.

Our host, De Beer, was a man of so strangely mixed a character, that I cannot forbear describing him somewhat at large, especially since people of his stamp are not very rare in this country. The principal features of his character were vanity, bigotry, and a love of domination, accompanied by a certain querulousness, and political fanaticism. He was by no means deficient in understanding, as the state of his farm sufficiently testified; but he prided himself not a little upon it, as shewing how much wiser he was than his neighbours, and looked down with a sort of contempt upon them. He was born and educated in the village of Paarl, near the Cape Town, and from living in that more populous country, had acquired a sort of courtly manners and refinement, the want of which, among his neighbours, he failed not to dilate upon amply, and regret exceedingly. He had some reading, and was very choice in the selection of his phraseology, which formed a delightful contrast with the African Malay dialect, in which he was educated. He asserted, as is very common among his countrymen, that Africa would be the most fertile and blessed country upon the globe, would produce every thing, if the peasants were less idle and stupid. As a proof of this, he cited his own experience in the fertility of his place, on which he dilated so warmly, that it was impossible not to attract the attention and admiration of his hearers at the industry which in good truth he had manifested. Although he

was evidently by no means among the most affluent that we had witnessed in the colony, he constantly endeavoured to impress us with the idea that he was a very rich man; in like manner he was emulous to pass for a genius, who could always find the best way to execute any undertaking in which he engaged, and who, on every occasion, knew how to conduct himself with propriety. For that reason he received us with the military ceremonials above described, to show that he was every where at home, and knew perfectly well the marks of distinction with which great men ought to be received. He had been made field-cornet, as being the most intelligent and best-informed man of his district, but his vanity and love of domination made him hated in the highest degree by his neighbours and dependents; such indeed is very commonly the case with all who fill the same post. Almost every body complained of his pride, for there is nothing that people find harder to digest than a man's setting himself up as superior in wisdom to every body around him. Many had gone so far as absolutely to refuse obedience to him; and, in fact, we were obliged to stay here a day longer than was intended, merely because the people would not bring the draught oxen which he had required. When they were ordered by the Commissary-General, they were ready immediately.

The field-cornet made a great display of his piety. Every morning early, all his children, his slaves, and his Hottentots, were assembled for the purpose of devotion, which consisted in singing psalms, in reading a long prayer, and a chapter from the Bible. He did not even forego this ceremony during our stay, though at most places where we had been, the bustle occasioned by so large a party of guests, was considered as reason sufficient to dispense with the customary religious exercises. In earlier times he had had a great deal of intercourse with preachers and missionaries; he recited to us verses full of mysticism which he had himself composed, and anagrams on the names of men who had been particularly celebrated for their piety, which he himself had discovered. He had not absolutely taken any part in the disturbances at Graaff-Reynett, but he was a zealous advocate for freedom and the natural rights of man. He was well acquainted with all the great public events in Europe during the last fifteen years, and had so profound a veneration for some of the leading heroes of the French revolution, that he had given the names of two of the most celebrated among them to his two youngest sons: the one was called John Bonaparte, the other Nicholas Moreau. The former

unluckily, at only three years of age, fell into the cistern where the water was collected in the court before the house, and, no one being near to rescue him, was drowned.

On the twenty-ninth of February we left the Kweek Valley, and its hospitable inhabitants, and proceeded on our journey in a westerly direction, along the outermost declivities of the Black Mountains: this part of the country we thought exceeded in uniformity and barrenness any we had yet seen. We crossed for the last time the dry bed of the Chamka, which from hence runs westward along the foot of the Black Mountains, through which, farther on, it finds a passage. After a long day's journey, we reached in the evening the equally dry Cat-river, on the banks of which a colonist, by name Otto, has built a couple of miserable huts. Here we came to the first well we had seen in the course of our journey. It was twenty feet deep, and dug immediately on the bank of the river, but so scantily supplied with very brackish water, that when four of our horses had quenched their thirst, the rest were obliged to wait for some time till a fresh supply was collected. As water in this country is principally wanted for the cattle, and for watering the lands, the sinking wells is found but a very poor resource; and 'tis owing to this circumstance that so very few wells are to be seen. This in question served only to supply the house with water: the cattle were obliged to drink as well as they could at places in the bed of the river, which could scarcely be called any thing better than puddles.

Here, as in most other places where we had been, complaints were laid before the Commissary-General. A Hottentot in particular engaged our attention, by the simplicity with which he told his story. After he had harangued for a long time in broken Dutch, we collected so much as that he had agreed with a colonist to serve him for a certain time at fixed wages, as herdsman, but before the time expired, they had parted by mutual agreement. The dispute was how much of the time remained, consequently how much wages the master had a right to deduct from the sum which was to have been paid for the whole time. To illustrate this matter, the Hottentot gave us the following account. "My Baas," said he, "will have it that I was to serve so long," and here he stretched out his left arm and hand, and laid his right, with the little finger directly under the arm; "but I say that I only agreed to serve so long," and here he laid his right hand upon the joint of the left

Apparently, he meant by this to signify, that the proportion of the time he had served, with that he had agreed to serve, was the same as the proportion of what he pointed out of the arm to the whole length of it. At the same time he shewed us a small square stick, in which at every full moon he had made a little notch, with a double one at the full moon, when he quitted the colonist's service. As the latter was present, and several of the colonists and Hottentots, who attended as auditors, could ascertain exactly the time of entering on the service, the conclusion was, as is very commonly the case, that both the master and the servant were somewhat in the wrong; that the one reckoned too much of the time expired, the other too little, and that according to the Hottentot's mode of measuring, the time expired came to about the knuckle. The Hottentots understand no other mode of measuring time but by lunar months and days; they have no idea of the division of the day into hours. If a man asks a Hottentot how far it is to such, or such a place, he either makes no answer, or points to a certain spot in the heavens, and says: "The sun will be there when you get to it."

CHAP. XXXIII.

Continuation of the Journey over the Karroo.—Rugged Valley among the Black Mountains.—Wolvefontein.—The Zoute-Vlakte.—Account of a Drunkard there.—The Rietfontein.—An old Soldier mistakes the Author for one of Prince Lichtenstein's Family.—His unfortunate Situation.—Pinaarskloof.—The Klipfontein.—Draay.—The Term Little Ride, as used by the Colonists, explained.—Mode of conducting Auctions.—Valley of the Hex-river.—Sumptuous Entertainments given by the rich Colonists.—Some of the Dishes described.

At the close of the following day our camp was pitched by the river Dweika, which here forms the boundary between the districts of Stellenbosch and Graaff-Reynett, and which, not far from hence, joins the Chamka. In our route this day there was only a hill between us and the place where these united rivers break their way through the Black Mountains. This hill I ascended, accompanied by Captain Alberti, and took a bird's-eye view of the valley below, through which these rivers, when they are full, carry their waters towards the coast, assisting to increase the devastating waters of the Gaurits river. We saw here some of the boldest rocks that are perhaps to be seen all the world over; but they are to such a degree wild and rugged, so naked and bare does the deep chasm yawn before us, that it appears as if nature had sketched the plan of a fine country, but had been disturbed in the midst of her creation, and that all must be cloathed with green, one part rounded off, another filled up, to complete the design, and form a finished and spirited whole. I have enquired a hundred times, but never found any body that could even name to me the man who had followed the course of this valley, to examine whether farther in some beautiful spots might not be discovered, with perhaps waterfalls, grottoes, or the like. There is a more direct way over the hills to Zwellendam, to the left of which lie the Elephant's river and the Flat-kloof; but it is rugged and difficult beyond any other mountain passage in the whole colony, and can scarcely be traversed except on foot.

The interior valleys are rich and wild ; they are inhabited by the zebra, which is elsewhere become very rare, and by the spotted antelope and roebuck in great abundance: the almost extirpated blue antelope *(antilope leucophæa)* is even occasionally to be found there.

The abovementioned colonist Nielsen, a man whose credibility I have no reason to doubt, told me also that in many parts of these mountains there are lions in such numbers, that he once in a hunting party saw two-and-twenty together. Most of them were young; only eight were full grown. He had taken his oxen from his waggon, and left them to graze at an open place near a wood, but at sight of these creatures, he with his Hottentots fled to take refuge under the cover of the waggon, leaving his oxen as their prey, six of which were killed and carried away by them, without his venturing to fire a single shot.

The next day's journey was, from the accustomed heat, want of water, and wearisome uniformity of the country, passed with the usual fatigue. In the evening we came to a pretty spot, and pitched our tents in the bed of a small river called the buffalo's river, which flows into the Dweika. The place where we encamped has water almost all the year round, and is called the Wolvefontein. The mimosas for a considerable way on the river side, downwards, had fresher leaves than we had seen for a long time, and their advantageous situation was farther manifested by the growth of the thorns, some of which measured from five to six inches and a half in length ; at their roots was growing a small quantity of grass. Although the standing water which we found here and there had the accustomed flavour of natron, by making small holes of about two feet deep, very drinkable water was soon procured. That we might collect the greatest quantity possible, one of these little wells was dug by the side of every tent, from which we acquired the knowledge of an extraordinary circumstance, that while one hole yielded the best flavoured water possible, in another, not ten paces from it, the water was perfectly brackish. It should almost appear therefore as if the natron lay sometimes only in small patches below the earth. It is certain that occasionally the freshest springs will rise out of ground the surface of which is covered with natron, and by digging in the same ground, the water obtained is extremely disagreeable. There are farms, where in one part the wine that grows will be excellent, while the vines on a neighbouring land, from the quantity of natron

with which it is impregnated, will be perfectly diseased, scarcely having a branch upon them capable of bearing fruit. A striking example of this phœnomenon may be seen at Constantia, where the celebrated wine which bears that name is made.

On the third of March, in the evening, we went a little out of our way, for the purpose of passing the night at an insignificant farm, which lay in a chasm in the mountains. We found a couple of miserable reed huts, but the inhabitants were hospitable, and willingly resigned to us their slender repast of fresh milk. The father-in-law of the owner had formerly lived in the Zuureveld, but was so completely plundered by the Caffres, that his children, though themselves in no very prosperous situation, were obliged to lodge and maintain him. This place was called Geelboksfontein. The narrow entrance to the valley appeared to us, as we took our leave of it the next morning at sun-rise, compared with the arid plain over which we were still travelling, a very romantic spot.

When we had crossed the Buffalo's river, the bed of which was perfectly dry, we came about noon to the *Zoute Vlakte*, or Salt Plain, as it is called, on account of the natron which every where rises out of the ground. Here lived a certain John Krieger, whose brother, the Field-Commandant of the Roggeveld, had arrived just before us, with fresh teams of oxen for our waggons. This place belongs to the district of the Cold Bokkeveld, although it is three days' journey from it; but it is nearer to that district than to any other more populous region. In winter, when the inhabitants of the Bokkeveld come down to their *legplatzen* in the Karroo, the Zoute Vlakte is not so entirely desolate. Besides our old acquaintance from the Roggeveld, we met here another family of colonists, who were on their way to the Cape. They excited our attention more particularly, from the circumstance that amongst them was the first person, an African born, whom we had seen drunk during our whole journey. The man wrangled with our host, disputed with all the rest of the party, was cross to his wife; but notwithstanding his being so extremely in liquor, not an oath, or even an unseemly word, escaped him.

We had now before us a course of ten hours over the dryest part of the Karroo, in which there was no house to be seen, nor any hope of finding even a drop of water. The overpowering heat had almost exhausted the strength

of our horses; it was therefore determined that we should once more proceed on our journey by night; and we continued our march from the time that the moon rose till two o'clock in the morning. The way was smooth and well tracked; round us stretched the wide spread plain, and nothing interrupted the profound silence that reigned over the spot, except the braying of a quagga, at a great distance: this appeared the more remarkable, since one single hare was the only wild animal we had now seen for ten days. We had lately, indeed, observed upon the ground some traces of the feet of ostriches, which we surveyed with satisfaction and interest, as a proof that some kind of living creature was not far off.

In the morning we were charmed with the glorious, and in this part of Africa, rare, sight of the sun rising in the horizon of the monstrous plain behind us; and at eight o'clock we arrived at the Rietfontein, our destined place of rest. The inhabitants were not then resident there; and we were received at the entrance of a small damp hut, without windows or chimney, by an old German, formerly a soldier in the service of the East India Company, now serving the owner of the place as overseer of his cattle and slaves. Not far from this wretched cabin stood a somewhat more spacious, but very ruinous straw hut, of the sort which is here called *hartebeesthuisje*. This we made our people clean out, and put in a little order, and then took up our abode in it, till the waggons with our tents arrived. In the little garden were nice young beans and ripe figs, of which we availed ourselves for our dinner and dessert; thus we soon found ourselves quite at home, in an abode which at first appeared so revolting, glad of any thing which afforded us shade, and where we could be tolerably cool. The old soldier fatigued us with his assiduity, and with the histories he related of his adventures and campaigns. He was a native of Julich, by name D. Hessler, and had served for a long time in the Austrian army, as a hussar, particularly in the regiment of Esterhazy, and under Wurmser: with the true garrulousness of old age, he was never weary of repeating the same thing over and over again. My name, which he caught by chance, awakened in him a thousand interesting recollections, with regard to the house of Lichtenstein, in Austria, which he had known very well, and one of the princes of which he had served in the quality of a body hussar. As I spoke to him in his mother tongue, and seemed to interest myself in his stories, he would insist upon it that I must

belong to this distinguished family; nor, how earnestly soever I sought to correct his error, would he be persuaded but that I was the same whom he had seen as a boy, and often carried in his arms; he even discovered in my features a strong likeness to the family. It was not without some difficulty that I could escape from his caresses. He then related to us how unhappy he was in his old age, and in how much misery he was ending a life which began under such happy auspices. His master, he said, was seldom there: for the greater part of the year he saw no other human being but his black subjects, and he lived almost entirely upon dried mutton, and biltong. Besides this, he was in constant apprehensions for his personal safety, since there were numbers of marauders swarming about these solitary regions: only a few weeks before, a party of them, in the absence of his master, had stolen some oxen and the greater part of the household goods, threatening to kill him, if he did not remain quiet. In fact, among the white people of the colony there are none who lead such wretched lives as servants of this description. This situation is the last resource of worn-out invalids, who, being destitute of every kind of knowledge, and rough in their manners, can seldom find any other means of supporting themselves. Happily, the service required of them is not hard; and the disagreeableness of their situation consists more in being deprived of their accustomed enjoyments, in being separated from the world, and in the absence of those comforts and conveniences so desirable in old age, than in sustaining any positive evil. But their pay is small, and as old soldiers, and people of low descent, they may well be pardoned if they seek a compensation for all other privations in the enjoyment of strong liquors. The propensity to this is so universal among them, that the whole class are known among the colonists by the general appellation of *the drunkards*. Such of these worn-out invalids as have talents beyond the generality of their brethren, that is to say, who can read and write, engage themselves to the peasants as domestic teachers, when they have the title of *meester*. But among them there are few indeed capable of infusing into the minds of African colonists any taste for European cultivation; and to the want of instruction among these Africans, compared with persons of the same rank among the Europeans, is to be ascribed their much less rigid ideas of moral worth, and the roughness of manners ascribed to them

by such Europeans as enter into their service. For it is easily to be imagined that this is the lot of only the very lowest among the European emigrants, since those who are better educated, and are endowed with any kind of talents, as for example, all who understand any mechanical trade, can easily find employment in the Cape Town.

At noon the following day we quitted the westerly direction which we had hitherto taken, and turned towards the mountains to the south. We left the Karroo of the Roggeveld to the right, and for some hours saw plainly in the distance the Tower Mountain, at the foot of which we had passed on the seventeenth of November, in our former journey through the Karroo. The country around us soon began to assume a very different aspect. Instead of the straight, level track we had been so long pursuing, over a smooth schist, we now by degrees ascended rugged untracked hills. Mountains of a considerable height, at whose feet vast granite blocks, which had rolled down, obstructed the way, rose menacing before us, closing from us alternately all distant view, or, at openings, presenting us with a prospect over wild and rude valleys. At the end of the Pinaarskloof, a spacious rocky valley, we came to a place which was called with the strictest justice the *Klipfontein*, rocky fountain. The house itself was built against a hill, the top of which consisted of masses of sand-stone, continuing like a wall for the space of a mile, and the ground was covered with vast blocks of granite, which had rolled down from the hills that bordered the other side of the valley. In comparison with the Karroo, vegetation might however here be called flourishing: among the rocks, especially on the south side of the sand-stone wall, grew a variety of plants, some of an aromatic kind, and many wholly new to me.

Good water, fresh milk, with strong chicken-broth, and, above all, the heartiness with which we were received by the inhabitants, in a poor house, built partly of clay, partly of straw, made the few hours that we rested here pass very pleasantly. In the cool of the evening we proceeded onwards, and in some hours arrived at Draay, the place of a person by name Bek. Our hopes of finding at this place, which was one of considerable note, the rest and refreshment we began very much to want, was cruelly damped on our arrival. Nobody was at home; every thing was locked up; no bed, no supper was to be obtained, excepting by breaking the house open. A couple

of slaves said, that their master and mistress were gone out on a *little ride.* We enquired whither?—the answer was, into the country of Zwellendam; so that this little ride was a distance of, perhaps, fifteen German miles.

It must be observed, that every journey taken for pleasure, passes here as a *little ride;* and no one must be surprized to hear of a little ride which lasts for a week together. In fact, by this expression is to be understood the friendly visits made to connections and acquaintance; and such kind of journeys form the principal amusement of the colonists. They are particularly fond of visiting, on a Sunday, any relations who live at the distance of three or four hours. For this purpose, every member of the family, the wives and daughters not excepted, has a riding-horse, upon which they go a considerable distance in a short time. When one meets such a cavalcade, one is very doubtful whether most to admire the boldness of the riders, that of the women in particular, or the sure-footedness of the horses, so swift and so safely do they go up hill and down hill, over the steepest declivities, and the most rough and rocky roads. In the more wealthy parts of the country the colonists have commonly light pleasure-waggons, on purpose for going out on these parties; they are drawn by six or eight spirited horses; but the younger part of the fair sex always prefer riding on horseback. In a country where there are, properly speaking, no places of amusement; where there are no popular festivals, no fairs; where there is not even such a thing as a tavern, and where dancing and all sports are every where, except at the Cape Town, and in its neighbourhood, regarded as inconsistent with decorum; scarcely any mode of recreation remains, but such kind of visits. People amuse each other in the best manner they are able; relate all the recent family occurrences; lament the absent neighbours, and the like; and when conversation begins to flag, the scene is relieved by having recourse to the exercises of devotion. The whole company seat themselves round a table and sing psalms; or one reads a sermon, or some chapters from the Bible; a ceremony which is performed commonly every evening when there are no visitors.

The great occasion of festivity in this country is a wedding, when all the nearest relations, and in a country where every body is a cousin, or a nephew or niece, the number of these relations is not inconsiderable—the whole tribe are invited, and feasted for several days together. The christening of a child

is rarely celebrated, because the ceremony must in most instances be necessarily performed in a church at a very considerable distance; the birth-day is still less frequently celebrated. The only things which in any sort resemble public assemblies or popular festivals, are the auctions which take place, when, in consequence of a division of inheritance, or from unfortunate circumstances, a farm is to be sold. This is done by the secretary to the drosty, as auctioneer, *Vendemeester*, and every one far and near throngs to the place, if not with any idea of purchasing, to make one among the company, and partake of the revelry going forwards; for, how great soever may be the number of guests, the purchaser must feast them all, and this, if he be a man of a generous spirit, he does very handsomely. Here, as at our popular festivals and fairs, they laugh, they joke, and throw aside all restraint. Sometimes wine also is busy among the company, and heats them till disputes grow frequent, but rarely indeed do they proceed from words to blows; even amidst all their revelry, the phlegmatic character of the African colonist still maintains itself. Thus much by way of elucidation of the *little ride.*

At the wet season of the year, the place where we were now is one of the gayest and most fertile among these hills. The house stands in a large plain, which stretches a long way towards the east, as far as a spot mentioned in other travels by the name of *Constable's plain.* Near the house, the road to the Hex river crosses that from the Cold Bokkeveld to Constable's plain, for which reason the place is called *de Kruispad*, the Cross-way. In winter the fields bear the finest grass in great abundance, but at this moment every part about the house was so bare, that it looked like a thrashing floor; nor could we, in the total absence of fresh food for our horses, procure even dry forage for them. Our party in this dilemma laid themselves down to rest awhile, some in sheds, some in the open air, and in the middle of the night set off again. The road lay over a very rugged stony path, at the corner of the mountain, which, on account of the perpendicular walls of rock rising on each-side, was called *de Straat*, the Streight. At day-break we reached the summit of the hill, from which we descended for several hours through an absolute labyrinth of rocks, into the valley of the Hex-river, and arrived about nine in the morning at the very pleasant and fertile place of one of the richest colonists that we had any where seen, by name Wouter de Vos.

The Hex river, with many little branches, rises in the eastern side of these mountains, snow-clad mountains as they are in winter; the western side supplies the warm and cold Bokkeveld with springs. This river crosses these great mountains in a strait direction from north to south, and penetrates through a narrow chasm into the valley of the Breede river, with which it unites itself about an hour and a half north of the hot springs and the Brand valley. Within the mountains it runs for a distance of five hours through a deep, not very broad, and very obscure valley, to which, on that account, the first discoverer of it gave the name of the Hex valley, that is to say, the *witch's* valley. In this valley are four farms, which at the first glance speak the fertility of the spot. The first, that at which we now arrived, is called Buffelskraal: it yields abundantly all things that I have formerly mentioned as productions of the Bokkevelds. Although our visit was not expected, we were entertained most profusely, and the table was spread with every thing that is to be seen at a splendid dinner in the Cape Town. One seems suddenly transported into a new country, on finding, so near the empty habitations of the Karroo, the farms of the Hex river. From choice we declined the beds offered us in the house, and pitched our tents under the thick shade of a little grove of eight chesnut and walnut trees, which our host had some years before planted by the river side. Farther above and below lay the gardens, the vine grounds, the orange gardens, and meadows, belonging to the farm, in which every thing is produced in the greatest luxuriance. The declivities of the hills and the heights furnish pasture for the horses and the flocks, but the uncommon drought of this year had so much burnt up the grass and the plants, that our host was obliged to send his herds and flocks to seek their food in other parts.

We stopped here a day and half to rest and refresh ourselves, and on the following day, in the afternoon, proceeded farther down the Hex river. In about an hour we reached the second farm, which belongs to a person of the name of Jordan. On this farm a most excellent wine is produced, of the sort which is here called Madeira. It is made and pressed with greater care than is usually bestowed, and amply repays the pains by its great superiority. Wine of this kind, ten years old, a sample of which was set before us by our host, is in spirit and flavour equal to the best produced about the Cape Town, and in Hottentots'-holland. A few days before, a large

fish-otter, of which there are numbers in the Hex river, was taken here: this animal had never before come in my way. I was presented with the skin, which was still perfect; it is about three feet and a half in length, and is covered with hair of a dark grey colour. On the very same day I found a skull of this animal by the river side.

We passed the night at the third farm, the Vendutiekraal, whose owner is called Rolof van der Merwe. This man was married to a third wife, who had had two husbands before him, so that nine children, whom we found here, belonged to five different marriages. Besides these, the good people had undertaken the care of two orphans, children of a relation. We were here entertained with a genuine African dish, which is a sort of soup made of baked gourds, with small onions sliced in, some salt fish, and Cayenne pepper: it is called *Kalebassbreedi*,* and even to the palates of the north of Europe, which do not easily accommodate themselves to the hotly spiced dishes of the Cape, is an agreeable kind of food. Although the vegetables here are seldom dressed with butter, but almost entirely with the clarified tail-fat of the sheep, yet even, to the greatest epicure in this way, these same vegetables have in no part a higher relish than as they come from the hand of the African cooks. The persons who hold the office of cooks are commonly men slaves, or, in the poorer parts of the country, female Hottentots; but the mistress of the house overlooks the kitchen so assiduously, that very rarely indeed can any complaints be made with justice of want of cleanliness in the cookery.

Early in the morning of the next day we proceeded on our journey, and after a few moments chat at the fourth farm, the smallest of the four, bent our course along the narrow pass through which the Hex river runs into the plain of the Breede river. It is about half an hour long, enclosed by hills of a considerable height, and extremely steep, which give it a venerable

---

* *Kalebass*, a gourd.—*Breedi* signifies in the Madagascar tongue *Spinage*; the word is brought hither by the slaves, and at present, throughout the whole colony, every sort of vegetable which, like cabbage, spinage, or sorrel, is cut to pieces and dressed with Cayenne pepper, is included under the general term *Breedi*. To a particular sort of *Rumex* in its state as a plant, this name is also given. In the Portuguese language, the *Blitum virgatum*, which is used as a vegetable for the table, bears the name of *Bredos*.

appearance. The banks are every where narrow, and the river is five times crossed in this short distance, in order to keep on the side where there is the most space. The road is difficult, from the vast numbers of rounded flints which abound both there and in the bed of the river. In quitting this strait, the hills of the Bosjesveld, the Brand valley, and Goudinie, are all seen at the distance of about a German mile and half, and the traveller arrives in the country not far from Roodezand, of which some account has been already given.

Almost all the colonists here belong to the numerous family of Du Toit. The field-cornet of the district, one of this family, who came to meet us with a team of fresh oxen, is the proprietor of a very large farm at the entrance of the Hex river's kloof: another of the family is the owner of a considerable place on the Breede river: at the former we were entertained at dinner in a more than usually hospitable manner; at the latter we passed the night, and were met there by a great number of the relations. As there are scarcely christian names enough to distinguish each particular member of such a numerous family, it is customary where this is the case, and perhaps two or three have the same christian name, to distinguish them by certain nick-names, which are sometimes taken from personal qualities, but are more frequently derived from their farms. Our present host was therefore commonly called Peter Roodewal, not Peter du Toit, because the former is the name of his farm. We were here entertained so profusely, that it almost appeared as if our host was desirous of making us amends at a single meal for all the privations to which we had been subjected in our journey through the Karroo. In the fertile regions of the colony, it is very usual to set before any stranger guests, specimens of every thing which the country produces either of animal or vegetable, either in the field or in the garden, dressed in every way that can evince the most profound knowledge in the science of cookery. For this reason it is scarcely possible to count the number of dishes brought on every time the table is fresh covered. The first dish is commonly a strong soup made of fowls, mutton, or veal, seasoned with red pepper and ginger, and flavoured with cucumbers and tamarinds. This is a favourite dish throughout all India, and is known to every traveller into that country by the name of *Kerri;* one which is applied to any kind of meat prepared with the seasoning above mentioned, but which belongs properly to the soup just described. According to the Batavian customs, which are copied by the inhabitants of

the Cape in every thing relating to the luxuries of the table, half cooked rice is often eaten with the *kerri* instead of bread. Next to this dish comes fish or beef, both cooked with a variety of sauces, and many sorts of *Atjar* * and *Sambal*. Under the name of *Atjar* is included such a vast variety of things dressed with vinegar, and made very hot with spices, that it is scarcely possible to enumerate them all; cauliflowers, French beans, gherkins, lemons, unripe maize, and the young shoots of the bamboo, may be mentioned as among the most favourite dishes of this description. *Sambal* is a mixture of gherkins cut small, onions, anchovies, Cayenne pepper, and vinegar. The natives commonly season these dishes besides with the green pods of Cayenne pepper, some of which they have lying by them during dinner. At all times of the year abundance of fresh vegetables are to be seen at the tables of the colonists in these countries, since the cold is never so great, but that they will grow without any trouble in the open air.

The *roti* follows next, which is commonly a sucking pig, a turkey, or some kind of game: this is accompanied by six or eight sorts of preserved fruits, which are handed round in little tureens. Chicken and pigeon pasties close the list of warm dishes. In the country about the Breede river, these pasties are made in a variety of pretty forms, and the mistresses of the houses seek to establish their fame as cooks more particularly by making them at once pretty to the eye, and savory to the taste. For this reason, here, as well as at several other places, so many of these pasties were set before us, made in such a variety of ways, that our people were even satiated with them. But an European *gourmand* would scarcely envy the Africans any of their good things so much as the excellent desserts with which the table is last of all spread. The very sight of such an abundance of fruit is in itself a source of enjoyment; no one can avoid feeling a sort of delight at the many-coloured and fragrant-smelling pyramids which he beholds rising like so many pictures from the fruit-baskets. According to the season, these desserts consist of melons, water-melons, various sorts of grapes, mulberries, peaches, apricots, pomegranates, many sorts of oranges, figs, bananas, fresh almonds, and roasted chesnuts; to which may be added, several of our common sorts of

* This is a Malayan word, and should be written thus, not *Azia*, as it is to be found in most of the German writers.

European, and more rare East and West India fruits, which are cultivated in the gardens here. During the meals, a number of slaves are eagerly busied in waiting, while others stand about here and there behind the guests, with bunches of ostrich feathers in their hands, which they wave to and fro to keep off the flies. Before and after the meal, water is set before the guest to wash his hands and face.

This prodigality in the substantial farmers will be easily excused, when we see how bountifully nature herself has bestowed every thing which can contribute towards nourishing the body in the most agreeable manner. Voluntary abstinence would be here, if not absolutely blameable, at least very unnatural, and would rather be looked upon with contempt than admiration. All these things are obtained with so little exertion, the value of what any one foregoes is so insignificant, that it might fairly be reckoned a fault not to enjoy what nature so liberally offers.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Arrival of the Party at Goudinie.— Petition presented to the Commissary-General by the People of that Country respecting a Missionary.—Some Observations upon the African Missionaries in general.—Return to Roodezand.—Roodezand-Kloof.—The Country about the Berg River.—Reflections on the Tenures by Fief, and the Freehold Tenures in the Colony.

On the tenth of March we continued our journey towards Roodezand, and came at noon to a farm which lay on a little height by the side of the Breede river, whence we had a very pleasant view over the valley of Goudinie, so richly cultivated, intersected by so many stre as, and enclosed with hills in such an amphitheatre-like manner. We found here, very unexpectedly, a number of people assembled; and the owner, by name Du Plessis, invited the Commissary-General and the party in a very pressing manner to stop awhile, since these people had a petition to present to him. This was, that he would permit a missionary, who was one of the company, and who had been sent into the country for the purpose of instructing and converting the heathens, to establish himself in those parts, and instruct the people thereabouts. They all loved the man they said exceedingly, and his weak health would not permit him to follow the proper object of his mission: they were willing alternately to board and lodge him, provided he would explain to them twice a week some chapters of the Bible, sometimes pray with them, and occasionally, when they wished it, speak words of edification to them. Their real view was to have him established among them, as a regular preacher, so that they might by degrees erect themselves into a separate parish, and get rid of their dependence on the church of Roodezand.

In order to substantiate such an accusation, I must enter upon this subject somewhat more at large. The example of the pious George Smith, and the Herrnhuter missionaries at Baviansklоof, had, in the latter years of the last century, prompted the missionary societies in England and Holland to imitate an undertaking which was become so celebrated: several persons were in

consequence sent hither, to preach the gospel to the savages, and convert them to Christianity. These societies, particularly in Holland, were, however, very careless in their choice of the persons sent, and took, for want of more respectable practitioners, mechanics and schoolmasters, who could not continue their trades in Europe, giving them handsome salaries, and paying the expenses of the voyage. Most of these, I except only three or four really worthy men, considered the voyage to Africa only as a means of leading a more easy and agreeable life than they led at home, and no sooner arrived at the place of their destination, than, seeming to forget all their boasted zeal, and the call which they had professed to feel, they thought only of performing the duties undertaken so far as was necessary to give some colour of pretence for claiming the promised stipend. Preparations were outwardly made for transporting themselves to the boundary of the colony, but when it came to the point, they seldom got farther than three or four days' journey from the Cape Town. The propensity of the colonists to piety smoothed the way to them every where: a venerable and modest demeanour secured them the most respectful reception wherever they came; and some new prayers, enveloped in terms of obscurity and mystery, with two or three benedictions, and a chapter or two out of the Bible read in the whining tone of the Dutch pietists, soon won every heart.

Nowhere were these adventurers received with greater eagerness than in the country about Roodezand and the Breede river, where, even at that time, the person mentioned in the second part of this work, Domine V....,* was suspended by the government in the midst of his orthodox proceedings, and where the people were but too much disposed to decry his more worthy successor, a man of a mild and tolerant disposition, as a teacher of heretical and erroneous doctrines. Many had consequently forsaken the church, and instead of going thither, assembled at each others houses to perform their exercises of devotion. Very opportune then to them was the arrival of the new travelling missionaries, since they had long ago exhausted all their former sermons, having read them over and over at their meetings, till they had almost learned them by heart; nor was it very unnatural that the preachers should find themselves so well situated among these affluent and hospitable

* See Part II. page 143. of the English translation.

people, as that they should have no great inclination to exchange the life they led there, for the hardships and inconveniences to be encountered among rude savages. Marriages with the daughters of the pious citizens came afterwards in the way, and then all idea of any farther journeyings must necessarily be abandoned. But that they might have something to relate to the missionary societies, by whom they were employed, they set about preaching to the Hottentots who were in service among the neighbouring colonists, who had long known almost as much of Christianity as their masters, and then boasted loudly, in the letters they wrote to Europe, of the progress they had made in their task of conversion. Many of these letters were published with great ceremony in the *Gedenks-schriften der Zendelings Maatschappy te Haarlem*, in all their genuine pomp of style and language. Those who wish really to understand the value of the African missionaries, and their works, will do well to read them.

" Every year, the number of missionaries who came over increased. Some of them, chiefly the English ones, did, indeed, go among the savages; but the greater part remained in the country, about Roodezand, living a fortnight with one colonist, a month with another, regularly receiving the salary, towards which many a penitent sinner in Europe had contributed his ducats, under the pious idea of assisting in leading heathens from the paths of error to those of truth. None of these holy messengers ever thought of crossing the Karroo, to instruct the distant and poorer colonists of those parts, who live at many days' journey from the nearest church, and to whom their visits might have proved a real substantial service. No, they must chuse an abode in which they could live better, and where any doubt in the orthodoxy of the preacher was easily obviated; since they had only to absolve the multitude of their disciples from the sins to which they were most inclined, to insure themselves every where a favourable reception. Hitherto the assemblies had been held sometimes at one house, sometimes at another, without any farther solemnities; and the government had very wisely never attempted to interpose, for the double reason, that the missionaries, as such, were in no way under their controul; and that the abuse had not yet gone so far, as that the ecclesiastical council at Roodezand had thought proper to make complaints against it.

But, since a pious woman, at the Cape Town, had, under the English

government, herself, built a large house of assembly, for the purposes of evening devotion, in which the missionaries gave lectures, the people in the country about Roodezand took it into their heads that they too would have such an auxiliary church, in which they could alternately either preach themselves, or retain such preachers as should happen best to please them. The place for this church was already chosen, and the Commissary-General was now solicited to give his permission for the missionary, Foster, to be received as the preacher elected by them; and thus to sanction, in a certain degree, the whole undertaking. It was impossible, however, not to be somewhat astonished at this choice; since, among all these lazy sons of piety, scarcely could one have been found less prepossessing in every respect than this Foster. He was about fifty years of age, and had formerly gained a livelihood, in Holland, as teacher of the catechisms; he resolved, therefore, notwithstanding he had children, who had a just claim on his attention, to go and teach his catechisms to the heathens, and instruct them in Christianity. It is scarcely possible to conceive a more lamentable figure, a more stupid and miserable appearance, than he made, when he presented himself before us; it would be difficult, indeed, to decide, whether his figure was most fitted to excite compassion or laughter. Dressed in a white linen waistcoat, black breeches, worsted stockings, thick-soled shoes, his head, on account of the rheumatism, wrapped round with several dirty handkerchiefs, and from weakness supporting himself with difficulty: there he stood before us without a word of salutation to offer, much less with any reasons to submit to the consideration of the person whose favour he had to solicit, why that favour should be granted. The by-standers, however, urged, as excuses for his apparent want of politeness, that he was hard of hearing, that his sight was extremely weak, and that he was little acquainted with the customs of the world.

While the Commissary-General was talking with the people in the inner-room, our missionary walked slowly up and down the entry, from corner to corner, with his arms folded, and sighing repeatedly, sometimes with his eyes raised towards Heaven, moving his lips, as if uttering a silent prayer. No one could persuade themselves, but with the utmost difficulty, that this was the man to whom these people were so anxious to commit the care of their souls; or perhaps it was his miserable aspect, his air of suffering,

that prejudiced them so much in his favour. Are not the Lazaroni of Naples venerated as saints?—It would be remarkable, if a conformity of character between the inhabitants of Southern Africa, and the Italians, who live in nearly the same climate, could be established. How many interesting conclusions might be drawn, if it could be made to appear, that similarity of climate has a similar influence upon the religious opinions and ideas of mankind! Among the colonists of the Cape, the causes that influence their opinions are not difficult to be recognized; their separation from the rest of the world, the want of higher cultivation of mind, the absence of objects on which to exercise the fancy; while at the same time, the fancy is so much the more easily excited, in proportion to the little variety presented by the surrounding realities;—added to which, that the less the body is exercised, and the better it is fed, the more powerfully these causes will operate;—all these things, while they are necessary consequences of the nature of the country, at the same time furnish reasons sufficient to account for the erroneous direction of the activity of the mind. Mankind must think, though all that they think be but a dream. The propensity of the colonists to religious mysticism, appears to me very sufficiently explained by the nature of the climate, and their modes of living. There are among them people who are even so fanatical, as to fancy they have visions and extasies,—who in good earnest believe themselves honoured with divine inspirations.

The urgent entreaties of the petitioners, particularly of the colonist women, that they might not be deprived of the treasure which they fancied they possessed in this man, constrained the Commissary-General, at length, to come to an explanation, which was made nearly in the following terms.—The government, he said, knew of no such persons as missionaries among the Christians, and could not recognize them, since that would be authorizing a private society in Europe to send persons into the colonies as popular teachers, whose principles were not ascertained, and whose pretensions to knowledge were not proved. A too ready concurrence with the petition on the part of the government might very easily give occasion for these people to consider themselves as independent of the jurisdiction of better instructed divines; at least, there seemed no means of securing their preaching the same doctrine as is generally received in the reformed church. In this

way great danger would be incurred of religious differences arising, of the confidence in the established preachers being weakened, and of the revenues of the church, and the donations to the poor, being greatly diminished. More than all, this was a purpose wholly different from that for which the missionaries were sent out: the duties they had undertaken, would not permit them to live idle among the Christians, but commanded them to go and preach the gospel to the heathens. If the abundance that reigned at the tables of the hospitable African cultivators was more agreeable to them than the locusts and wild-honey of the wilderness; or if weakness of body precluded their fulfilling the task in which they had engaged, the proper conduct for them to pursue, was wholly to relinquish the undertaking, and to renounce the salary they were to receive. In such a case, the government would not refuse its permission for them to be examined at the established college at the Cape Town; and if they were found properly qualified, would readily allow them to earn their livelihood by the instruction of youth. They would then be under the jurisdiction of the ecclesiastical council of their parish, whose duty it would be to watch over their general conduct, and over the doctrines which they taught.

It is not very easy to make a farmer, and, above all, an African one, listen to reason; or to convince him of any thing, when he has a directly contrary idea in his head. Our excellent chief was therefore obliged to talk for two hours successively, before he could succeed in convincing these people of the necessity and justice of his decision. The poor missionary, in the mean time, remained in the outer room, in a state of such anguish, that any one, by his deportment, might have supposed his life depended on the determination. His wife, who had been housekeeper to the over-pious minister of Roodezand, every now and then handed him a drop of cordial, and endeavoured, by all the means in her power, to comfort him: she observed, among other things, how much reason there was to rejoice that he had found more favour in the sight of God, than among hard-hearted men; and that a truly pious Christian might well despise the persecutions of an earthly power, when he was certain of the favour of his Heavenly Judge.

The conclusion of the matter was, that Foster remained quietly in the country, without thinking of undertaking a journey among the heathens, without renouncing his salary, and without the government, who found in

his weakness a sufficient guarantee against his doing any harm, thinking it worth while to interfere in the matter. As Roodezand became soon after the seat of a Landdrost, the latter had to maintain many struggles against the pretensions of the missionaries. The popular opinion, however, remained decidedly on their side, and it is scarcely to be conceived, what an effect their influence has ultimately had upon the character of the people, and the happiness of the country. It is not to be denied, that it would be greatly for the advantage of the Christian cause, if the missionaries sent out were men of strong and cultivated minds, and free from all low interested views. Such would be very likely to find more satisfaction in their intercourse with the wholly rude savages, and in making exertions to civilize and humanize them, than in leading a life of absolute indolence among colonists half cultivated, and full of prejudices in various ways.

We here closed the great circle which was to be made in our journey, and passed the night at the same place, *Die Liebe*, where we had stopped on the second of December. At noon, the following day, after having passed by the pretty water-fall,* which was almost entirely dry, we arrived once more at Roodezand. The minister of the parish, and some of the principal inhabitants, came out to meet us, at half an hour's distance from the town. We stayed there some days; during which, I ascended the Witsemberg again, accompanied by Captain Alberti, and some others of our party.

From hence we set off, on the fifteenth of March, on our return to the Cape Town. The road lies through the Roodezand kloof, as it is called, a narrow romantic valley, through which the little Berg river, a stream formed by the collected body of streams, which water the valley of Roodezand, runs into the plain, where it unites itself with the great Berg river. It is but very lately that a carriage road has been made through this kloof; and though it might be kept up extremely well with very little trouble, it is much neglected. The road formerly lay over the mountain by the side of this pass; and all cattle which are driven loose, must still go by the mountain road, that the new one may not be damaged by them. Whoever makes use of the kloof road, pays a certain toll for every waggon; which toll goes to

* See part II. page 144. of the English translation.

the overseer appointed to keep the road in repair. 'Tis strange enough that the money thus collected is farmed out for ever to one particular family; and it is for this reason that the road is left in so indifferent a state. The kloof is a good half hour long, and is full of trees and shrubs. In leaving it, we are surprized by seeing, in the plain, a fine and wholly insulated pillar of sandstone: in the distance are to be descried the Honigberg, Riebek's Casteel, and the Paardeberg. The whole country assumes from hence a much more smiling appearance; the eye wanders over a region, which, compared with the rest of the colony, may be called highly cultivated. To the right of the entrance to the kloof, the road leads to the district of the Four-and-twenty rivers. Directly in front, towards the west, lie the Zwartland and Saldanha bay, and towards the south, at the foot of the mountains, are Stellenbosch and the Cape Town.

We passed very near a pretty large lake, now almost dried up, which bears the name of the *Vogelvalley* (bird valley), because in the rainy season such numbers of water-fowl, particularly flamingos, albatrosses, and of the sea-birds, resort thither to seek food, that the place is sometimes almost covered with them. Each separate height of the great range of hills, which we had now to our left, has its particular name. There are several footways over them to Goudinie and the Bosjesveld, the two principal of which are called the Eland's kloof, and Du Toit's kloof. A hill, which stretches from the great chain very far into the plain, is called the Green-hill, and justly so, since it is every where covered with verdure. The declivity is so gentle, that the rain-water does not run off quick, and carry away the soil with it; but rather sinks in, and nourishes it: this gives it a very striking and marked distinction from the naked heights around. The country all about is abundantly watered by springs, which flow from chasms in these mountains, so that it is extremely fertile in corn, wine, and fruit of various sorts. The neighbourhood of the Cape Town lightens the taxes very much, and excites the industry of the inhabitants. As they live by agriculture and horticulture, they keep no more cattle than are requisite for cultivating their lands, and transporting the products of them to other parts; each single domain is, therefore, by no means so extensive as on the other side of the hills: they are almost all half fiefs—that is to say, they are only half an hour in diameter, instead of being a whole hour; and only half the usual quit-rent is paid for them. There are even many freeholds here, which comprize no more than sixty rhenish acres

of land, the entire uncircumscribed possession of which has been obtained from the government either by purchase or by grant. Such freeholds bear, very naturally, a much superior aspect to the mere fiefs, since not a spot within this small space is left uncultivated. The very circumstance of their being so confined, as to the quantity of ground, is a reason why they can be much better attended to than more extensive premises. Besides, wherever such purchases have been made, the purchaser has taken care that his sixty acres shall be all land capable of cultivation; whereas, in the fiefs, particularly in the more remote ones, there may perhaps, in a great extent of country, be no more than thirty acres of real good soil: the rest is pasture, and by no means fit for use at all seasons of the year.

The proprietor of a freehold, moreover, knows well that he is working both for himself and his heirs, and that every improvement made in the property enhances its value to himself and to them: on the contrary, every time the fiefs are to be let anew, the government has a right to take advantage of any thing which may have been done, in the way of improvement, by the holders of them. At the same time it must be acknowledged, that this is a right which has never hitherto been exercised without paying the person by whom the improvements were made, an additional sum over and above the price which he had given for the farm on entering upon it. From hence it will be seen, that the case is the same with these fiefs, as with the inheritance of fiefs in Europe. An idea had been suggested to convert all the fiefs into freeholds; and it was thought that this would be a means of exciting greater industry among the cultivators. The idea was, however, rejected as inexpedient, partly on the ground of the considerations above related, and partly for other reasons, on the examination of which I shall not presume to enter. It would, perhaps, be a more desirable measure, by degrees to divide the large fiefs as they fall in, especially those in the most fertile parts of the country, into small freeholds. There would then be as many places to offer to sale as there are portions of land of sixty acres each, well supplied with water, and capable of cultivation, on a fief of perhaps thirty thousand acres; and the rest might remain as common land to the collective body of purchasers. It is almost self-evident that such an arrangement would be suited to the increasing population of the country, were it not that the unfortunate idea has been adopted of extending the boundaries of the colony by new settlements in the Caffre country, and upon the Orange river.

CHAP. XXXV.

Waggon-makers' Valley.—French Refugees settled on the Berg River.—The Village of Paarl.—The Paarl Mountain.—Drakenstein.—Franschehoek.—Illness and Death of the Author's Friend, C. H. Leiste.—Burgersdrift on the Berg River—the Author near being drowned there.—Stellenbosch.—Hottentots'-Holland.—Arrival of the Party at the Cape Town.

We passed the night at the northern foot of the Green-hill, at a place called the Green-valley. The next morning we arrived at one of the most delightful spots in the country, known by the name of the Waggon-makers' valley. Under this name is comprehended the whole circle of farms and freeholds, lying within the recess between the south side of the Green hill and the great chain from which it projects. The district is abundantly supplied with water, and is one of the most fertile and best-cultivated spots in the country; even in Stellenbosch and Hottentots'-Holland, the slopes are not so thickly scattered over with habitations as here. Very good wine is made in the valley; and several hundred cargoes of sweet oranges, lemons, bitter oranges, figs, and other fruits, are sent every year to the Cape Town. There are abundance of shrubs, particularly *protea*, among which the horses and oxen find wholesome and nourishing pasture the whole year round. From the sides of the hills, between Drakenstein and Franschehoek, issues the great Berg river, which winds at their feet, watering the valley of Jehoshaphat and the village of Paarl, before it takes a westerly direction towards that part of the coast where we crossed it at the commencement of our journey.

Both sides of the river are inhabited very much by the descendants of the French refugees, who were driven from their native country at the latter end of the seventeenth century, by the revocation of the edict of Nantes; and who sought a refuge in these waste and solitary vallies, for such they were at that time. Thus, among the names of the principal families, we hear those of Rousseau, De Villers, Joubert, Desmarets, Menard, Le Roux, Malan, Villon, Retif, Jourdan, Malherbe, &c. &c. Not a name belonging to the original

French settlers is lost, though a few of Dutch and German origin have mingled among them; but the language and customs of the mother country are wholly forgotten, and even the names are not retained in pure French: they are written and pronounced after the Dutch manner. The history of their descent, moreover, is retained only as a general tradition; but not any of the minuter circumstances attending this migration of their ancestors are now to be retraced. In their features, in their figure, in their whole deportment, nothing of the French national character is to be discerned: intermarriages among the families of Dutch, of Germans, and of Danes, have changed their nature entirely: like all other settlers here, they are become entirely Africans. By these people the country round was filled with names from the promised land, in memorial that they had sought here to find their Canaan: this is particularly the case with single mountains.

It was from hence that the religious sense diffused itself in so large a measure over the whole colony; and this sense it is which, during an entire century, has preserved these people from becoming wholly degenerate and savage. Although in many other parts it has taken the unfortunate direction, concerning which so much has been said, it has here maintained itself in nearly the true and genuine spirit of protestantism. The troubles excited in some parts by the exercise of devotion have here found no place: many complaints even were laid before the Commissary-General against the missionaries, that they had endeavoured to gain a footing in the country by exhibiting attested forms, the aim of which was to prove themselves persons of superior sanctity; and any one who presumed to doubt the genuineness of these forms, was immediately stigmatized as being ungodly and evil-minded. A person of the name of Tromp had gone so far, they complained, as to excite children to disobedience towards their parents; had even endeavoured to alienate wives from their husbands, urging, as a plea for thus poisoning their minds, that obedience was due to God much rather than to man. Whole families, in other parts of the colony, might be named, whose domestic comfort and happiness have been entirely destroyed through the intermeddling of these pretenders to piety.

At the village of Paarl, which has a very picturesque appearance as it is approached from the valley of Jehoshaphat, the Commissary-General and his train were welcomed with all proper ceremony by the Landdrost of Stellen-

bosch. The parsonage-house, being at this moment uninhabited, was immediately made ready for the illustrious guest; household furniture of all kinds was sent in, and a handsome dinner was prepared, at which all the principal persons of the place attended. The Commissary-General was then invited to see the new church: this structure was just finished, under the conduct of a very skilful architect, Major Küchler; and it is indeed one which would be an ornament to any town in Europe. The Commissary was at the same time solicited to procure an able and rational minister from Holland, as the parish had been for many years without any regular minister; and the parishioners were obliged to go even to Stellenbosch for all purposes of religion. Sometimes a preacher from Stellenbosch, or from the Cape Town, had come to perform the service there. The premises of this parsonage are among the most extensive, and the pleasantest that are to be found any where in the colony. One of the freeholds above mentioned has been appropriated to the purpose: the house is one of the best in the place, and there is an excellent orchard, extremely well kept up: a small avenue of oaks leads from the street up to the house. An institution for the education of boys is another thing well worthy of remark at this place: it is the undertaking of a German, by name Lindebaum. The pupils, among whom are the sons of some of the first families at the Cape Town, are all in a spacious house with the master, and are instructed in religion, in the living languages, in history, geography, and some of the arts. This is the only institution of the kind in the whole country.

The village of Paarl consists of one long street, containing about fifty houses: the large spaces that intervene between the houses extend the street to the length of a short half hour. It runs along the eastern side of the Paarl mountain and the numerous springs that issue from this mountain; water the gardens and vineyards of the inhabitants abundantly; while not far below runs the great Berg river. This river separates the district of Paarl from the valley of Jehoshaphat, and from great and little Drakenstein: it has too little fall, and is too much swelled by the heavy rains in winter for its waters to be of much use in the fields and gardens. Yet two years after, in my last visit to this part of the country, I saw a work, which, as the single one of its kind in Southern Africa, well deserves to be mentioned. At a place behind the village the river spreads out to a great width; and when the

waters are low, as is the case during the whole summer, an island is left in the midst, which had already been long celebrated for its fertility, but which no one had ever thought of converting to any use, on account of its being constantly overflowed in winter. A citizen of Paarl, by name Meyer, a native of the country about Frankfort on the Maine, by means of strong and well-constructed dams and sluices, placed at either end of that arm of the stream which enclosed the island on the side nearest to the village, had succeeded in gaining all the land thus drained, which he had united with his garden that ran down to the street. The river is now entirely confined to the eastern bed ; and what used to be the western, is converted into a large pond in the middle of the garden. Although this man was unfortunately interrupted in the midst of his career by an unusual overflow of the river, which broke down his dykes, he was not deterred from his purpose, but rather incited to proceed, only giving greater height and solidity to the works, that they might, in future, be better able to resist the force of the stream. By means of the sluices, he is able to carry the water of the river in any direction over his fields and gardens; thus the whole spot is rendered so fertile, and is in particular so well adapted to the cultivation of cotton, that he has no doubt of all the money expended upon the undertaking being amply repaid in eight or ten years.

Paarl, it is well known, has its name from a large bare round block of granite, lying naked upon the summit of the mountain, which every where else has a clothed and fertile appearance. This block received from the colonists the appellation of *the pearl* (paarl), as another smaller and angular block which lies near it is called *the diamond*. Both are seen plainly at the distance of two or three miles. Mr. Barrow, in the second chapter of his first part, gives an ample description of them, which is very much distorted in the German translation of his work—that of Leipsick, I mean. Great confusion is there made between the pearl itself, and the mountain ; so that the reader is led to suppose the former represented as four hundred feet high, whereas it is only between thirty and forty feet, and at the utmost a hundred paces in circumference. Mr. Barrow is, however, himself guilty of a little mistake when describing *the pearl* as composed of quartz, feldspar, and mica, as being consequently granite, he presumes that this, and similar stones, have been formed in their places from a small kernel. The origin of this rock is certainly the

same as that of similar round masses which are formed from layers of clay and sandstone, adhering together, and which are often to be seen on the tops of other primitive mountains, as, for instance, the Brocken.

The valley of the Berg river is bounded by the Paarl Mountain, and the village of Paarl to the west; while, on the eastern side, it is enclosed by the much higher chain of mountains running from the north, parallel with the coast, and stretching even to False Bay. Over these mountains are the passes, already so frequently mentioned, of Pikenierskloof, Roodezandkloof, and Hottentots'-Holland kloof, which lead to those parts of the colony distinguished by the appellation of the countries beyond the mountains. The naked jagged summits of these mountains consist entirely of an iron sandstone, and from them flow numerous and abundant springs, to which the Waggon-makers' valley, great and little Drakenstein, Stellenbosch, and Hottentots'-Holland, owe their fertility. Between Paarl and Stellenbosch, a branch from these mountains stretches some miles into the plain, forming two angles with the mountains themselves, the northern of which is called Franschehoek, the French corner; the latter Donkerhoek, the dark corner. Through the former flows the Berg river; in the latter the Eerste river has its source, which runs thence, through Stellenbosch and the plain of the Cape, into False Bay.

In the country, on the upper part of the Berg river, that is to say, about Franschehoek, Drakenstein, Waggon-makers' valley, and Paarl, the colonists live chiefly by the cultivation of the vine and other fruits: from them are derived their principal articles of trade: they only cultivate corn, and breed cattle, sufficient for their domestic use. Although, according to European ideas, they cannot be accounted rich, for none are great capitalists, yet they have abundance of every thing which can render the physical life pleasant and comfortable. This appearance of plenty contributes equally with the aspect of the country itself, where the slopes are ever clothed with verdure, where farms, with their clean white-washed houses, their vineyards, their orchards, and their avenues of oaks, planted by the ancestors of the present owners with their own hands, are strewed every where around:—the appearance of plenty contributes not less than these objects, so pleasing to the eye, towards rendering a journey through this valley extremely delightful.

On the road from Paarl to Stellenbosch, we soon arrive at the heights above

mentioned, and from thence pass through a large extent of open country, not thickly inhabited, but producing a great deal of corn. In descending from these heights towards Stellenbosch, a very fertile domain is left on the right, which government retains in its own hands for the use of the cavalry horses. A great quantity of the best hay is made there, and it furnishes besides a plentiful supply of barley. This place is called *Klapmuts*, because the end of the height which stretches quite to this plain, with its spiral top, has some resemblance to the high-crowned hat which bears this name. Somewhat farther to the right lies Elsenburg, a farm celebrated for its fertility. It formerly belonged to a man by name Martin Milch, a native of Memel, who, although he could neither read nor write, grew so rich that he was able to build the Lutheran chapel at the Cape Town, entirely at his own expence. Still farther, we pass near the estate called Nooitgedagt, whose former owner, J. G. Cloete, a brother of the proprietor of Constantia, is among the richest private persons in the colony. He had a hundred and eight slaves in his service here, a greater number than was ever possessed by any other individual. From this circumstance alone, some idea may be formed of the extent and quality of the property. Here the Commissary-General was received by a company of cavalry, composed of the citizens, being one of several bodies of the like description, who, during our absence, had been organized by the government throughout the country, with the view of assisting in the defence of it, if attacked by the English. Farther on, he was met by the Landdrost and other magistrates of Stellenbosch, with a detachment of dragoons, sent by the Governor. Accompanied by these, and greeted by the usual salutations of honour, he made his solemn entry into Stellenbosch.

I myself had, in this latter part of the journey, with the permission of our chief, separated from the company, in consequence of having been met in the Green valley by a messenger from my friend and fellow-countryman, Leiste, entreating me to visit him at his estate in the district of the Four-and-twenty rivers, and give him my advice for a long and painful illness, under which he was suffering. I very readily complied with his wish, and set off immediately for Gelukwaard, where I arrived at noon the next day. But, alas! it was not in the power of my art to be of any use in an evil of so long standing. I made him another visit after my return to the Cape Town, in a month from

which time I had the melancholy task to perform of sending an account of the death of this worthy man to his connexions in Germany. Seldom does any one die more universally lamented by all who knew him. He was a pattern to others for understanding, for industry, and good economy: his dependents lost in him a mild, kind-hearted father; his near neighbours, a true friend and intelligent adviser: the remembrance of his virtues will long live in every heart. Though his fortune led him to pass his life far from his native country, yet that country was ever dear to him; and his memory deserves to be cherished in it; 'tis therefore that I could not forbear erecting a slight monument to him in my book.

On my return I took a somewhat nearer road, that I might, if possible, cross the Berg river before night was closed in, taking the direction of the well-known ford, called Burgersdrift. I was mounted upon a spirited African hunter, and went on very fast, in the short uninterrupted gallop so much in use here. It was nevertheless night when I arrived at the river; and in crossing it I was very near losing my life. In the midst of the stream, where it is the deepest, and the current the strongest, are some large stones, well known to those who are in the habit of frequently crossing the stream, but not so well known to me, At these my horse stumbled, and threw me over his head into the water. I was instantly carried away by the rapidity of the stream, and might probably have been drowned, but that a slave, whom my friend Leiste had sent with me as a guide, sprung after me, and catching hold of me at the fortunate moment, set me upon my legs. My horse was so well-trained, that he waited patiently for me on the other side of the river; and a person, by name John Roux, who lived near, received me hospitably into his house, gave me dry clothes, a supper, and a night's lodging, taking care that my own things should be ready for me to put on the next morning, that I might continue my journey to Stellenbosch. I often crossed this ford afterwards, and have several times found it so empty, that the danger was to be seen very clearly, with the extreme difficulty of avoiding it to one who is not thoroughly acquainted with the spot. Notwithstanding the facility with which these stones might be removed in the dry season, nobody seems ever to have thought of such an improvement. Such negligence shewn in all trifling matters of police, which, from their locality, are without the sphere of government, manifest in the most sriking manner the indolence and want of

public spirit that reigns among the colonists. After a short stay at Paarl, on the Sunday at noon, I rejoined my party at Stellenbosch ; they had arrived there just twenty-four hours before me. They had been attending public worship, at which a solemn thanksgiving was offered up, for the happy conclusion of their journey.

Stellenbosch is rather a small town than a village. It consists of three long straight streets, running parallel with each other, and several cross streets intersecting them at right angles. The houses are all spacious, and substantially built, though only thatched with straw. Each street resembles an avenue, since, on both sides before the houses, are large shady oaks, which are almost as old as the place itself, and that was built at the very beginning of the former century, though it was wholly burnt down in 1710. A similar accident menaced it but a few months before our arrival. In December, 1803, a fire broke out at night in several different places, and before the flames could be extinguished, twenty houses were laid in ashes. On a strict investigation, it was discovered that this arose from a plot among five or six slaves, men and women, who confessed it to have been done in the hope of being able to escape, amid the confusion, with a rich booty. These unhappy wretches were soon after, according to the rigour of the law, some burnt to death, some consigned to the axe of the executioner. The damage done by the fire was estimated at a hundred and fifty thousand Dutch guelders. The number of houses left standing was about eighty ; among them that of the Landdrost was the most distinguished : in it is a hall, in which all public meetings are held, and here also are deposited the public archives. The church was built in 1722, and though not equal in size to the churches at Roodezand and Paarl, is no way their inferior in point of architecture.

The number of inhabitants at Stellenbosch, including slaves and Hottentots, is estimated at a thousand. This place has the same evil which is common in all the little country towns in Europe, that among the middling class of citizens, and here, that is at the same time the lowest, little true innate ease of circumstances is to be found. Every one carries on, with his trade, some portion of agriculture and horticulture; and as there are none who can be called actually poor, who labour for hire, they are obliged to have slaves, who do not by any means pay the expence of keeping them. This singular situation of the townspeople in southern Africa will be better ex-

plained by what follows. In the Cape Town the evil is less urgent, since there the intercourse of foreign commerce, and the marine, open various sources of support to numbers of persons. But in the country towns, people live only by each other, and as matters stand, any one would be almost perplexed to determine whether the country about Stellenbosch is too thinly or too thickly peopled. If it were more populous, the value of every thing would be raised, and the mechanic would have more ample employment; were it less so, each one might extend his domains, and live entirely as a colonist, as was formerly the case. Its great misfortune lies in the disproportion between the products and the number of consumers. The latter are apparently too few; yet, on the other hand, there is a deficiency of working people to bring the products to perfection, and afford them at so low a price as to admit the possibility of their ever becoming objects for a foreign market. Suppose the exports to exceed the imports several hundred per cent. and the number of consumers not to be increased by the government sending a considerable garrison, were the East India traders not so ready to take off the superfluities, it would be melancholy indeed for the colony. The distance of the possession, the annihilation of the marine, would be sufficient, in a few months, to occasion an universal bankruptcy. But this is not the place to enlarge upon such a subject. The few remarks made will suffice to explain how a town, in which there is no external trade, and no garrison,—which depends on its internal trade alone, must in this country always be very poor; and thus a sufficient reason is adduced why no towns, scarcely even any villages of note, are to be found throughout the colony.

Strangers, who in the course of their longer voyages, make any stay at the Cape, seldom fail to visit Stellenbosch; and people of property at the Cape Town also, in the fine season of the year, often make parties of pleasure to this fertile spot. Some of the citizens have been induced, from these circumstances, to fit up houses for the accommodation and entertainment of strangers. People frequenting these houses are not, however, received in the same manner as at inns in Europe; they are treated rather as guests; that is to say, they do not call for things, and pay for every thing singly, but live with the family after their fashion, and pay at their departure so much by the day. The general price is three dollars a day for each person; and for this sum they are well supplied with every thing, European

wines excepted; these, if required, are paid for separately. An Englishman, by name Caldwell, a jovial, well-behaved man, and a Hessian, by name Wolfrum, keep the best houses of this description. Both are surrounded by agreeable families, with whose society the guests cannot fail to be pleased.

The Commissary-General availed himself of our stay at Stellenbosch, to make a little excursion of a few hours into the neighbouring district of Hottentots'-Holland. He visited several very large farms, which, indeed, exceeded in fertility, and in their pleasing appearance, any we had yet seen in the colony. Many of them are among those which were laid out by the Governor Simon Van der Stell, the founder of Stellenbosch, so justly celebrated in many ways;—the man who first introduced the cultivation of the vine and various sorts of fruits into the colony,—who sent fruit-trees, and seeds of various kinds, to all parts of the world: here, therefore, are still to be seen, many sorts of plants which are not to be found at all, or at least, very rarely, in any other part of the colony. Among these may be mentioned the camphor-tree: in one place there are eight or ten, which were all planted by the Governor himself, and which are equal in height and size to the largest poplars. But, alas! they seem declining with old age, and no attempts to procure successors to them by layers have yet succeeded. The cultivators, however, do not know how to turn this tree to its proper use; and it is therefore possible, that the attempts they have made to propagate it, were not accompanied with much diligence or anxiety about the matter. We were regaled at breakfast with a fruit which I had not yet seen in the colony, the delightful berries of the *arbutus unedo*, called here *arbiters*. The wine of this country is most excellent; many sorts, when eight or ten years old, are preferred by connoisseurs to Constantia. The houses are large, and conveniently distributed; some are built by no means without taste. In every thing there is an appearance of affluence; and if the estate of some may be much encumbered with debts, this would never be suspected in seeing their houses and tables. For the rest, the people collectively have all a certain degree of education and cultivation, and some may justly be considered as among the most truly estimable in the whole colony.

We now ascended Hottentots'-Holland kloof, the nearest and the most frequented way from the Cape Town to Zwellendam, and the whole eastern part of the colony. This road is, therefore, kept in better order than that

of any other mountain pass, over which we had yet travelled. In those who have not seen any other, the pass may well excite astonishment and admiration; it can excite none in those who have seen the more sublime and tremendous places of the kind which are to be found in the grand mountainous regions of the interior. But since most travellers commence their wanderings by going over this mountain road, in the accounts of their travels the description given of it is diffuse, and the dangers of crossing it are represented as great; while the same traveller passes slightly over places beyond all comparison more formidable and fatiguing, only because he has become accustomed to such scenes, till they cease to make a deep impression upon him.

The course of this road has been many times changed, and the old cattle road is not yet entirely overgrown, though it has been disused nearly thirty years. In some places of the latter the rain has made deep holes, which would be very dangerous to the traveller in descending the hill, should he happen to miss his way. The highest point of the mountain in that part where the road lies, is about two thousand feet above the level of the sea, and the view from it is wonderfully fine. Turning towards the west, we see the richly cultivated country of Hottentots'-Holland directly at our feet. These green fields separate the wide desert of the sandy isthmus from the peninsula of the Cape. The Table Mountain and the Lion's Head, as beheld from hence, have a very picturesque appearance. The Devil's Mountain, lying below the Table Mountain, its extent cannot be accurately discerned; its northern declivity borders the Table Valley. With good glasses, or in fine clear weather with the naked eye, the ships at anchor in Table Bay may be plainly distinguished. Farther towards the south, are to be seen the gradually declining mountains of the peninsula; the eye can even follow them almost to the Cape of Good Hope, properly so called; while the white houses of Simon's Town are clearly discernible. To the west, the widely spread False Bay runs up to a vast depth between the peninsula of the Cape and the mountains on this side, forming, with its islands and rocks, especially in winter, when the returning ships put in there, a very noble spectacle. Towards the east, the eye roves over the mountains, tracing in many different parts the road to Zwellendam. The

horizon is closed on this side by the summit of the mountain at Bavians kloof and the river Zonder-end.

In the heat of the day we again lay by, and rested at an opulent farm belonging to one William Morkel. According to the custom of the country, we had here a most splendid dinner; a principal feature in it was great variety of sea-fish, drawn from the abundant stores in this way furnished by False Bay. This gave us new cause of admiration at the abundant resources for supplying the physical wants of our nature; which might, with a little industry, be derived from this truly bountiful spot. In the evening we returned to Stellenbosch, and on the twenty-third of March proceeded from thence to the Cape Town, where we arrived nearly at the close of day, after a wearisome journey over the sandy plain of the Cape.

General Janssens, accompanied by the principal officers of the place, both civil and military, received the Commissary-General at about half an hour's distance from the town. On their arrival at the castle, a salute of twenty-one guns announced the solemn entry of the chief magistrate, after a successful journey of nearly four hundred miles,* and an absence of a hundred and sixty-seven days.

---

* German miles, making nearly two thousand English.

END OF PART THE FOURTH.

PART V.

JOURNEY TO ZWELLENDAM AND THE ADJACENT COUNTRIES.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Preparations for War at the Cape.—Plan of Defence formed by the Governor.—Occasion of the Author's present Journey.—Meyburgh's Farm on the Eerste River.—Captain Morkel's Farm.—Hottentots'-Holland Kloof.—Plants growing there.—Palmiet River.—An Englishman, by name Partridge, drowned there.—Houhock.—The Bot River.

During the time we were absent, which was nearly six months, every thing at the Cape Town had assumed a very warlike aspect: the Governor had with unwearied zeal used all possible exertions for defending the colony to the best of his power against an attack from the enemy. Since, by order of the Batavian government at home, the whole twenty-third battalion was to be sent, under the command of Colonel De Lega, to strengthen the garrison at Batavia, General Janssens endeavoured to supply this important loss, by organizing a battalion of Hottentots after the European manner, and by arming the citizens and colonists. Besides this, all people at the Cape Town who had come hither from Europe as soldiers, were taken again into the service; several auxiliary corps, as they were called, infantry as well as artillery, were also formed for the purpose of lightening in some degree the severe duty of the garrison: this was scarcely two thousand strong. At our return, we found these newly enrolled corps already in their uniforms, and going through their exercise every day; yet the winter months, those that are such in this country, of 1804, had begun to set in before they were all in complete activity, and in a state entirely to fulfil their respective destinations.

In the meantime, we remained wholly without information respecting the

plans of the English government with regard to the Dutch possessions in India. It almost appeared as if the menaced invasion of England by France, and the strength of the French and Dutch in the Indian seas, which was not inconsiderable, deterred them at present from thinking seriously of any expedition against these possessions.. Notwithstanding this, an attack must necessarily be expected sooner or later, and it was expedient that the delay arising from these or any other causes should be used to the best advantage. It was also to be expected that the attack, when made, would be with an overwhelming force. Above all things, their excellent, well equipped, and well manned ships were to be feared, since there was nothing to oppose them but batteries very incompetent to withstand their force. The weak situation of the Cape Town was another subject of deep regret, and gave the most serious cause for apprehension; since, if a landing were once effected on the western coast of the colony, it was impossible for the most determined bravery to make an effectual resistance. It was, therefore, exceedingly desirable, in order to be prepared in the best manner possible against such an event, to seek out some point, where, in case of adverse events, a small force might be able to make a stand, and where all possibility of assistance from the fleet would be precluded. The fate of the whole colony would not then be left entirely dependent on the conquest of the Cape Town; the possession of that town might, on the contrary, be rendered an incumbrance to the enemy, if a position were taken, by means of which their communication with the interior of the colony was cut off, and they were consequently deprived of their supplies of food. By Degrandprè, and others who were experienced in all matters relating to the art of war, and who had well considered the situation of the Cape Town under this point of view, the chain of mountains about Hottentots'-Holland, and the pass over them, had been already suggested as a very favourable spot for the purpose. On a more accurate examination, General Janssens, who went himself several times to inspect the ground, thought the situation so well suited to the purpose, that he at length determined to make this pass, Hottentots'-Holland kloof, the point which should be kept open for defying the enemy's might, in case of retreat being rendered necessary.

Many objects were, however, to be attended to in the prosecution of this plan. Above all things, care must be taken that the little army, when it had

taken possession of its strong situation, should not fail in supplies of food and ammunition. The preparing of magazines, therefore, on the other side of the mountains, was a very important object, but it was one, the accomplishment of which must unavoidably be attended with great difficulty from the slender produce of the last harvest. It was not, however, absolutely hopeless, that by timely care, and a cautious perseverance, these difficulties might be lessened, while the better harvest, of which there was now a prospect, would, if time was allowed by the enemy, entirely remove them.

To fix on a proper situation for the proposed magazines, and to make all other necessary arrangements, it was expedient that some person of confidence and judgment should be sent into the country; one who should be well instructed in all the Governor's views, who would have a proper respectability in the eyes of the colonists, and who should be authorised to give the requisite directions in his name. No one was judged more proper in every respect to be deputed for the purpose, than Captain Paravicini di Capelli, who was Aid-de-Camp to the Governor, and had accompanied him in his journey into the Caffre country. He was therefore appointed to the office, and received his instructions from the Governor in the latter days of the month of August, 1804, with full powers to act in his name. Two officers of superior talents, Captains Verkouteren and De Labat, of the dragoon squadron, who, till then, had always remained at the Cape Town, were appointed to accompany him, that they might acquire some knowledge of a country, which eventually might become the theatre of war. To them was also added a very brave and skilful officer of artillery, Lieutenant Meier, as inspector of the laboratories and powder magazines.

Ever since my return to the Cape Town, during the cold and moist season, which is the time when in this country vegetable nature is in its highest glory, I had employed myself very much in collecting and drying plants; almost all my leisure hours had been devoted to this favourite occupation. Accompanied by my pupil, and my worthy friend Polemann, every Sunday I made some botanical excursion. My principal places of resort for this purpose were the sandy plain of the Cape, the chasms among the mountains, the western slope of the Table Mountain, which is particularly rich in plants, and the country about Camps Bay: from none of these spots did I ever return without a bountiful supply for my herbarium. Three times did I

ascend to the top of the Table Mountain : once I accompanied my patron, the Commissary-General, to Simon's Bay, and on other occasions visited the country of the Steenbergen (Stone hills), the heights of Constantia, and the beautiful valley that leads from thence to Hout Bay. Thus, in four months, I had collected all the most beautiful specimens which vegetable nature produces in the peninsula, in plants of the lily kind, and in the rich tribes of *protea*, *erica*, *struthiola*, *oxalis*, &c. &c.: it was natural, therefore, that I should now be desirous of extending my botanical wanderings to the other side of the isthmus. The present season was, of all others, the most favourable for this purpose, since the months of September and October are precisely those in which the shrubs and plants, on the other side of the mountains, are ornamented with their beautiful flowers in the highest perfection, whereas, about the Table Mountain, they were beginning to fade away. I was consequently very easnest to accompany these officers ; and General Janssens, who was always most obligingly anxious to promote, in every possible way, my desire of becoming more intimately acquainted with the natural history of the country, who was no less desirous to embrace every occasion of binding me still more closely to him, readily gave permission for my joining the party, desiring only that his son, my pupil, might be my companion.

We set off from the Cape Town on the second of September, and crossed the sandy plain of the Cape in an easterly direction. About noon we reached the justly-celebrated farm of Philip Meyburgh on the Eerste river, where we rested for some time during the great heat of the day. This farm is much visited by people who make some stay at the Cape, in their way to or from India, as they are thus furnished with an opportunity of acquiring some idea of the mode of life led by the colonists. It is indeed well suited to the purpose. The owner, who is a very hospitable man, keeps, besides the numerous servants and slaves retained to cultivate his lands, a number of mechanics, some slaves, some free men, by whom every thing wanted for his household, whether of cloaths, furniture, implements for husbandry, or tools of any other kind, are made upon the spot ; and while the neighbourhood of the Cape Town is very convenient to him for the sale of his productions, he can dispense with purchasing any thing from thence. Nay, farther, his near neighbours, who have not all these conveniences about them, often

send things to him to be made, or hire some of his slaves to work at their own houses, as masons, as smiths, as waggon-wrights, as cabinet-makers, as tailors, &c. &c. Such an institution, wherever it is to be found, generally serves for most of the farms near it; but there are few where the works are executed in the same perfection. In the remoter regions of the colony, as I have mentioned in one of the former parts of my work, this patriarchal kind of establishment is more frequent, because there the population being composed of small societies, distant from each other, renders only a certain degree of cultivation attainable. Here it is the effect of industry rather than of necessity, and is converted into a profitable branch of economy.

Besides all this, Meyburgh has performed several essential services to the colony. Five and twenty years ago he was in possession of several cattle-places; and lived for a time at Graaff Reynett, before this place became a village, and was erected into the seat of a drosty. It was principally by his advice that Governor Van der Graaff determined on the erection of this new drosty; and the whole was laid out after a plan which he sketched. More than forty years ago, Meyburgh, as a youth, made several long journeys beyond the boundaries of the colony: among others, he examined the whole course of the Orange river. On this journey, many particulars of which he now related to us, he and his few companions lived, for several months together, on nothing but the tallow of sea-cows; and went through the greatest hardships and dangers. All he related to us respecting this country excited anew in me the utmost curiosity to visit it myself, and strengthened my resolution to spare no efforts for obtaining the fulfilment of my wishes.

Captain Paravicini had a long conversation with this very intelligent man respecting the object of his present journey; and if, in the sequel, the views of the Governor were proceeding prosperously towards their completion, it was principally to be ascribed to the hints furnished by Meyburgh. The great scarcity of corn did indeed throw powerful obstacles in the way: this was, however, thought of in sufficient time to be somewhat obviated, by sending into the remoter districts for a supply; and a year and half later, when the overpowering attack of the English was actually made, no hindrance to keeping possession of this strong position for a longer time was found in the want of stores.

From all that has been said relative to Meyburgh's farm, it will be justly

inferred, that the inhabitants of these parts, lying not very remote from the Cape Town, live much more active and agreeable lives than those led by the distant colonists beyond the mountains. The women in these families are, in many instances, and that in no slight degree, better bred than the women of the Cape Town: they are also commonly much more amiable, and that principally from not having an equally high idea with the Town ladies of their own charms. From living in the country, there reigns, besides, a much greater simplicity and modesty in their whole demeanour. At the same time, they are instructed in every branch of domestic economy necessary for forming good wives; and have, for the most part, an adequate knowledge of African husbandry, without being like the girls of the distant parts, mere peasants; or, as has been especially remarked of those who inhabit the countries where the prevailing occupation is the breeding of cattle, where, consequently, they are unaccustomed to any hard work, sinking into habits of sloth and indolence. Here we find them constantly busied, either with household affairs or needle-work; and it is no uncommon sight to see all the women of the house, mother, daughters, and female slaves, collected together in the cool apartment at the back of the house, sewing, knitting, or executing several kinds of fine ornamental works. Here the daughters and nieces of our host were employed in a very neat and clean kind of occupation, weaving platted straw for making hats and bonnets, from the wheat-stalks, whitened by being laid in the water. Some of them were arrived at such dexterity in this kind of work, that they assured us they had made a great deal of money by selling their platted straw to the English, when they had possession of the colony; and they added, that they continued, at that time, to send a great deal of it to the milliners at the Cape Town. The Cape straw is considered as peculiarly well suited to this kind of work, from its being so particularly white and pliable; and upon the first samples of it sent to England, large orders for a supply were immediately received.

In the afternoon we proceeded on our way towards the mountains of Hottentots'-Holland; and the more we ascended, the more fertile and the better cultivated did we find the country. In the sandy plains about the Cape Town, excepting various sorts of *mesembryanthemum*, few plants are to be seen, only some from the species *tetragonia*, *zygophyllum*, and *polygala*, with single plants of the *gladiolus plicatus*, and *antholyza plicata*: these, with some

sorts of the *lily tribe*, are the only plants which come forth from the sands; they commonly flower immediately after the first rains in June and July. On the hills we were now ascending, every thing, on the contrary, was at this time most beautifully in flower. A number of the shrubby sorts of *protea* were scattered in little copses over the slopes, on which the long-tailed honey-bird was every where to be seen, settled at the edges of the flowers, in order to suck, with their long and slender bills, the honey from the bottom of the cups. Between these little copses were abundance of *garteria* and *gnidia*, with heath plants, and the tenderer kinds of *lily;* to which may be added the smaller species of *ixia*, of *gladiolus*, of *hypoxis*, and *lachenalia*. I particularly observed two sorts of the *gladiolus*, known here under the names of *kalkoentje* and *baviaantje*, which are held in high esteem from the aromatic smell they afford, and which seem hitherto to have escaped the attention of botanists, although they are by no means rare in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town.*

A mild spring evening increased, in no small degree, our enjoyment of the beauties here presented by nature, and cheered us on our way: that way lay by several pleasant and well-conditioned farms. From the heights we had at intervals fine views over the widely-extended False Bay, and the chain of mountains which terminates in the Cape of Good Hope, properly so called. Behind this chain we saw the sun sink just as we arrived, highly delighted with the varied beauties presented to us, and amid the charms of very pleasant conversation, at the house of Captain William Morkel. This title our new host derived from being the captain of a company of citizen-cavalry; and he received us as brethren in arms, and most welcome guests. Evident

* Professor Wildenow, who, three years ago, undertook to examine my little collection of plants, gave to these the name of *gladiolus papillonaceus*. It is my intention hereafter to describe them, with an hundred and eighty other sorts of plants, which are in my *herbarium*, more accurately: this will be done in a little work under the title of *Spicilegium Floræ Capensis*, which is already more than half prepared for publication. To this book I refer the botanical part of my readers for a more ample explanation of these, and several other new plants, which are here only named. The greater part of my readers will readily excuse me, that, in the present work, I confine myself merely to giving a general idea of the character of vegetable nature here in the most beautiful season of the year, with the proper situations of many sorts of plants peculiar to the country.

affluence, unconstrained hospitality, and rural simplicity, placed us at our ease in a moment: we seemed as if perfectly at home, and thought ourselves, therefore, so much the more obliged to these worthy people. We were sumptuously entertained, with an ever-increasing appearance of good-will towards our whole company. My young companions, all of them pleasant, agreeable men, full of frolick and fun, sought, by all the means in their power, to prepare an entertainment for our hosts. Lieutenant Meier, the oldest of the company, was the person to whose lot it fell to afford the principal source of this entertainment. He was a man of the most perfect benevolence, and endowed with a sound understanding, if not cultivated to the highest degree, who therefore willingly gave into the harmless jokes of the rest, well assured that they meant no harm, and had the sincerest friendship for him. He happened to have been born in a town in Holland, the inhabitants of which in former times, as in Germany, the ancient citizens of *Schilda* and *Schoppenstadt*, had the reputation of not being richly gifted on the score of understanding, and respecting whose blunders people are much in the habit of telling amusing stories. These stories Meier was to put into terms suited to the African ways and modes of thinking, that they might be rendered intelligible to our hosts, who had never heard of any thing like them. Nor did the narrator fail to humour the astonishment with which he saw his auditors impressed, by throwing in occasionally, with great naïveté, some appropriate confession, which so encreased their belief in the truth of what they heard, that at last all doubt vanished.—Nay, these same auditors at length enquired for new stories of the blunders made by these people, with the same interest and eagerness as an European enquires of voyagers for all the curious particulars he has observed among the inhabitants of New Holland and Otaheite. The good Madame Morkel, especially, could not enough express her astonishment that such extraordinary kind of men ever existed in Europe; and often applied to her husband to know whether he could have thought it. The perfect good-humour with which the joke was here both given and received, took off from it all the odium that often attaches to such rodomontade. 'Tis not without feelings of the deepest regret that I recur to this, and many other pleasant evenings spent with my companions among the colonists;—I say with regret, because the greater part of these companions are already in the grave, and to many of them the plea-

sant hours which we passed on this journey were the last moments of happiness they ever experienced.

On the following morning, Captain Morkel conducted us to the foot of Hottentots'-Holland kloof, and supplied us with fresh oxen for our baggage, which had been sent hither from the Cape Town. We then began to ascend the mountain road, which goes for a while straight towards the top; but for the latter part of the way takes an oblique direction towards the rugged wall of the mountain: over this latter it is carried by a zigzag road, cut with great art. How much did I find the appearance of these mountains changed since my first visit! The bushes, at that time cloathed only with dark and dried leaves, were now arrayed in the brightest green, and spread over with the loveliest flowers. The African bushes, when thus in full bloom, have a totally different appearance from the European. In our northern climate, the large trees, and most of the shrubs, bear flowers either merely white, or of some faint and feeble colour, the beauty of which cannot be seen without they are examined very near: under the bright heaven of Southern Africa, on the contrary, the greater degree of light and heat produces flowers of much larger forms, and brighter hues. The shrubby plants are here the greatest ornaments produced by vegetable nature. Gigantic heaths, for the most part covered with red flowers of all shades, several sorts of the slender *capraria*, *thesia*, *gnidia*, *podaliria*, *borbonia*, *aspalatha*, and *phylica*, all contributed their share towards ornamenting the spot. Besides these, and more numerous than all, were *protea*, of every form and description which belongs to this numerous class, and which are always to be distinguished by the silvery, and oftentimes woolly leaves, no less than by the large bunches in which the flowers expand themselves. All these gave, at the present moment, an indescribably beautiful appearance to the rich and fertile heights we were traversing.

The *protea*, indeed, occupy a very large share of these hills, and shade over the other plants. While the broad-leaved sorts of this tree, with umbelliferous flowers, and an undivided cup, as the *protea*, *scolymus*, *mellifera*, *conifera*, *strobilina*, *imbricata*, *saligna*, *argentea*, &c. love low grounds, and abound most in the clayey soils at the foot of the mountains, the smaller-leaved sorts, with separated flowers, which belong to the *pinnatea* and *acerosæ*, come forth in these higher regions from the clefts in the rocks, and more especially

from the heaps of loose and broken masses of stone. The *protea sceptrum*, and the *lagopus*, were the sorts of which I saw the greatest abundance: the latter were, above all, striking to the eye, from the large stems of flowers which rose among the leaves at the end of every twig. Besides the *protea racemosa, incurva, comosa*, and *prolifera*, I found several species not less beautiful, though hitherto but little known. Among these, I recommend more particularly to the notice of any one who shall come after me, the *protea helvola* of Professor Wildenow, which is to be known by the beautiful brown of the cup, the pyramidal bunches of the flowers, and the numerously feathered leaves. Such new sorts I have discovered, upon a more accurate examination of my collection, to have been found almost solely upon these hills; and it appears to me very probable, that our systematical books as yet scarcely include half the species that actually exist of this very numerous tribe. I must add, that these mountains were examined by me with very particular assiduity. For the rest, it is somewhat remarkable that the *protea*, which grow on the hills of Hottentots'-Holland are not to be found on the Table Mountain, or the other heights of the Cape Peninsula; while, on the other hand, the celebrated *silver-tree (protea argentea)*, and some other sorts, are produced only in this small peninsula, and in no other part of the world. It is further remarkable, that the hills, which lie somewhat more northwards by Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, and which are immediately connected with those of Hottentots'-Holland, have again their own appropriate species of *protea*, which do not grow in any other part.

Between these large shrubs are many smaller plants of the highest beauty, among which I must particularize the *erica petiverii*, with its fine yellow flowers and long brown anthers, the *erica plukenetii*, and the *elichrysum proliferum*. A considerable space is also covered with several sorts of *cliffortia*, for the most part the same that grow in the Table Valley, only with this difference, that here we found both sexes, whereas there, during the whole winter, we could find none but the female plants.

We at length reached the top of the hill, and were delighted with the glorious view above-described: this was exceedingly embellished by the scenery immediately around us, having, from the mildness of spring, assumed so cheering and lovely an aspect. Even here, in these higher regions of the air, all nature seemed to enjoy this mildness, and things, which at my former

visit appeared to me insignificant and dead, had now, from the enchanting verdure of the leaves, and the beautiful hues of the flowers, acquired an indescribable charm. The *erica banksii* was in amazing profusion, covering over large heaps of stones, its runners fastening themselves among the interstices. It seemed a doubt whether the length and thickness of these runners, or the innumerable quantity of the flowers lying upon the flat stones, were the most to be admired.

We were obliged to wait some time for the arrival of our baggage at the top of the hill. I left my impatient companions to go forwards, and stopped myself for the waggons, that the treasures which I collected, and which I was afraid to trust to the shaking of the horse, might be placed in security. I soon found ample reason to rejoice that I had done so, since the very first declivity presented me with such a number of new plants, that without the assistance of my slaves, I should never have been able to collect specimens of even the most important. Ten sorts of heaths, not to be found in the Table Valley, formed a part of this new prize: four of these I have ascertained, since my return, to be wholly new. Besides them, numbers of the most beautiful *elichrysa*, some *penae*, *borbonia*, *crotalaria*, *diosmea*, *gnidia*, *&c*, *&c.* presented themselves within the first hundred paces; and at every step I went, I was rejoiced with the sight of some fresh plant till then unknown to me. This eastern side of the hill is more naked than the western, and having a trifling inclination towards the north, the sun acts upon it with the greater power, driving all the moisture contracted during winter with so much force up to the plants, that their growth is more than commonly luxuriant. Collecting insects, at one time my most favourite occupation, I was here obliged partially to forego, since a whole day would have been necessary to obtain all I wanted, and our journey could not be delayed for such purposes. How often did I wish that some of my European friends had been with me, to share in this delicious banquet; nay, how glad should I have been, if my friends from the Cape Town only, who, for several months had been the companions of my botanical wanderings, had now partaken in my pleasures.

Farther down were many single shrubs, of which this valley seems to be the most chosen abode. Among them may be mentioned the *retzia spicata*, *tenaea formosa*, *erica gnaphaloides* and *acuminata*, *protea erosa*, with many others equally beautiful and rare. I should weary the patience of my

readers were I but to give the names of all the plants I saw, and which will make this day one never to be erased from my memory. He alone can have an idea of the pleasure I experienced who has felt a serious longing to see a large collection of foreign plants, alive in their natural situations, disposed in picturesque groups, and flourishing in all the luxuriance of their proper unsophisticated nature.

From the hills which now lay to our left, flow at this time of the year several abundant streams, which in their course intersect the coasts of the valley between this place and the *Houhoek*. The first which is to be crossed is the most dangerous, on account of the muddy bottom, in which waggons or any thing loaded may easily sink. The ford has from very old times borne the name of Grietjesgat. Although stones and trunks of trees without end have been thrown in with the view of making a firmer bottom, all has hitherto been ineffectual: the mud constantly seems to accumulate above them. On account of the low sandy shores, no attempt has ever been made at throwing a bridge over; indeed, over other streams, where the banks are higher, and seem to offer a good foundation for a bridge, it has been found that the overflowings occasioned by heavy winter rains carried the bridges away, so that the foot only was left standing. This hole however is nearly dry in summer, and excepting in one small spot, may be forded conveniently.

About noon we reached a more considerable stream, called the Palmiet river. It has this name from the abundance of Palmiet reeds, *acorus palmita*, which grow about it; they are indeed common about all the streams in these parts. In winter and spring this river is very rapid, and not safe to be crossed without an experienced guide: this not merely from the rapidity of the current, but that here also the bottom is full of muddy holes, which are very dangerous if not avoided with the greatest care. A few years before, an English physician, by name Partridge, who would not be persuaded to take a guide, but thought he was sufficiently acquainted with the ford, paid for his imprudence with his life; nor were such examples very uncommon in former times. My companions, who preceded me, had on this account crossed the stream somewhat higher up, in a boat, leaving their horses to swim after them. Before we attempted to make the waggons go through, a Hottentot was sent to examine the depth, who said that all the things must be taken out of the waggons, or they would be entirely wetted. Excepting this trouble, and it

certainly was not a trifling one, the passage was performed very happily. I now followed my companions somewhat quicker, tracking them in the true African fashion by the impressions of the horses' feet on the hard soil, and towards evening found them a little out of the road, at a farm where we stopped for the night. When the waggons arrived, I employed the remainder of the evening in a closer examination of the treasures I had collected.

The corn here appeared but poor, and we learnt, with great concern, that there was very little prospect of a good harvest. The farmers had not been able to sow so much corn as the year before, because it was very late before the ground was sufficiently moistened by the rains to permit of its being sown; and because the oxen employed in ploughing, had, from the continued drought, been so scantily fed, that they had scarcely strength to work. 'Tis for this reason that the people here always wish the winter to set in early. If the rains begin in March and April, so that the oxen are ready to work in May and June, a tolerably plentiful harvest may be expected, let the summer, from September, be ever so dry. Perhaps here also may be found the reason why rye and oats never succeed very well in the colony, whereas the wheat and barley are particularly good, and, under favourable circumstances, yield most plentifully: another cause of this may possibly be found in the nature of the soil.

From hence it will appear obvious, that it is a very difficult thing for any one to form a decided judgment with respect to the fertility of a country in which they are only transitory visitors. At least, it would scarcely occur to an inhabitant of the north of Europe, that the hardness of the soil, and the weakness of the draught cattle, could have so important an influence upon the plenty or scarcity of the year. With us, the frost, and the moisture of spring, keep the soil always in a state fit for cultivation, while we have abundant resources for furnishing our cattle with a constant and plentiful supply of food. The country on the western side of these mountains, quite to the *Four-and-twenty rivers*, is therefore much better suited to the growing of corn, as the farmers can send their oxen at the beginning of the year to the coast, where the rains, according to the usual course of things, fall earlier; and where, particularly in the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay, they may almost always be sure of finding good pasture as soon as the west winds begin to blow. Many farmers have, therefore, a *cattle place* of their own on the coast;

others only send them thither for awhile, paying a sum agreed upon, according to the time they are to stay. For the rest, the coast is sandy, and, in other respects, little capable of cultivation.

The wants of the people in these parts were, alas ! much increased in the sequel, since the harvest of 1804 fell quite as short as that of the preceding year. Happily, the attention of the government was directed to this matter time enough to counteract the scarcity in a certain degree. As soon as the circumstance was known, several cargoes of rice were purchased, and every citizen of the Cape Town was limited to a certain weekly allowance of bread, according to the number of his family; while every baker was restrained from having more corn in his possession than was necessary to supply his customers according to the regulation. In this manner the year 1805 was passed, under a positive scarcity of bread, so that at great entertainments the bread was wholly omitted, or else each guest brought his own with him. To avert like wants, or the possibility of even greater, preparations were made in the very same year for establishing large magazines in Muscle Bay and Algoa Bay, whither farmers, who had hitherto, on account of their distance from the Cape Town, and the expense of transport thither, grown very little corn, might now send any quantity they chose to produce, with a certainty of receiving the same price for it as in the town corn-market. The utility of such an institution must be so obvious to every one who knows the country, that it is most probable the plan would be adopted and carried to perfection by the English.

On the fourth of September, very early in the morning, we proceeded on our journey, and soon reached a steep and rugged chasm, which, winding among dark and barren heights, leads to the plain of the Bot river. This pass is called the *Houdhoek*, or more commonly *Houhoek** — the *Halting-pass;* because from its length and ruggedness, the traveller is detained a long time in going through it; or because, in the most difficult and dangerous parts it is necessary for the drivers of the waggons to hold them very fast. This is also called the *Great Houhoek*, to distinguish it from a smaller pass of the same name, which lies an hour more to the north, and is still more rugged and

* Not *Houwhoek*, the *Hollowed Strait*, as some writers have it; nor the *Oudchoek*, *Old Strait*, as it is called by Le Vaillant.

difficult to get through. Farther down, in rents made by the waters, the rocks were grown over with many sorts of bushes. I here saw, for the first time; the *taxus*, now called *podocarpus elongata*, the *protea pinifolia*, the *levisamus*, and many other beautiful sorts of this species, upon an average not less than from fifteen to twenty feet high. Among them grew in tolerable abundance a higher sort of tree, which, alas! was not in blow: the fruit has the same kind of angular form as the nut of the *Cupressus*, and the leaves are long, narrow, and pointed, in the form of a lancet. It may, perhaps, be hereafter examined by some of my successors at a more favourable time of the year. The *brabejum stellatum* also grows here, as it does in most chasms where the declivity runs down into a plain, and where water is standing the whole year through.

We crossed the Bot river without much trouble, leaving a pretty farm which lies upon this river to our left. The plain in which we now arrived lies considerably above the level of the sea, and is very sandy. Several sorts of *elichrysum* form its most beautiful ornament; the principal are the *sesamoides*, the *vestitum*, and the *imbricatum*. The colonists call all this species *seven-years flowers*, because, if gathered when in full bloom, they will last for a long time with their beauty unimpaired; seven years, according to the popular belief. The houses of the colonists are every where decorated with them: they are sent as presents to the Cape Town, and they are even made an article of traffick by speculating Europeans. While the English name, *everlastings*, and the French, *immortelles*, refer to the imperishable nature of their beauty, we Germans are pleased to call them *paper-flowers*, or *straw flowers;* to designate, in truly prosaic terms, the dryness which prevents their fading. This property, and the bright glow of their colours, point out very decidedly the dry nature of the soil, and the warmth of the climate in which they are natives. Next to the *erica* and *protea*, these are some of the most characteristic plants of the country, and belong almost to this alone, at least as far as concerns the species *elichrysum* and the greater part of the *gnaphalia*.

CHAP. XL.

Visit at the House of M. Otto.—Mirth among the young People there.—Discussion concerning the African Women.—Bavians'-Kloof.—Zoetemelks Valley.—The Post-holder Theunissen.—Passage over the Breede River.—Zwellendam.—Botanical Researches about the Devil's-Bush.—Plants collected there.—Rotterdam.—Account of the old blind Botanist, John Andrew Auge.

After resting about noon for some hours at Boontjeskraal, the place of the worthy Field-cornet Conrad Greeve, towards evening we reached the outward north-westerly declivity of the Black Mountain, at a place where a stream called the Diep river flows from it.* We stopped for the night at the house of a person by name Otto, who was not at home himself, but whose children received us very kindly, and did the honours of the house in the handsomest manner possible. We found a party of jovial young people assembled here, consisting of the future sons-in-law, suitors to the two charming daughters of the house, with many other friends and neighbours of both sexes. Many of them were already acquainted with some one or other of our party, from having seen them in former journeys, and by them the rest of the company were immediately introduced to each other, so that our intrusion did not interrupt the general gaiety. On the contrary, we were readily permitted to join in their mode of entertaining themselves: and as we were already acquainted with the habits and manners of the colonists, it was easy enough for us to fall at once into their ways so as to remove every thing like restraint.

---

* The reader must not be surprized if he should not always find the names of these little streams noted down in the map. They are too numerous to be all inserted, particularly in a general map; there the appropriate names of certain boundaries must be most plainly distinguished if a person wishes to be clear, and to give the most exact designation of those objects which rank the highest in their importance. For the rest, the *Black Mountain* here mentioned must not be confounded with the great chain that bears the same name, and runs parallel with the southern coast.

On this occasion I was more fully convinced than before, that a journey like that which I had taken with the Commissary-General is not propitious to gaining an accurate knowledge of the people, of their manners, customs, and modes of thinking. The rank of our chief, the number of his train, the trouble and disorder every where occasioned by our visits, perhaps also the presence of our ladies, seemed always to render the women, both wives and daughters, so shy and distant, not to mention the bustle they were in to prepare every thing for us, that it was scarcely possible to observe them accurately. But on the present journey, I saw them frequently under their genuine forms: these I neither found uniformly amiable, nor, as many earlier travellers assert without truth, uniformly rough and insignificant. He who comes into the colony with all the recollections of the friends and acquaintance he has left in his highly civilized native country fresh in his mind, can scarcely be pleased at first with the Cape beauties, particularly with those of the country. The women here are commonly very pretty, and dressed in the very height of the European fashions, whence strangers are led to expect a high degree of education and polish in their manners; and when reluctantly obliged to change their opinions in this respect, they perhaps often go too far the other way. It may easily be imagined that the African ladies cannot display any knowledge in books, or in works of art, and that they do not possess very refined feelings in any way: every thing by which they are surrounded from their earliest youth is of the most simple and prosaic kind: they live entirely among themselves, and have therefore no opportunities of gaining any enlarged stock of ideas. Those who do not understand the relations in which these women are educated, and in which they constantly live, of which alone therefore they can have any clear comprehension, and upon which alone they are consequently enabled to speak,—who judge them according to the first impression made, will very probably be led to consider them as shy and simple. It is by no means impossible that they may take offence at modes of expression in fact very polite and well bred, because they do not understand them: while the rough joke of an African youth, at which our ladies would blush and cast down their eyes, will be received with laughter and applause. But it would be a great error to suppose from hence, that they have no sense of modesty and decorum of manners. If it be difficult to offend their ears by words which might carry offence to minds differently

organized, this advantage is derived from it, that their imaginations are more tranquil, they are more secure against seduction; since, according to the universally received opinion, girls of the quickest sensibility are always the most in danger in this respect.

The African women are well aware themselves, that they have the character among the Europeans of being deficient in education, and of permitting themselves too much levity in their intercourse with men; they are, therefore, very anxious to punish, by the distance of their behaviour, the error of these somewhat too squeamish foreigners. Howsoever light of character they may be supposed at first, yet when put to the proof, strangers uniformly find that nothing can be more difficult than to obtain the slightest favour from them, and no instance ever fell under my knowledge of the last favour being obtained. Mr. Barrow, who pronounced so harsh a judgment upon the women of the Cape, afterwards confuted himself in the most forcible manner, by marrying one a short time before his departure, whom he took with him to England; an example followed by no inconsiderable number of his countrymen. He who would form a more accurate judgment of the African women, who would not consider their want of higher cultivation as a reproach, but would make all proper allowances for that slight degree of ruggedness which is the inevitable effect of their education and of local circumstances, would find them for the most part amiable and worthy of respect. The modes of amusement into which we now entered, would indeed to a highly polished and cultivated European circle have appeared very dull and *ennuyeux;* yet the universal cheerfulness that every where reigned, the *naïveté* of the girls, and the strong sense of honour with which the young men seemed inspired, made the evening pass off very agreeably, or at least by no means tediously. Those who do not expect too much of mankind, may almost always be satisfied, and will often find more to please them than they expected.

On the following day we made a retrogade movement of some hours, in order to visit the institution of the Herrnhuters at Bavians'-kloof. In the way thither I again found a rich harvest for my collection of plants, particularly as we approached the banks of the river Zonder-end: these banks are richly overgrown with shrubs. The *halleria lucida* and *elliptica* were distinguished above the rest by their beautiful red flowers. The river was not crossed without difficulty, since the water was four feet and a half deep, and

the stream rapid. On the other side of it is a low fertile plain, which leads gradually to the foot of the mountains, and is about an hour in breadth. The church of Bavians'-kloof, with its high roof and the buildings around it, had a very picturesque appearance, as seen from hence, and the picture was embellished in no slight degree by the height of the mountains behind, and the depth of the chasm at the entrance of which the village lies. The brethren received us in the same friendly manner as on the former occasion, and before dinner we had an excellent chorus from the Hottentots. Looking over the institution, and a walk into the interior of the valley, occupied us for some hours in the afternoon; we then proceeded on our journey, and in the evening arrived at Zoetemelk's valley, having passed several fine farms, of which we had only time to take a very transient view.

The road from Bavians'-kloof to Zoetemelk's valley runs at the foot of the hills parallel with the river. Many little streams are crossed, which flow from the chasms, and water the corn-fields In the beds of some of these, which consist of small loose stones, the *erica urceolaris* grows in great abundance, rising sometimes to a very extraordinary height, even from twelve to fifteen feet. I remarked some little difference between the leaves and flowers of these plants, and those of the same species which are to be found in the clefts of the Table Mountain, particularly in Kerstenbosch; but this may probably be occasioned solely by the different height of the places where they grew.

The spacious buildings in the valley, which is a rural domain, were particularly inspected by our party, with the view to their being converted into warehouses for provisions. On the following day, which was spent here entirely, Captain Paravicini gave various orders for their repair and improvement. In the Postholder of the place, by name Theunissen, he found a most able, active, and intelligent assistant, for prosecuting this business, to him was consigned the care of superintending every thing till our return from Zwellendam. This venerable old man, who was far from rustic in his manners, had come to the Cape as a soldier nearly fifty years before, where he attracted the particular notice of the excellent Governor Tulbagh, and grew so much into favour with him, that he was appointed to his present post, which he had enjoyed under that governor and his successors two-and-thirty years, conducting himself in it with the utmost activity, and giving the most perfect satisfaction to his employers. Theunissen was the father of ten

children ; his three eldest sons were already married and settled, and were considered as some of the most estimable among the colonists. He had educated his family himself, training them to be useful citizens and good domestic wives. The pleasure of having all his children, with a great number of grand-children, sometimes collected around him, conferred on the evening of his life that serenity and happiness to which his merits had so just a claim.

Besides a magazine of provisions, it was proposed to establish in Zoetemelk's valley store-houses for ammunition and other warlike necessaries. A part of these stores had been sent hither a short time before, the superintendance of which was confided to a young officer of the artillery ; but he had the misfortune not long after to receive so severe a wound in exercising, that he was rendered incapable of active service for the rest of his life. He, however, made himself useful in instructing the younger children and grand-children of the Postholder, by which means, he at the same time bound these good people to him in stronger ties, and found an interesting amusement to beguile his many hours of leisure which would otherwise have been very wearisome.

Several of the most distinguished colonists of these parts, particularly the commandant of the citizen company, came to visit Captain Paravicini, and received from him many instructions for the erection of signal-posts, for the facilitating and expediting the correspondence with the government, and for procuring a large supply of salt from the salt-pans in Zoetendal's valley.

Our waggon had met with an accident in crossing the river Zonder-end. Through the inattention of the driver, it was suffered to plunge with too much precipitation down the steep bank into the stream, so that one of the hinder oxen fell and was strangled with the harness about the neck. This occasioned so long a stop in the midst of the water, that every thing in the waggon got completely wetted, my collection of plants among the rest : it occasioned me a half-day's work to dry them and the papers, and to put them up again properly. I was not, on this account, deterred from continuing my pursuit, but in the afternoon rambled over the heights above Zoetemelk's valley, accompanied by my pupil. I found a number of beautiful plants, among others, several sorts of heaths entirely new to me.

On the seventh of September we proceeded farther down the river Zonder-end,

crossing it several times, and halted at length at the house of our friend Holzhausen, the son-in-law of the Postholder Theunissen. As we could not all be accommodated here, some were obliged to go for the night to a neighbouring farm. It happened, however, as is not often the case, that this visit was not agreeable to the master of the house, who had therefore absented himself with his wife. The two gentlemen having, however, had some intimation of the disposition of these people, made no ceremony, but quietly took possession of the house in the true military style; and ordered the slaves to prepare them a good supper from the stores that it contained. This was attended with the consequence they expected; for the master of the house now came forth from his concealment, making at least a shew of courtesy and hospitality. The wife, however, who on our former journey had refused to let her house be made a lodging-place for some of our people, notwithstanding the change in her husband's behaviour, could not be brought to any thing like civility, but continued, to the very moment of our departure, altogether rude and ungracious. A hint upon this subject, which she received from Captain Paravicini, gave occasion to a truly comic scene, since she chose to ascribe all her ill-humour to her husband, because she had wanted to prevent his talking against the government and the Governor. Not being disposed to interfere in this matter, we left the loving couple in a most warm matrimonial dispute.

The farther we went, the more dry, alas! did we find the country. In some particular spots, during the whole winter, which had now continued five months, not a drop of rain had fallen, and the cattle were sick, and dying for want of food, while the corn-lands were necessarily left uncultivated. Some of the inhabitants had been obliged to seek a refuge for their cattle in the mountainous countries. Close in the neighbourhood of the river Zonderend, where the ground was low, the vegetation was tolerably flourishing. Large streaks of land, running between the little copses, were covered with the *galenia africana*, a plant which furnishes the most wholesome food for horses, but the horned cattle do not like it.

By noon we arrived on the bank of the Breede river, which, at this season of the year, is not fordable in the place where we had crossed it in our former journey. The intercourse between Zwellendam and the Cape Town would be entirely cut off during the winter, had not a ferry been made over the

river, by means of which, travellers, with their waggons, horses, and oxen, can be set over very conveniently. This ferry is at the distance of about an hour from the direct road, since it could only be established where the fall was not too great, and the current flowed tranquilly over a broad bed. Every one who makes use of the ferry pays a dollar and half for crossing. The right of levying this money, with the use of a neighbouring fief, is farmed to a colonist, who engages to keep the ferry-boat in good repair, and to furnish all the rope necessary for working it over. This ferry-boat is a sort of flying-bridge, which is drawn over by means of a very strong rope stretched across the river from one side to the other; the same that is called in Holland a *pont*. We stopped at the house of the ferryman, or *pontman*, as he is here termed, whose name was Coen; till our waggon came up with us. By this man we were furnished with a dinner, which he seasoned so well with a number of droll stories and anecdotes, related with uncommon fluency, that he made it pass off very pleasantly.

The passage over the Breede river, which is indeed here tolerably broad, has in it this peculiar charm, that it is almost the only point in the whole colony where a considerable expanse of water, and the sight of a boat, presents to the mind a living picture of the navigable streams in our native country. The high banks overgrown with bushes, the house of the *pontman* lying at a little distance upon a naked eminence, and the more distant hills, rising in the back ground, form altogether a most picturesque scene; one which in this country is very rare.*

Without meeting with any other incident worthy of notice, we arrived in the evening at Zwellendam, and went to the house of the Landdrost Faure. He had set out himself some days before to Algoa Bay, to arrange with Captain Alberti and the Landdrost Stockenstroem, the boundaries between the three districts of Zwellendam, Uitenhage, and Graaff Reynett: the family, however, received us with the accustomed hospitality of the country, and insisted

* In my return, I endeavoured to take a sketch of this scene, in the intention of giving it a place here; but when the plate was engraved, I found that the small scale, to which the objects were necessarily reduced, derogated so much from the character of the scenery, that I withdrew the sketch entirely, unwilling to increase the price of my book by a plate which, for these reasons, would neither have been beautiful nor instructive.

that we should all take up our abode at the drosty, though we had already made arrangements for hiring lodgings in the houses of some of the citizens. The absence of the Landdrost, who did not suppose the visit of the Commission to be so near, presented a considerable obstacle to following entirely the objects of our journey; nevertheless, the activity of the secretary to the district, Frauenfelder, who filled the office of deputy till his return, was such as to give hopes, that, by his assistance, the views of the Governor, in all the most essential points, would not be disappointed.

The four days that we remained here were passed by Captain Paravicini in consulting with the secretary and the justice of the district, on the best means to be employed for the different objects that were to be attained, and in giving all necessary instructions for making the proper contracts, and dispersing the proper circular orders. Every individual of the company lent their assistance in this task, partly by drawing up the requisite papers, partly by making multiplied copies of them for circulation: so that upon the whole, the principal object of the journey, collecting large quantities of provisions, and fixing on the proper places as *depôts* for them, was tolerably well accomplished. What could not be done immediately was necessarily left to the future cares of the Landdrost; and this the rather, since it was impossible, in so short a time, to be aware of every thing that must be provided for. The event fully proved that no confidence in his zeal and cares could be misplaced.

To Lieutenant Meier was assigned the task of superintending the erection of a powder magazine and laboratory at Zwellendam. Some invalid soldiers of the artillery, whom it was the wish of the government to establish in a quiet mode of life, were appointed as his assistants, and were to work under his guidance in the laboratory. To find a proper place for the purpose was not easy, since, on account of the great danger attending such works, they must not be carried on near any dwelling-houses. At length, a sort of shed, or barn, in the church-yard, which had served as a workshop to the people employed in building the church, was fixed upon to be converted into a laboratory; and, notwithstanding the opposition made to it at first by the obstinacy of the ecclesiastical council, it was at length hired, and possession was taken of it immediately. At the same time, a pretty house was engaged by the government for Lieutenant Meier, where he established himself happily, with

his wife and a numerous family, rejoiced, after having passed through so many storms of fate, here to find a pleasant asylum, with the prospect of an easy and comfortable provision for the rest of his days. Alas! he thought not how short-lived this joy was to be.

The more accurate examination of the wooded chasms in the mountains about Zwellendam was the principal object of my journey. Scarcely was the sun risen in the morning after our arrival, when I was on my way to the Devil's Bush. Almost on quitting the village, upon the very first height, I was greeted with some beautiful sorts of the low species of *blaeria*, which is properly at home in this country: the heaths which I had found on the Breede river, though so nearly related to them, were not to be seen here. The *erica* is, generally speaking, the property of the little south-west corner of Africa; but some of the sorts are to be found about Tulbagh and Zwellendam. With this species may also be mentioned some *struthiola*, *passerina*, and *phylica*, which seem properly to belong only to the neighbourhood of the Cape Town. Among the *blaeria* were several new sorts; one even, which, in the sequel, has been determined a new species, *sympieza*.

My route lay now through a low place between two considerable mountain ridges, which was watered all along by a rapid stream. Among the rushy grass growing in this hollow, many single low shrubs were strewed about, particularly *podaliria buxifolia*, *myrtillifolia*, and a new sort; *virgata*, *polygala appositifolia*, *aspalathus thymifolia*, *nivea*, several *liparia*, *rafnia*, *cleomea*, and other species, almost all of the family of papillonaceous flowers. At length I arrived at the edge of the wood. Gladly would I give such a description of it as should be comprehensible to all my readers, if this were not very difficult, nay, almost impossible, without either confining myself to general indications, or by entering on the subject more diffusely, annoying the botanical reader with dwelling on particulars which would materially weaken the scientific part of my description. I must, however, be permitted the use of some latin names, familiar to those who have any knowledge of plants, and must be allowed to weave together a little nosegay, such as may give a tolerable idea of a Southern African wood. From the general extension of botanical knowledge, and the taste which lovers of gardening have acquired, within a few years, for the plants that grow about the Cape, it may be hoped that among my readers, some will be found who will excuse me to the rest.

I was saluted, even before I arrived at the wood, with the camphor-like smell from the flowers of the *diosmea*, which were growing upon the banks of the stream; and the first thing that met my eyes on coming to the wood, was the *barosma serratifolium*, taller than the ordinary height of a man, with its brown and slender branches covered with bright-green leaves, and thinly spread white flowers, all turned to the light of the beneficent sun. Several sorts of *cluytia*, as the *pulchella*, *alaternoides*, *tomentosa*, and *gridioides*, shared the humid spot. Among them grew (where with us grow the *mentha* and *veronica*,) *agathosma serpyllaceum*, *linifolia*, and *pubescens*, the two first of which were quite new to me. In the drier parts were *ornigothalum*, *anthericum bulbine*, *adenandra uniflora*, and *villosa*, *diosma pectinatum obtusatum*, and *graveolens*, with several *lachenalia*. Further up, in a place where the wood was less thick, and where there was consequently more light, I found abundance of *myrsine Africana*, (which is very like the *vaccinium* of our country), in company with *anthospernum aethiopicum*, and *cliffortia juniperina*, covering a considerable tract of stones, and growing at the roots of the first large trees. The next shade presented me with the dark leaves of the *laurophyllus capensis*, and farther in towered trees of various sorts, as *scleroxylon*, *ekebergia capensis*, *cuclea undulata*, *podocarpus elongata*: many a space between these was occupied by low shrubs, as *royena*, *bryonia*, and *cluytia*. The higher branches of the trees were entwined with the woody wide-spreading runners of the *cynanchum obtusifolium*, which sometimes, hanging down to the very ground, obstructed the way. I was able without much trouble to draw out a young string of it, but when I had gone as far as thirteen ells,* was obliged to cut it off. The colonists call this plant *monkey's-cord*, since the monkeys often make use of it to get from tree to tree. Of the thick stems which are wound round the branches of the trees, and which are often from two inches to three and a half in diameter, sticks are made, which, on account of their pretty twining appearance, are much bought up by the gentry at the Cape Town, where they are called Esculapian sticks. The slender bending strings are about the thickness of a little finger. It is very seldom that side-shoots are to be seen: the string constantly runs on in

* We do not know whether the Author means here the Flemish ell, which is only three-quarters of our yard, or the French ell, which is five quarters.—Translator.

length, so that the same will often twine itself round ten or twelve large trees. On the young points alone do the leaves grow in pairs: farther back the pairs become more rare, and at length cease entirely.

Woods can only flourish in Southern Africa where there is an eternal moisture; consequently only in the deepest chasms of the mountains, where water trickles unceasingly down the stony walls that rise on either side, and where the sun cannot exercise its all-drying power. As the large trees owe their growth originally only to this supply of water, they, by a reaction, shelter the ground, by the shade which their branches afford, from evaporation, and assist to retain the moisture. At the same time, they stop the stones as they roll from the sides of the mountains, and prepare a new receptacle for the water, by the soil formed from their decayed leaves. From all these wooded chasms, therefore, abundant streams flow, which, from the nature of the soil that the water passes through, is always tinted with a dark brown colour. To these woods is the whole southern coast of Africa indebted for its fertility: if cut away, the country would be rendered uninhabitable for centuries. To take a walk for pleasure in them, is, however, not possible;—they only admit of climbing. The paths are tracked between the stems of the trees; and they are inconvenient from their steepness, and the slippery nature of the ground.

Some wood-plants grow in the moist soil, the appearance of which, from that very circumstance, is wholly unlike the generality of African plants; they rather bring to mind the idea of those that grow in our German groves. Among them may be mentioned a stieky kind of plant, *galium glabrum*, which very much resembles our *galium aparine*, or goose-grass, and is no less adhering in its nature. A plant, which is now very much cherished in our conservatories, the *plectranthus fruticosus*, was here in very great abundance; and the lily-white hue of its large bunches of flowers, formed a fine contrast with the dark soil over which they were spread. These were accompanied by the *antirrhinum macrocarpum*, *pharnaceum galioides*, and *hebenstreitia dentata*; but nowhere were any genuine grasses, or any sappy kind of plant to be seen, nor any shrub with fleshy berries; no *protea*, *erica*, or *gnaphalia*,—no plants of the *syngenesia* family, nor any of the *ranunculus* tribe. Higher up in the chasm were the *silene ornata*, *ornithogalum parviflorum*, and several sorts of *oxalis*, already in blow, and the *crassula sylvatica*, rooted in the hard stone. Higher still rose a gigantic

polypodium, with several ferns and mosses, things very rare in this country. In the stream itself was a plant, the roots of which were fast between the interstices of the rocks, having a sort of grass-like appearance, with very small stalkless leaves, growing to the heighth of about two feet. This deserves a more accurate examination from those that shall come after me: perhaps it may be a sort of fresh-water *alga*, of a wholly new species. Wherever the sun penetrated in the wood, there were abundance of butterflies and beetles; and from above, at the inaccessible end of the chasm, the incessant noise of multitudes of apes was repeated by the echoes all around.

It was already far into the afternoon when I turned my steps homeward, laden with the treasures which I had collected. I did not now take the path through the bottom of the dell, but made my way along the side of the mountain, where I found some *pelargonia* the *myrrhifolium* among others, *hermannia cuneata*, *crinus serpyllaceus*, *indigofera erecta*, *borbonia ruscifolia*, *stilbe cernua*, *gnidia polygalæfolia*, and many other beautiful plants, which furnished me ample employment for the remainder of the day. A heavy and continued rain, very desirable upon every other account, which fell on the following days, prevented my visiting the Devil's Bush again till the day before our departure. The stream was then so swelled, that I was precluded from penetrating far into the dell, and I was obliged to content myself with gleaning some few plants which had escaped me on my first visit, and collecting the seeds of a few others.

The afternoon of this last day was devoted to an excursion to Rotterdam, the Landdrost's country seat, whither the young ladies of the house accompanied us on horseback. We looked all about the premises, and particularly examined the fine stud of horses belonging to the proprietor of the place. But all these things were viewed by me with indifference. I was impatient to get to the last house in the court, where dwelt an old countryman of mine, the oldest botanist living, the blind Auge, now arrived at the great age of ninety-three.

John Andrew Auge, born at Stollberg in the year 1711, from an irresistible propensity to the study of plants, which he had acquired as a gardener's boy, went into Holland before he was twenty years of age, that country being then considered as the principal seat of science in gardening. Here, under the celebrated Boerhaave, he acquired a more than ordinary stock of knowledge in his business. Oldenland and Berg had even at that time made

voyages to the Cape, whence they had returned with large collections of plants from that country. Their example, and the encouragement he received from Boerhaave, determined Auge to make the same voyage, and he came to the Cape in the year 1747, furnished with very good recommendations. The then Governor, Swellengrebel, immediately appointed him assistant to the Company's garden, and Governor Tulbagh, with whom, from his botanical knowledge, he was a great favourite, made him afterwards principal overseer. He then exerted the utmost diligence to store the garden with every sort of rare African plant, so as to convert it into a true botanic garden. In those times alone could that praise be justly ascribed to it: all the rarities now to be found there are remains of Auge's cares and industry. With equal diligence did he collect wild plants for his *herbarium;* this in the sequel he sent to Burmann, who afterwards publicly made use of it for the extension of knowledge in the botanical science.

In the year 1761, at the suggestion of Governor Tulbagh, he accompanied the Commission, which, under the conduct of the Commandant Hope, undertook a journey along the Great river to the country of the Namaaquas. From this expedition he returned with a great many new plants, which were afterwards described by his European friends. Ten years after, he accompanied Thunberg and Masson in some of their excursions, and also made acquaintance with Sparrman. In later times, from a constantly-increasing weakness of sight, he obtained his dismission with a small pension, with which he retired to live near an old friend in the distant country upon the Chamtoo river. This friend took care of him when he became wholly blind, he being then more than seventy years old, and in his arms he hoped to have passed the remainder of his days in peace. But he was yet to experience severe proofs of the instability of all human hopes. When the Cape was taken by the English in 1795, he lost his pension; his worthy friend, however, did not permit him to be any sufferer by this loss: he took the same care of him as before, providing for all his wants out of his own stores. Yet here again the botanist was to be farther instructed in the instability of fate:—by the inroads of the Caffres, his friend was reduced to poverty, and instead of being able to help others, was himself in need of assistance. The farm at which Auge was living was surprised in the night by the savages, and the inhabitants, too weak to resist, were glad to take advantage of the darkness, to escape with their lives, leaving their whole property a prize to the enemy. The old blind man,

however, was not forgotten: he was carried away, half led, half dragged, to the next farm, where a waggon was obtained for pursuing the flight. Bewailing the loss of all his property, particularly his books and collection of plants, he was brought to Zwellendam, where the excellent Faure took him under his protection as the friend of his father, who had been long dead, providing him with food, lodging, and cloathing, without ever expecting the least return.

The old man having been advertised of our intended visit, had placed himself before the door of his cottage, and made many excuses for his blindness and debility. He was tall, still tolerably upright, and his hair, as white as snow, hung about his shoulders. The sight of a blind person always excites compassion; here respect was inspired by the sight of dignified old age, to which with me was added veneration for one of the most skilful of botanists; and notwithstanding the homeliness of his dress, he stood in the midst of us the object of our highest respect and interest. He gave us a very connected and affecting detail of the hardships he had recently endured, not however dwelling upon them so eagerly as upon the kindness he had received from his present benefactor. He told us that his health did not yet seem much on the decline, so as to make him think his death very near, and he was afraid he should long be a burden upon this excellent patron. He did not, however, repine at it, as he was sure that the kindness shewn him was with the utmost good will, and he was highly grateful for it. He was grieved, however, that he had lost his pension, since that would have enabled him not to be so great an expense to the Landdrost; it would at least have found him in cloathing. I learnt by the way that the worthy Faure had never applied to get the pension renewed, out of delicacy to the old man, lest it should appear as if he grudged any part of the money spent upon him.

A mere relation of what passed at this interview was sufficient to obtain from the Governor the restoration of the pension with a small monthly addition to it; and if the English, as I am inclined to hope, have continued the benefaction, my visit was at least attended with this advantage, that it has contributed towards rendering the evening of so venerable an old man's life somewhat more easy and serene.

In giving me these details, it was very evident that he still retained all his love for his favourite science, and I was not a little astonished to find how well he remembered the names of the various African productions. He was rejoiced to hear that I was a collector of plants, and told me many

things relating to those which were to be found in the Devil's Bush; but he called them after the old names given by Burmann. He had almost entirely forgotten his native tongue, and spoke the corrupted Dutch of the colonists. He enquired with very particular interest about the botanic garden at the Cape Town, asking whether such and such trees that he had planted were in a flourishing condition, with the same anxiety as if they had been the friends of his youth. "Is my *heliconia alba* alive?—is my *corallodendron** as fine a tree as ever?"—As I answered in the affirmative to his enquiries after these and many others, he begged me to describe them to him, how tall and how thick they were, and he said he should die happier, if he could but feel them once again. He enquired about several others, concerning which I could not give him any information, either because they were no longer in existence, or that I did not understand the names by which he distinguished them. I had the pleasure of being the first to tell him that Thunberg had called a species of plant after him *Augea Capensis*, in order that future botanists might have a lasting memorial of his services. He was almost angry that I could not tell him immediately from recollection to what class it belonged, for he would gladly have known that, and whether it was a plant with which he was acquainted.

My companions had soon dispersed themselves, and I went with my old man into his room, where I found every thing very clean and in the nicest order, and where was an old slave, whom the Landdrost had given him as a servant. He lamented anew the loss of his collection of plants, and cursed the Caffres because they had deprived him of the pleasure of entertaining me with it. He said I was the first botanist he had seen for many years, and if he could have the same pleasure once every year, his life would be much less tedious to him, for the only recreation he had was walking out several times in the day, holding by the arm of his black attendant. I stayed more than an hour with him, and was really affected at taking my leave of the venerable old man. At our separation I made him repeated promises that I would speak in his behalf to the Governor, and that if I ever came again to Zwellendam, I would spend a whole day with him.

---

* He meant *strelitzia alba* and *erythrina caffra*, which are still two of the highest ornaments to the Cape-Town garden. The first he brought, as he now informed me, from the country of the Namaaquas, the other from the Caffre country.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Return to the Cape Town.—Ziekenhuis.—The Black Mountain.—The Hot Springs.—Doctor Hassner's Establishment there.—Account of the Wax-Tree, and Manner of preparing the Wax from it.—Military Regulations made by the Governor.—The Author appointed Surgeon-Major to the Hottentot Battalion.—Terrible Epidemic Disease among the Troops.—Explosion of the Laboratory at Zwellendam.—Departure of the Commissary-General De Mist for Europe.

In the night before the day fixed for our departure, a heavy rain fell again; and, though it abated in the morning, the stream was so much swelled by it, that we could not set off till noon. Even then it was not without difficulty that we crossed the Klip river and the *Poespas-valley*.* Our hospitable hosts had, indeed, in the hope of detaining us longer, dwelt in strong terms upon the dangers to be encountered; but by the assistance of a very able and experienced guide, we conquered them all happily, and came off with no worse disaster than having our legs very much wetted. Our party received at Zwellendam the addition of Lieutenant Gossling of the Waldeck Jägers, who, having been summoned from his station at Algoa-Bay, was travelling to the Cape Town. In a few hours we reached the Breede river, which was happily crossed through the intervention of our jovial *Pontman*. From thence we continued our journey to the river Zonder-end.

It is astonishing how rapidly the whole appearance of an African landscape is changed by a heavy rain. Not only were all the shrubs and plants become green in a few days, but most of them were already most beautifully in flower. Even in the drought, vegetation seems to proceed internally; no suspension seems ever to take place in their growth; no winter rest: their

* *Poespas* is a term in common use in Southern Africa, and has much the same meaning as the familiar English term, *higgledy-piggledy*. The valley in question has its name from the loose fragments of broken rock, heaped together in the bed of the river: or some think it is given from the dangers the waggons and goods in them incur, from being rattled over these stones.

leaves do not fall off; and immediately upon the first rain, when the outward bark has imbibed the requisite moisture, the blossoms push forth: they do not wait for the rain to have penetrated as far as the roots. But the flowers go off again immediately, if they are not in a low situation, or if the moisture be not renewed with repeated rains. That the sappy plants and bulbous flowers of the Karroo should shoot out with such amazing rapidity, appears less surprizing than the sudden bursting of the hard woody shrubs which we saw here, where neither of the above families of Karroo plants are to be found.

The Hessaqua's-kloof was, in this respect, particularly striking. In coming through it, on our way to Zwellendam, its aspect was all mournful and melancholy: now every plant and shrub seemed even more beautiful than in any other part. The shrubs consisted principally of *malva capensis*, *virgata*, and *crydactilytes*, *hermannia candicans*, and several other sorts, some quite new. *Aspalathus*, *athanasia*, *relhania*, *arecotis*, *sarcophyllum carnosum*, *ulex rigidus*, *polygala hamosa*, *&c. &c.* In the low parts, nearer to the river, were *diosmea*, between melancholy *lycia* of several sorts, *stavia radiata*, with three or four fine species of *zygophyllum*, and *warmben campanulata*, about which climbed the *asparagus triacanthos*. No where was an *erica* to be seen, but many plants of the lily tribe, with one of the greatest ornaments of the fields, *echium spicatum*: of this there was a very great abundance.

We passed the night again with our friend Philip Holzhausen. This man had, as a youth, accompanied Van Reenen in his great journey among the neighbouring Caffre tribes, when he lost his father from the consequences of a wound, leaving him interred in the country of the Tambuckis. He entertained us with the account of this journey, confirming many things which I had already heard from Lombard, Müller, and other of his companions.

His gruff uncivil neighbour, was now, as a punishment for his former want of complaisance, obliged to furnish oxen for a relay to our waggons. He found, however, a means peculiar to himself, of giving vent to his ill-humour, even under this punishment. In harnessing the oxen to a waggon, at two of them, who were called *Holland* and *Licutenant*, he swore and cursed most furiously, while he did nothing but praise and caress a third, which had the name of *England*. Nobody, however, thought proper to indulge him with taking the slightest notice of this: so far, indeed, were we from being disposed to any thing like dudgeon upon the subject, that the humour of the

thing somewhat reconciled us to him. In our return, the regulations instituted at Zwellendam were made known in Zoetemelk's valley, and a consultation was held with the postholder Theunissen, and some of the principal people among the citizen militia, for carrying them into execution.

On the fifteenth of September, we took another direction in our return, from that by which we had come. We first crossed the river Zonder-end, very near Zoetemelk's valley, to examine some new buildings erected by the postholder on the other side, and a small cave, which, in former times, had been used by the colonists as a place of rest for the sick on a journey: on this account the name of *Ziekenhuis* was given to it, which it retains to the present day. Among many names inscribed here in the stone, we observed those of several persons high in rank at the Cape, about the end of the seventeenth century, whose descendants are now some of the principal citizens of the Cape Town; as, for instance, J. C. De Wet, and Olof Bergh, both of whom are particularly mentioned in Kolbe's travels. From hence we directed our course towards the eastern side of the Black Mountain, and reached the first farm in this district about noon. It stands upon a little stream which flows from the Black Mountain, called Speelman's river. In our way we saw several *duikers, griesboks,* and other smaller sorts of the antelope species.

Throughout the whole western part of the colony, at stated distances of three or four hours, on the most open and conspicuous points of the mountains, cannon were planted, which, in case of an attack from the enemy, were to be fired as signals to summon every citizen to his allotted post. In order to see whether they would answer their destination, and spread the alarm quick enough, an experiment was now to be made; but it was found that they were at too great distances from each other. It was also found, that the signal posts, particularly those about the coast, were too thinly scattered. Captain Paravicini, therefore, after consulting with those who could give him the best information upon the subject, issued such orders as should correct the deficiency for the future. One imperfection in this mode of communication could not, however, be remedied; and this was, that from the great distance at which some of the persons appointed to attend upon these signals lived from the tops of the hills, they could be repeated but very slowly. Thus, when the attack by the English was actually made, the news was eight hours in

reaching Zwellendam, though the distance from the Cape Town, in a direct line, is only twenty-two German miles.

A few hours farther carried us to Roodebloems-kloof, at the southern corner of the Black Mountain; and soon after we arrived at the hot springs on these hills, near which some houses are erected for the accommodation of persons who come to bathe. The man, however, who farms these springs, lives a quarter of an hour lower down the hill: notwithstanding this, he derives his chief subsistence from letting his rooms to the sick who come to the waters, and furnishing them with provisions. As he had not at this time any bathing guests to occupy his house, we found tolerably convenient accommodations, though we could not help being surprised that they were not better, considering how much the place is frequented in some parts of the year. Of household utensils, for example, there was a very great scarcity; the beds were very indifferent; yet the sick, who could not get one of the small houses close to the baths, have no resource but to establish themselves here: the eating was but middling, and extremely dear. The inhabitants of the Cape Town, who sometimes visit the baths for their health, had complained so much of the want of accommodation, that the following year the government offered a physician at Paarl a contract to settle on the spot, and build a spacious and convenient house close by the springs, with all possible conveniencies for the accommodation of invalids. One of the conveniences arising from this undertaking would be the having medical advice upon the very spot. This establishment was actually begun in 1805; and it is much to be hoped that it will meet with every encouragement from the English, particularly since the warm bath is now considered as an excellent specific for the disease so often contracted in Bengal—the hardening of the liver. The physician who engaged in the undertaking is a German, a native of Breslau, by name Hassner.

We stopped here for a whole day, which was employed in examining the waters, and the accommodations for bathing, very minutely. The springs issue from the slope of a pretty steep declivity on the south-western side of the Black Mountain, about two hundred feet higher than the place where the farm stands. The way up the hill lies over a hard clay, but the level, about the springs, is a deep sand. On the summit of this declivity, large

black stones are to be seen in abundance, rising above the sand, which, at the first glance, have the appearance of decomposed lava; but which, on a closer examination, are evidently a soft brown iron-stone. Some lie in single large blocks, others in flat pieces, one over the other; these latter, for the most part, cover an invisible cavity, from whence, in walking over them, a deadened kind of sound reverberates. Between these the hot water breaks out in many places, sometimes stronger, sometimes weaker. In digging deeper, springs are to be found, but most of them are kept stopped, that no impediment may arise to the constant flowing of the principal springs. These are three in number, which are almost indiscriminately used: they all lie within fifteen or twenty paces of each other. The hill itself is only separated from the chain of mountains that runs northward, by a small chasm, overgrown with wood, and from which flows a tolerably abundant stream of cold water. The long ridge, which forms the summit of the Black Mountain, rising about a hundred feet above the hot springs, consists of a sandstone, interspersed with large grains of iron. Iron and carbonic-acid seem the principal substances with which the water is impregnated; it is slightly coloured, deposits a good deal of ochre, and has a remarkable pricking kind of flavour of tin. The temperature of the three springs is not entirely the same; the highest gives twenty-nine degrees by Reaumur's thermometer, the other two thirty.

These waters are considered as the most efficacious, in a medical point of view, of any among the mineral waters of Southern Africa: they are used alike externally and internally. Chronic rheumatisms, gout itself, weakness of the nerves, and eruptive disorders, are those in which they succeed the most universally. In siphyllitic complaints, also, of a long standing, they have been resorted to with the happiest success. At the commencement, the malady has, perhaps, rather appeared increased by them; but, by perseverance, they have seldom failed of accomplishing a complete cure. It is true that there are better accommodations here for bathers, than at any of the other hot springs in the colony; but there is yet ample employment for Doctor Hassner in improving them. The water of the strongest spring is conducted into a small quadrangular house, in the lower room of which is a spacious bath, with sofas for those who wish to perspire. Above is a small chamber, which is commonly occupied by some of the principal

persons who come to bathe. Another house merely encloses the bath with a roof and sides, and the third spring is nearly open. This is only used by the slaves and Hottentots. Near the baths is a large building belonging to the government, in which are three apartments and a kitchen; this is also used as a lodging-house for the bathers. It is, however, in so ruinous a state, that most of the guests prefer living in tents during the time they are to stay; having tents also for their household. From October to December is the time of year when the waters are esteemed of the greatest efficacy, and are consequently the most frequented. The heat is not then very great, the fields are not yet dried up, and provisions of a good quality are more easily procured. Hitherto, however, the colonists near at hand have not thought of providing supplies for the bathers; nor could vegetables for the table be procured in the neighbourhood at any price; so that the sick have been obliged to send for them as far as Hottentots'-Holland.

Here are again a variety of heaths; five or six of the most beautiful sorts, with the most glowing colours, and the most splendid flowers. Near the hot springs also grows very abundantly a sort of *eucomis* without a stem; the large, almost bee-hive formed flowers of which, with the leaves lying flat on the ground, puzzled me very much. These leaves correspond very well with the description of the *eucomis nana*. It may possibly be a consequence of the very great care taken of these plants, and of the moisture in which they are kept when they come into our conservatories, that they then have a stem. This is indeed an effect very common among the plants of the Cape preserved in our botanic gardens. If the leaves and flowers be not seen together, it is scarcely possible to recognise them, so much are they drawn up, and so much have they lost their original strong and compact form. Several sorts of heaths, *protea*, and other shrubby plants, which I have seen, since my return, in conservatories, have appeared to me only like shoots drawn out in water from the old African stem. This observation applies particularly to a plant which is exceedingly abundant in the Black Mountain, the wax-tree, or *myrica cordifolia*. It is here seldom more than two feet high, has a thick woody stem, and is covered with flowers and berries. In our conservatories, on the contrary, it sometimes reaches the height of twelve feet, without having any firm stem, or producing a single flower.

The berries of this shrub, it is well known, yield a vegetable wax; these,

with those of another sort nearly allied to it, the *myrica cerifera*, are much used in North America. They are covered on the outside with a substance which has the appearance of very large powder; this melts with a certain degree of heat, and, when cold, hardens into a lump of wax. This wax is collected in considerable quantities by putting the berries into large iron vessels, and setting them over the fire till an oil is seen swimming at the top, which is then left to cool and harden. The substance thus obtained, might with as much propriety be called fat as wax. The facility with which it is melted, by only twenty degrees of Reaumur, its smooth rather than glutinous quality, the facility with which it may be converted into a palpable tallow, seem rather to identify it with fat than with wax. But, on the other hand, its dryness and powdery nature, for it may be rubbed into a sort of meal, the polish on its surface, and its specific weight, which in its most hardened and united state is exactly that of water, seems rather to assimilate it with wax.

If the berries are not collected with great care, the wax will have more or less of a greenish hue; this is much stronger if many of the stalks and leaves are boiled with them. November is the best time of the year for collecting the berries; six or seven pounds of them will then yield, on an average, a pound of wax; earlier, and later in the year, they will not yield so much; besides, earlier in the year the collecting them is attended with much more trouble; and later, it is probable that numbers of the berries have fallen off. People are very apt to be little careful in another respect in collecting them: they pluck the whole plant up by the roots, without any regard to future generations; whereas, the wise thing would be to gather the berries alone. Some excuse for this violent procedure may perhaps be found from the much shorter time in which a quantity is thus procured, and the greater facility of the transport, no sack being requisite to carry them. They may be carried home in the way of fodder. The wax is of no other use but for making candles; it is then commonly mixed with an equal quantity of tallow, since, at the same time that it burns out slower, it does not give so good a light as animal wax or grease. Used by itself, it gives a sort of bluish flame. The Hottentots consider the berries as a very wholesome and nourishing food, and many sorts of birds are extremely fond of them. The wax will dissolve entirely in oil of turpentine, not so easily in spirit of wine: it may be entirely bleached with muriatic acid.

A few hours after we quitted the hot springs we came into the road by which we had gone to Zwellendam, and going over Houhoek and Hottentots'-Holland-Kloof, without any particular occurrence, we re-entered the Cape Town on the twentieth of September.

During our absence, an American ship had imparted the news, not indeed officially, from the Batavian states, but as an article of general currency in all the European papers, and which appeared extremely credible, that a formidable expedition against the Cape was in preparation in England, so that an attack might shortly be expected. General Janssens considered it necessary, under these circumstances, to put the few troops under his command in motion as speedily as possible, that they might be accustomed, by degrees, to the hardships of a campaign. For this purpose he had a camp formed in the plain at the eastern foot of the Table-Mountain, near a stream which flows through it, called the Liesbeek river. While the soldiers of the former East India Company, which had been formed into bodies of auxiliary infantry, in conjunction with the citizen militia, performed the garrison duty in the Cape Town, and the charge of the batteries was confided to the auxiliary artillery corps, the troops of the line were daily exercised in the camp. Wherever any deficiency was discovered in provision, either of food, arms, ammunition, or other necessaries for this little army, the want was immediately supplied to the best of the General's ability.

The whole force consisted in the Waldeck battalion, in the twenty-second battalion of Batavian troops of the line, the ninth battalion of Jägers, and the Hottentot battalion; in all two thousand infantry. Of cavalry, there was only a squadron of light dragoons, and two of the new citizen companies; besides these, there was the fifth battalion of artillery, a moving battery, and a newly-formed division of Javanese artillery, which had eighteen field-pieces belonging to it. The whole army was animated by an excellent spirit; and if the English had then made their attack, instead of waiting till another year, they would probably have met with a much stronger resistance than was the case in 1806.

The citizens and colonists had willingly incorporated themselves for the service, and taken arms for the defence of the colony; but many of them thought it hard that one or more of their sons must also be brought into action. General Janssens, wishing to give a patriotic example in this respect,

made his own son, my pupil, then only fifteen years of age, take arms. He was placed at first as a cadet in the Waldeck battalion, but afterwards became a lieutenant in the light dragoons. Though my excellent patron assured me that this should not occasion any change in my connection with him, yet I thought it more honourable and laudable to share in the general zeal by which every heart seemed animated, and not remain idle, but take upon myself some public situation, in which I might be useful to the states and to the colony. The General gave me my choice among several things which he proposed to me, when I decided upon accepting the office of surgeon-major to the battalion of Hottentot light-infantry. Upon this service I entered the latter end of October, and pitched my tent in the camp among that of the other officers belonging to this body, many of whom were my acquaintance, or fellow-countrymen. I had scarcely become somewhat familiar with the new duties I had undertaken, when I had, alas! but too abundant opportunities of shewing my zeal in the discharge of them. Even before my arrival, symptoms had appeared among the troops of a very malignant epidemic disorder, a sort of dysentery, which had already nearly filled the hospitals at the Cape Town with sick. Most of the patients died in a very short time under the severest sufferings; and even those who did not die immediately, remained with diseases, which, with very few exceptions, proved incurable. Notwithstanding the very great care and attention of the General, that every thing should be furnished which might assist the recovery of the sick, that they should have good wine, good food, proper clothing, and proper covering at night to protect them against the influence of the climate; —notwithstanding all these cares, the evil daily increased. Toward the end of November, there were frequently not less than ten corpses carried out of the hospital in the course of the day. Several excellent officers shared the same lot.

At length it appeared clear that the situation of the camp was a principal cause of this heavy calamity, since during the day it afforded no shelter from the burning heat of the sun, and that it was open to the damp wind which often blows from the sea in the evening between the two rows of hills, suddenly, as with a breath, dispersing every feeling of warmth, changing the temperature of the atmosphere not unfrequently forty degrees, according to Fahrenheit's thermometer, in the course of an hour. Towards the end of

December, therefore, the camp was removed nearer to the Table-Mountain, under the shelter of the *Wine-Hills*, as they are called; where, indeed, the ground was less favourable, but the situation was beyond all comparison more salubrious. Before this cause of the calamity suggested itself, and the medical practitioners had learnt that an early and plentiful use of mercurial preparations was an infallible specific against the disease, hundreds of our brave warriors had fallen a prey to it.* The Waldeck battalion suffered particularly; for the Germans seemed universally more liable to be seized with the malady than either the Dutch or the natives.

I was not spared myself. The absence of most of my colleagues, who were summoned to the town for the service of the hospital, made my post very laborious. As the only surgeon-major in the camp, many times I was called up three or four times in the night to the sick, and in the day I had, besides attending eighty patients in my own battalion, many half sick officers throughout the camp to visit, who naturally wanted so much the more care and attention, even in matters really trifling, in proportion to the generally alarming aspect of the disease. Cooling medicines were indispensable in this painful practice. I found their good effects:—by the constant use of them I kept myself for many weeks free from the disease, though under circumstances extremely unfavourable for it. At length, however, I was subdued, and was obliged to quit the camp, and go into the town. I had at that time a patient under my care, whose situation lay very heavy on my heart: this was the chief of the light troops, Lieutenant Colonel Von Gilten, one of the worthiest of men, in every sense of the word, and with whom I lived in the closest friendship. The importance of his post, and his confidence in my skill, had kept him hitherto in the camp, notwithstanding that he was extremely ill, and that I exhorted him very earnestly to remove into the town. Now that I was obliged, very reluctantly to quit my post, he consented to accompany me, and we took a lodging together, where I could still attend upon him, as far as my strength would permit. Alas! four days after our

* If there be any among my readers who wish for more ample and accurate information respecting this very remarkable disease, which I at length ascertained to have its origin principally in inflammation of the liver, I refer them to a diffuse Essay upon the subject, which I published in the twenty-seventh volume of Hufeland's Medical Journal.

removal, he expired in my arms. In him the States, and our Chief, sustained an irreparable loss; and if my cares could not preserve so valuable a life, the sincere affliction I felt at losing him was no little aggravation of my own illness.

General Janssens would not now permit me to remain in the house of a stranger; he insisted upon my coming to his house. To the very great care and kindness which I experienced there, and to the skill of my friend and colleague, Von Zinkgraf, added to my own unimpaired youth, am I indebted for having at length gained the victory over my disease. I was for a week in a truly dangerous situation. Labouring under the same symptoms which had preceded the death of my never-to-be forgotten friend, I could not but look upon my own end as fast approaching. My recovery was very tedious; and perhaps the weak state to which I was reduced would have been protracted much longer, if the Commissary-General De Mist had not taken me to a country-house he inhabited in the Tyger-Mountain, where he and his children took the utmost care of me. The good air I enjoyed there had at length so happy an effect, that by February I was able to return to the camp, and resume my functions.

The destructive malady was at length subdued; but unfortunate circumstances of another kind, no less impeded our brave General in the measures he would have taken for the defence of the colony. The corn-harvest failed this year even more than the former. There was an absolute scarcity of bread; and had not the prudent precautions mentioned before been taken, the means to support the troops would absolutely have failed. The newly-established magazines, therefore, on the other side of the mountains, filled very slowly, while at the same time another object of our late journey was frustrated by a different catastrophe. The laboratory at Zwellendam, which has been mentioned as left under the care of the worthy Lieutenant Meier, blew up with a dreadful explosion, as he himself, with seven of his people, were at work there, without its ever being known how the accident happened. All who were within lost their lives, and many without were very severely hurt. The church was exceedingly injured by the shock. Meier left a widow and eight helpless orphans, the care of whom General Janssens took upon himself, without being able wholly to repair to them the loss of a father so honest and upright, and so attentive to their education.

In the same year I lost another friend, one of the dearest companions of my heart, one of our party in the late journey, while still another afterwards fell in the war in Spain. Thus, of all the companions who made that journey so pleasant to me, Captain Paravicini and the Quarter-Master Verkouteren, are the only living witnesses remaining of the truth of what I have related concerning it.

On the twenty-fifth of February, the Commissary-General De Mist, with his amiable family, took their departure from the Cape, the Commissary's mission for the organization of the colony being completed. He sailed in an American vessel, amid the hearty good wishes of several thousand persons, to promote whose welfare he had employed his most unwearied exertions for three years. He arrived happily in his own country the July following.

As the winter drew nigh, in which, on account of the strong north-west winds, the attack of the English could not safely be made, and during which the remaining encamped might have been pernicious to the health of the soldiers, General Janssens thought it right that they should return into the barracks in the Cape Town towards the end of March. Only the Hottentot battalion were left in the camp, while I continued at my post, till a new journey called me into the interior. Of this journey an account will be given in the next part of my work.

END OF PART THE FIFTH.

PART VI.

JOURNEY INTO THE COUNTRY OF THE BOSJESMANS, THE CORANS, AND THE BEETJUANS.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Division of the Colony into several new Districts.—Journey of the Landdrost Van de Graaff to the Sack River, in 1804.—*The Author engaged by General Janssens to accompany the Landdrost in a longer Journey.—His Departure.—The Tyger-Mountain.—On African Husbandry.—The Berg River, and the Acorus-Palmita.—Roodezand's-Kloof.*

About the middle of the year 1804, the government began to carry into execution the plan sketched some time before, to make a new division of the colony into more districts or drosties. The parts bordering on the Caffre country, eastward of the Krumme river and Sitzikamma, were erected into a district, in the midst of which, not far from the Zwartkopf river, a new village was to be built, under the name of Uitenhage.* This was to be the seat of a landdrost and of a civil magistrate. Captain Alberti, hitherto the commandant at Fort Frederic and Algoa Bay, had been some time before named as the new landdrost, and he was charged with the regulation of the whole institution. The district, which was composed of the southern half of Graaff Reynett, and a part of Zwellendam, bore, like the other districts, the name of the principal place.

In the same manner, the northern part of the district of Stellenbosch, which spread out to a considerable extent, and was thinly inhabited, was erected

* The governor gave this name to the place in compliment to the Commissary-General, it being his old family name.

into a separate district. The principal seat of this district was fixed at Roodezand, which in consequence became the residence of a landdrost. The name of the place was changed, and henceforward that, with the whole district, was to bear the name of the worthy Governor Tulbagh, who, during twenty years that he was at the head of the colony, had rendered it so many important services. M. Henry Van de Graaff, nephew to the former governor, Cornelius Van de Graaff, a member of the College of Tutelage at the Cape Town, was appointed the new landdrost; while M. Blettermann, the former landdrost of Stellenbosch, was named as Commissary for the first erection of the drosty, to fix the boundaries of it, to order the new buildings that would be requisite, &c. &c.

In no part was it more necessary to divide the cares of the government under a considerable number of magistrates than here. While the distant northern parts of the colony, the situation of which I have in some measure described in the first volume of this work, belonged to the drosty of Stellenbosch, and continued to increase in population, it was impossible that they should be governed with the requisite care and attention. Fresh instances of disobedience to the government were constantly breaking out among the inhabitants:—their harshness towards their dependants, and their strifes and quarrels amongst each other, were constantly increasing. It was often necessary to send commissioners into the country to settle the differences of these people concerning the boundaries of their respective domains; and from the distance which these commissioners must necessarily be sent, this was exceedingly expensive. The great object of the new institution was to restrain and correct these evils; but it was at the same time authorized to regulate the relations between the colonists on the northern boundary, and the wandering Bosjesmans of that neighbourhood, and to watch particularly over the behaviour of each party towards the other. It was the earnest wish of the government to put an end to the robberies and plunderings of these savages by mild and kind treatment, and by this means gradually to remove the ancient hatred borne them by the colonists of the Roggeveld, and the Lower Bokkeveld.

The new landdrost of Tulbagh, therefore, very soon after his entrance upon office, had orders to visit the most remote part of his district, and to enter into negociations with the Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood. In December,

1804, he succeeded in collecting a considerable number of these savages together upon the Sack river, and engaging them to adopt more peaceable views. One among them was selected, who seemed to be held in some consideration by the rest, to whom the name of Captain Goedhart *(Good-heart)* was given, and who was appointed speaker for the party. They farther attempted to make him considered among the rest as a real chief, and to induce them to yield him obedience as such. This at first seemed a wholly vain attempt, since the Bosjesmans were not at all disposed to acknowledge the authority of any one: they even manifested great jealousy and envy at the marks of distinction shewn to this captain. However, in the end, the negociators succeeded so far as to obtain promises, on the part of the Bosjesmans, that in consideration of a yearly tribute of cattle to be paid them, they would maintain a quiet and peaceable conduct, and would deliver up to punishment any one who was guilty of violence or plunder. On the other hand, they were solemnly promised that no colonist should take into his own hands the right of punishing injuries received by him; and that they should not be pursued for past offences. It was engaged that the government should take upon itself the arrangement of all differences, and send, every year, proper commissioners to hear any complaints they might have to make, and to see that justice was done them. This interview lasted a whole week, and was made the more agreeable to the savages, from their being entertained by the landdrost during the whole time that it continued, and from their being dismissed with a considerable present of live sheep. At parting, they were promised that within six months the landdrost would return, that the negociation might be regularly and solemnly concluded, when he would bring them many presents.

The governor, who felt all the importance of this matter, was anxious to bring the negociations to a conclusion as soon as possible, and establish a firm and lasting peace. The landdrost of Tulbagh was therefore appointed, in the March following, to undertake the same journey, not merely for the purpose of concluding his negociation with the Bosjesmans, but to proceed afterwards farther to the north, beyond the boundaries of the colony, where several objects had attracted the attention of the government, and appeared to require from them a more accurate investigation. Three objects in particular came under this description, viz. in the first place, to gain information

respecting the conduct and disposition of the Hottentots of the Great river, as they are called; secondly, to enquire into the relations established by the missionaries among these equivocal and dangerous people, as, according to all accounts, they must be reckoned; and, thirdly, to examine the situation of the great nation hitherto imperfectly known under the name of the Briquas, but since the English expedition which was undertaken in 1801 to trade with them in cattle, called Butschuanas. Since over the whole country, on the other side of the Sack river, no perfectly unsuspicious information ever could be obtained, and, notwithstanding the abovementioned expedition, very contradictory reports were still in circulation, the government thought it important to endeavour to obtain more certain information; since the situation and dispositions of these more distant people might, in time, have as important an influence upon the welfare of the colony as those of the more neighbouring Bosjesmans had at that moment. Now the journey to the Sack river lay exactly in the direction of that country; and since the business of the landdrost, during a protracted absence, might be performed by the Commissary Blettermann, this journey seemed to present the most convenient opportunity possible for prosecuting the desired researches. It was only necessary somewhat to extend the preparations made, and to increase the number of persons of whom the party was to consist, that the less danger might be incurred by travelling into so remote a region.

While preparations for the excursion were going forwards, Governor Janssens was pleased to invite me to be a sharer in it, desiring me to take upon myself the examination into the nature of the country on the other side of the Orange river, and the situation of the inhabitants; while the landdrost was engaged in his negociations with the Bosjesmans, and the business with the missionaries. Long as I had wished to become more acquainted with these remote countries, nothing could be more accordant with my wishes than such a proposal. Although I had had to struggle with many little relapses in my obstinate malady, and was with difficulty able to perform my duty with my battalion, I did not hesitate a single moment to accept the offer. The earnest desire I had to see all the new and extraordinary things which I had heard related of the country on the other side of the Orange river, and of the Briqua country, absorbed every idea of the state of weakness to which I was reduced, or of the probable danger of a serious

return of my illness upon the journey. I did not, however, suffer this sentiment to gain so absolute an ascendancy over me, as to make me neglect any precaution for recruiting my strength, and supporting it by the way, or to prevent my making every proper regulation, in case I should never return.

My being extremely well known to M. Van de Graaff, with whom I had long enjoyed a very pleasant collegiate connection, rendered the thoughts of this journey so much the more agreeable to me. He came himself to the Cape Town in the month of April, where we had several conferences upon the preparations requisite to be made; and our departure was fixed for the beginning of the following month. The governor left us to choose our own guides, and gave orders that we should be furnished with every thing we desired from the magazines and workshops of the government. Our necessaries consisted of nearly the same things that I have enumerated on the setting out for our first journey, with this difference, that it was essential to take a much larger stock of provisions; since we should be for a longer time at a distance from the colony, and from all possibility of procuring supplies. On the contrary, the party being much smaller, our stock, in many other articles, was so: besides, the experience I had obtained made me omit many things as altogether useless, with which we had swelled our baggage on the former occasion. Of some other articles, with which before we had been slenderly provided, or which had been totally omitted, we now made an ample provision.

When every thing was ready, and sent off to Tulbagh, it only remained for me to follow. I accordingly departed from the Cape Town on the twenty-fourth of April, without any companion, and bent my course towards the Tyger Mountain. The sun was going down as I reached its summit, when I was presented with a glorious prospect over the sea, and the widely stretched plain of the Cape. From hence, directly in front, is seen the Table Mountain in its whole extent; to the left of this runs the Devil's Mountain, and to the right the Lion's Head. At the foot of the Table Mountain stands the town, which, with its white roofs, and its green and highly cultivated environs, form a most pleasing group of objects. Southwards from the Devil's Mountain are seen the Wine Hills, or Constantia, the Stone Hills, and Muysemburg; while beyond all these, the spacious harbour of False

Bay spreads itself out. Towards the east, the high chain of mountains behind Stellenbosch and Hottentots'-Holland, rising like an enormous wall, shut out any farther view that way; while, to the west, a most charming contrast is formed by the boundless extent of the Atlantic Ocean. The setting sun gilded over an immense surface of the tranquil sea, in the midst of which Robben Island appeared to float like a large black speck. The magnificence of the scene, the recollection of friends now far distant, with whom, a few months before, I had enjoyed the view from this very same point; and the prospect of dangers and adventures before me, altogether wrought me into a vein of most pleasing sadness. I once more greeted the Cape Town, and the roofs of my friends, whom I was perhaps never to see again, and then slowly descended the other side of the Tyger Mountain.

In the next valley lay the estate of Mastricht, belonging to the Sieur J. de Voss, of the Cape Town, where General Janssens had been residing for some time, that he might have leisure to prosecute undisturbed some important works which he had in hand. I passed the evening with him, when we had a most instructive and interesting conversation by his fire-side, in which this excellent man explained to me more fully the objects he had in view in the present expedition. The works of Kolbe were spread out before us, which gave occasion to many remarks upon the comparative state of the colony at that time and in the present moment. A century had just elapsed since this traveller was on the same spot. He visited it the twelfth of June, 1705. The General gave it as his opinion, that he had not been guilty of so many falsehoods as have been imputed to him by later travellers, who found things very different from what he represented them. At that time, he observed, the Hottentots might well be a people having their own peculiar customs and manners, though they had been subsequently lost and forgotten, by the intercourse established between them and the Europeans of the colony. A hundred years hence, he added, what is said by us may appear to the generation of that day as wide of the truth as the representations of travellers of a century back now appear to us.

The next morning, after receiving from the Governor a written paper of instructions, I took my leave, and again set forwards on my journey. At noon, being arrived in the vicinity of the Pearl Mountain, I stopped to rest at a farm, the people of which were all very busily employed in the fields.

Although the seasons here are in the direct inverse of what they are in our northern zone, yet from the very great difference of the climate, the cultivation of the lands takes place at nearly the same part of the year as with us. No sooner do the abundant rains of autumn begin to fall, and soften the dried and parched soil; that is to say, as soon after as the returning strength of the cattle, weakened by the want of sufficient food during the dry months, will permit, the plough is set to work, and the fields are manured and sown. A great deal of barley, in particular, is sown at this time; this being almost the only corn used for horses throughout the colony: besides their being fed with the grain, they eat it as grass, while it is young and green. Oats do not grow well, and they are not considered so salutary for the horses as barley. The land destined for wheat is also ploughed and manured in April or May, though it is not sown till August. The harvest falls about the end of November or beginning of December, and is particularly abundant if the spring months are not too hot, and if there be plenty of rain in the month of October. This is the great time for the trees blossoming.

The course of agriculture is not, however, the same in every part of the colony: it varies according to the situation and nature of the land, so that in almost every district different ways and opinions prevail. These are commonly considered by the Europeans as very absurd, and are condemned severely. In particular, the colonists are regarded by them as extremely behind-hand in their agricultural notions, and very deficient in many articles of knowledge which are found of the utmost advantage in Europe. This, however, ought much rather to be ascribed to the very different nature of the climate in the two quarters of the world. It is impossible that the same modes of husbandry can answer in both, and the European commonly goes much farther in his censures than the reason of the thing will justify. It is very certain that there are many experiments in husbandry which might be made in southern Africa; and while the stranger may be over-hasty in condemning, the colonist undoubtedly clings, with a great deal too much obstinacy, to his ancient prejudices, and will follow only the experience of his forefathers. But also it cannot be denied, that most of the experiments in agricultural œconomy which have been made here by the best-informed European agriculturists, have not been attended with the success that was

expected: this has only served to confirm the Africans in their ancient prejudices.

Farther on, I met some families who were journeying towards the village of Paarl, to attend the consecration of a new church, which was to take place the next Sunday. M. Serrurier, the first preacher in the Reformed Church at the Cape Town, a man who had attended to his functions for fifty-one years with the highest reputation to himself, was to perform the ceremony. A deputation of the administrators of ecclesiastical affairs of the district had gone to Paarl to receive him.

I soon arrived at the eastern foot of the Pearl Mountain, the slopes of which are so much celebrated for their fertility. The road passes several very fine farms, the whole appearance of which bespeak the affluence of their owners. That of a certain M. Ménard deserves particularly to be noticed; it stands in a most inviting situation, at the end of a double row of old oaks. The owner was busy, with his slaves, in a field not far from the road-side, and came up to me in a truly friendly manner, inviting me to his house. On my declining the invitation, he insisted that I should promise to visit him on my return: but five months after, when I would have performed my promise, I found him there no longer. He had, in the interim, come to a very deplorable end. One of his slaves, a Malay, in his rage at a punishment he had received, killed him with an axe. The lad had been a very faithful servant, and had been treated by Ménard, who was in no respect a harsh master, with distinguished favour and regard. Notwithstanding this, and though, according to his own confession, he had deserved the punishment inflicted, all idea of former kindness seemed in a moment to vanish from his mind; a blind thirst of revenge took entire possession of him, and he seized the first opportunity when he found his master alone to execute his horrid purpose. He was immediately struck with deep remorse; he gave himself up of his own accord to the other slaves, confessed his crime to the magistrate, and submitted himself resigned to the scaffold.

Towards evening I arrived at the Berg river, and, to my great astonishment, found the ford of Burgersdrift quite dry, notwithstanding that only three days before a rain of thirty-six hours continuance had fallen. Some travellers whom I met informed me, that two days before the Berg river had been

impassable at Drakenstein; and here, at the distance of only three German miles and a half, not a drop of water was to be seen. This is a phenomenon which appears scarcely credible to a stranger unacquainted with the nature of the country. The cause of it is, that almost all the mountain-streams hereabouts have this peculiarity, that they are thickly overgrown with the *acorus palmita*, an aquatic plant, that strikes its roots very deep in the bed of the river, and rises with a bare stem, about three inches thick, and hollow, at the point of which is a crown of leaves, after the manner of the palm tree. These crowns rise above the ordinary height of the water, and are so thickly crowded together, that the water is totally concealed: in many places, light bridges may be thrown over, which will be supported by them. They, at the same time, shelter the river against the all-parching heat of the sun, and keep it flowing, even in the driest seasons, till the summer is very far advanced. The stem of every plant acts as a sort of reservoir for the water, whence it oozes out by degrees; so that the river in the plain will still contain water, though no rain has fallen in the mountains, even for months. At length, however, this supply being exhausted, the bed of the river dries; and, by the end of the summer, the plants are deprived of all nourishment. They have nothing to protect them but the shade of their own crowns: yet, on the first abundant rain that falls, the stems and roots form anew a sort of dam, through which the water has so much the more difficulty to penetrate, the drier they and the bed of the river are become, and the more the body and strength of the moisture that would press on, is diminished at every moment by the suction of the plant. Thus it happens, that, after a heavy rain, some days will perhaps elapse before the water has pressed through these groves so as to arrive at the plains. Persons who passed the ford of Burgersdrift only twelve hours after me, found the water already three feet and a half deep.

After passing the night in the house of a very poor, but kind-hearted family, I arrived about noon the following day at Roodezand's Kloof. The young grass was every where springing up in the low grounds, and several sorts of *oxalis*, of *hypoxis*, and *moræa*, were already in flower. These little bulbous plants are, as among us the snow-drop and crocus, the firstlings of the flowery generation; but they do not, like our firstlings, wait for the advance of spring before they appear: they flower at the very beginning of winter. While the oaks, and other European trees, which have been transported hither, shed their

leaves at the first wet and cold that comes on, and experience a rest from vegetation of two full months, the native trees of Africa remain still green and fresh. The dry season is their proper winter, and the few among them that ever shed their leaves entirely are deprived of them towards the end of the hot weather.* Spring begins with the first rains, when the nights are long. Even the birds moult their feathers at this time, and are clothed in their new wedding garments in July or August. In these months the European trees begin also again to resume their verdure, and by September they are in full leaf. In Roodezand's-Kloof, all the tall shrubs which shade the banks of the Berg river were in full blow, particularly *capraria lanceolata* and *undulata*, *phylica buxifolia*, *cluytia alaternoides*, *polygonoides*, and *tomentosa*, *halleria elliptica*, with several other small plants. Among the interstices of the rocks that enclose the kloof, shot forth *lachenalia*, *amaryllis*, and *massonia*. Some of them were already in flower, and the stems of the larger liliaceous plants had already grown to some height.

* It is the proper character of vegetation in all warm countries, that the native trees and shrubs are never wholly leafless. But for that very reason their leaves are always dry, stiff, and dark, and not unfrequently they have a dusty appearance, so that the eye is not at any time regaled with the beautiful sight of one general display of fresh green leaves. Southern Africa, particularly about the colony of the Cape, has, however, in this respect much the advantage over many warm climates. We are never deprived here of the sight of leaves upon the shrubs and bushes; but at the time of year abovementioned, the *lycias*, the *mimosas*, and several sorts of native willows, putting out fresh leaves, from the brightness of their green, bring to the mind the pleasing impression of an European spring.

CHAP. XL.

Stay at Tulbagh.—Mostertshoek.—The Warm Bokkeveld.—The Karroo.—The Paardeberge.—The Hanglip.—The Ongeluk River.—The Goudebloems River.—The Geitjes, a particular species of Lizard, held to be very noxious.—The Wind Hill.—Unwelcome Tidings received at the Foot of the Roggeveld Mountains.—Fine View from the Summit of these Mountains.

At Tulbagh I experienced a very friendly reception in the house of my friend the landdrost, Van de Graaff. During the ten days that I remained there, I occupied myself in part with the necessary preparations for our journey, in part with writing several letters to my friends in Europe. Some of my leisure hours were devoted to botanical walks, when I twice visited the waterfall. From the late abundant rains, this was now in high beauty. The rest of my time was passed in the most pleasant social intercourse with my friends at Tulbagh.

In the mean time, the whole travelling party assembled here. They consisted of three persons, besides the landdrost and myself: that is to say, M. Van der Byl, of Paarl; M. Winterbach, a relation of the landdrost, and private secretary to him; and the Messenger Mong, a native of Breslau. On the first of May, our three baggage-waggons set off. They were packed with tents, field-beds, and other camp appendages; a stock of biscuit, dried fruits, flour, and provisions of various kinds; kitchen utensils, plenty of wine, brandy and vinegar; some chests, containing articles necessary for carrying on our traffic with the savages; and, finally, my geometrical apparatus, and every thing necessary for prosecuting my researches in natural history. The waggons were to take the route by the Hex river, the passage over the Witsemberg, and even through Mostertshoek, being now dangerous for heavy loaded waggons. The overseer of the waggons had orders to proceed to the cold Bokkeveld, and there to wait for us.

We ourselves departed from Tulbagh on the seventh of May. In three hours and a half we reached the place of the Field-Cornet Müller, at the foot

of the Mostertshoek, where a number of horses for the whole party were in waiting. After partaking of a good breakfast, we mounted them, and proceeded on our way. Mostertshoek, properly so called, is the southern end of the steep wall of mountains which bear the name of Witsemberg. Here the Schurfdeberge, which also has its course from the north, joins the Witsemberg; and here, moreover, the latter is joined by the hills of the Hex river: this river, and the mountains above it, having previously taken the names of the Breede river, and the Black Mountain. Mostertshoek is only separated from the Black Mountain by a deep chasm, through which runs the Breede river. This river rises in the Bokkeveld. The whole form of this chasm shews that it must have proceeded from some very violent cause. All parts of the neighbouring hills decline in an oblique direction towards it, as if the whole mass had sunk here together. Large blocks of stone, torn from the heights, and rolled down into the gulph below, or lodged on the slope by the way, seeming to menace at every moment a farther fall, are fearful evidences of some former violent concussion. At first the pass runs in an easterly direction; but about the midst of it, near a lukewarm spring which issues from the rock, it takes a turn to the north, and terminates, after many windings, at the plain of the warm Bokkeveld. A road, made forty years ago, by a certain John Mostert, goes sometimes on one side of the river, sometimes on the other, according as the ground is most favourable for it, and consequently crosses the river several times. The fords are very inconvenient from the large and smooth stones which form the bottom of the river; horses unaccustomed to them are very liable to stumble, and fall, or remain with their feet stuck between the stones, from which it is difficult to disengage them.

With heavy rains, the kloof is sometimes rendered impassable, and that even for two or three days. Our journey, which originally had been fixed to begin on the third, was delayed on account of the waters; and even now, it was not without some difficulty and danger that we got through the pass. We were, however, in a great degree repaid for the dangers incurred, by the glorious sight which the stream afforded us, in the water tumbling and foaming over the masses of rock. Towards the end of the pass, the road quits the side of the stream, and goes above the right bank along a rocky terrace in the front of the Schurfedeberge. Here are some very steep places, which are

very fatiguing to the oxen. Ours were soon exhausted, notwithstanding that the loads were not heavy, and that an additional pair of oxen were allowed to each waggon. When the highest point is reached, the road descends for about a quarter of an hour, before it comes absolutely to the plain.

This plain is called the Warm Bokkeveld, and is one of the most fertile and finest parts of the colony. It forms nearly a parallelogram, which is enclosed every way by high hills. In length, from east to west, it is four hours, and in breadth, from north to south, three. The mountains of the Hex river form the eastern side; to the north are the heights of the Cold Bokkeveld, to the west the Schurfederge, and to the south the Black Mountain. This plain is about a hundred and fifty feet higher than that of Tulbagh, but several hundred feet lower than the lowest part of the Cold Bokkeveld. The climate is, the whole year through, tolerably temperate; and it is a common observation, that a true European air is felt here. In the most severe winters the Warm Bokkeveld is habitable, and in summer the heat is never insupportable. During my present visit, the thermometer stood, in the morning at sun-rise, at eight degrees of Reaumur, and about noon had risen to seventeen. From the climate being so temperate, several sorts of European fruit, as apples, pears, plums, and others, thrive better here than in any other part of the colony: cherries seem the chosen product of this district, and the lower parts of the Cold Bokkeveld. The pastures are excellent, and the cattle particularly fine; the sheep are also better here than in the Cold Bokkeveld.

The oaks were strikingly more green in these higher regions than below in the vallies, and the southern fruits were only now thoroughly ripe. At the house of the Civic Justice, Francis Van der Merwe, where we stayed this evening and the next day, very fine grapes were set before us; whereas at Tulbagh, and in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, the season for them had been over some time. We saw here, standing among a number of very fine orange-trees, a fig-tree, the stem of which measured more than a foot in diameter. Our host assured us, however, that there were many in the same district much thicker. One in particular he mentioned, belonging to a neighbour at no great distance, which could not measure less than three feet in diameter. Afterwards, in talking with M. Van der Riet, the landdrost of Stellenbosch, about this extraordinary tree, he said he had measured it

himself, and found it eleven Rhenish feet in circumference. The farmers here sow their barley in January, that they may have food for their horses, in case the fields should be covered with snow in the winter. Not that the barley sowed in January is ripe so soon: the horses eat it green, mixed with the ripe barley and chaff. This is considered as very strengthening and wholesome food.

The Warm Bokkeveld contains eleven farms, which are almost all, without exception, very fertile. On the best of them are tolerable plantations of oaks and poplars, which yield a competent supply of wood. The climate seems to have a very benignant influence upon the inhabitants of this district: they are, generally speaking, stronger, more active, and more peaceable in their manners than in several other parts of the colony. They would resemble the inhabitants of the Snow Mountains very much, were it not that their being so near the principal town, and the constantly increasing population, render their manners much more refined. Here again I found bigotry a very distinguishing feature of the character. One is at first pleased to discover, in all their modes of expressing themselves, a tone and manner that savours more of education than could be expected; but it soon becomes apparent that all is the effect of habit, and that nothing is to be ascribed to intentional polish. One of the neighbours endeavoured to make himself of more importance in our eyes, by repeating, before every meal, with great pathos, and in the true church tone, a long speech which he had learned by heart. It might easily be recognised as a fragment out of some old sermon.

We were shewn here, as a remarkable thing, a tame quagga: he was feeding in the meadows with the horses, and suffered himself readily to be stroked and caressed by the people about. His spirit of freedom was, however, not yet so far subdued as that he would suffer himself to be rode. He was only kept by his owner for the purpose of making experiments in improving his breed of horses.

On the morning of the tenth of May we left this place, and went directly through the Warm Bokkeveld to the north-east corner, where springs the little river Bussinka. Here this district, which had, till then, been quite level, begins to be more hilly: vast masses of rock rise one above another in an amphitheatral form, the upper ranges of which, being not so deep as the lower ones, consequently the level terraces being much oftener repeated,

the true representation is given of what the Africans call ring-mountains. Many of these mountains, the flats of which are formed by a direct angle, when viewed from below, have the perfect appearance of artificial works of fortification, and remind the German traveller strongly of the fortresses of Königstein and Ehrenbreitstein. The mountains, of which these hills are the base, form an inaccessible wall between the Warm Bokkeveld and the Hex river valley. It is impossible to go from the one to the other, without making a very great circuit by the Cold Bokkeveld.

Among these hills runs the road, leading to the heights which form the Cold Bokkeveld. This road lies in a north-easterly direction, and is, in some places, very steep. The first place here, is six hundred feet higher than the plain of the Warm Bokkeveld. It is called Lakenvalley, and belongs to a certain Peter Van der Merwe, who, by way of distinction from his numerous relations, is generally known by the name of Peter Lakenvalley, and, under this name, acknowledged to be one of the most worthy and estimable among the colonists. We were here, as persons under the employ of the government, not only entertained in the most sumptuous manner, but our visit was rendered very pleasant by the jovial good-humour of our host. He related to us a great many stories of his contentions for several years both within and without the colony; and furnished us, by this means, with various hints which proved in the sequel of great utility to us. Although this man was now sixty-six years of age, he was uncommonly healthy and active, and attended himself to all the most trifling details of his very extensive establishment. He was father to a very large family of children. His eldest son was the same Roelof whom we visited upon the Hex river, a man more than forty years of age, and already a grandfather. The youngest son of our host was a fine boy of only eight years old. We celebrated here the eve of a wedding. Lakenvalley's youngest daughter, a girl of seventeen, was to set off the next morning, accompanied by her bridegroom, and a large company of brothers, sisters, and other relations, for Tulbagh, at the same hour that we were to proceed northwards, to complete the marriage contract, according to all the proper forms, before the commissary of the place. Formerly this ceremony could only be performed in the Cape Town. From every part of the colony, hither they must come. Thus, as Mr. Barrow justly remarks, many a long and tedious journey was undertaken to do an act which had so many things

adverse to it. In consequence of the new organization of the colony, the contract could now be made at the principal place of the district, before the landdrost and the civil magistrate. This approaching marriage, and our journey together, had drawn a large concourse of the neighbours to the house, who all considered our journey to the Briquas as a very dangerous undertaking. Their parting wish was, universally, that they might see us return again alive.

After a journey of a few hours, the next morning we reached the place of the Field-Cornet Bruel, of Uitkomst, the delightful situation of which has been described in the first part of my first volume.* We found here the waggons, which we had sent on before. They had been waiting for us two days. We set forwards in company with them immediately. From thence to the *Karroopforte*, the gate to the Karroo, is a little hour. This is a narrow pass between two high rocks, which is also mentioned in the first part of my work.† In quitting this defile, a considerable part of the monstrous Karroo plain is spread out before us. Three insulated hills immediately catch the eye: the Towerberg *(Enchanted Mountain)* in the east towards the south,—the Paardeberg in the east-north-east-half-east,—and the Zoutpanskopjes *(Salt-Pans' Cups)* in the north-north-east. The latter is the smallest of the three, and is particularly distinguishable, from its summit being divided into two inverted cups. From this circumstance, and from a small salt lake in its vicinity, the name is derived. When the inhabitants of the Roggevelds and the Bokkevelds are at their *Legplatze* in the Karroo, for the winter, they are supplied with salt from this lake. The farther end of the Karroo plain to the north, at the distance of about ten hours from hence, is bounded by another hill, which is considerably lower than the summits of the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld mountains. The plain of the Karroo itself is lower than the valleys of the Cold Bokkeveld. The latter plain is calculated to be, upon an average, as high above the sea as the level of the Table Mountain.

We had hoped, that, in consequence of the abundant rain which had fallen, we should find the Karroo tolerably green; but, to our sorrow, we were disappointed in this hope. The rains had not yet extended so far, and

---

* See p. 127 of the English Translation.

† See also p. 127 of the English Translation, where the pass is called the Bokkeveldspoort.

the ground was almost as much parched as when I travelled the same way in the hot season of the year. Only the succulent plants, as the *channas*, the *mesembryanthemums*, the *euphorbia*, and some others, were beginning just to put forth their little buds of green. Indeed, this gave us no very pleasing earnest of what we might expect farther northwards. It filled us with considerable apprehensions, both as to the possibility of not finding a supply of water and of food for our horses and oxen.

After travelling five hours over a very good and level road along the Karroo, we reached the foot of the Paardeberge abovementioned, near which is a small spring, and an Ausspannplatze, which bears the name of Pretoriskraal. Here we pitched our tents, and stopped for the night. I found a very beautiful plant scattered about, the only one in blow in the whole field. It belonged to the lily family, of which there is such great variety in this country; but was so different in its structure from any I had yet seen, that it led me to suspect it to be wholly new, and that it had been overlooked by all botanical travellers before me, on account of the unfavourable season at which it blows. Later researches have confirmed this supposition. At our return I found both fruit and seeds upon this plant.*

Before the moon was gone down, we set off again; and the rising sun, the next day, found us at some distance from the place where we had passed the night. About nine o'clock we reached the first height, at which commences the northern hilly part of the Karroo. This height becomes, after some time, perpendicular, and, towards the summit, even projects forwards; so that the name of the *Hanglip* has been given to it. The same name is borne by a much more considerable rock, of a similar figure, at the south-eastern end of False Bay. The hill runs on from hence to the Ongeluk river, into which, in heavy rains, all the waters from its southern chasms flow. One of the principal branches of this river, which comes almost from the top of the hill, is called the Juk river. For the greatest part of the year all

* Count Von Hoffmansegg, and Professor Wildenow, of Berlin, who undertook the examination of my collection of plants, recognised in this a new species; and the latter gave a description and engraving of it in the *Berlin Society's Friend to the Enquirer into Nature for the Year* 1807, under the name of *Lichtensteinia undulata*. The generic character is *hexandria tryginia*. I found another sort of this species afterwards at the Orange river. To that was given the name of *Lichtensteinia lævigata*.

these channels are dry. In winter alone here and there a very sparing spring trickles from among the stones, and wherever such an one is to be found, a winter habitation is established near it. Some of these places were already inhabited by their owners. They complained to us with tears, of the unusual drought of this year, of the murrain among the horses, and of the new inroads made by the Bosjesmans, which rendered it impossible for them to remain at their usual dwelling-places on the borders, and compelled them to come down so early to the Karroo, while yet there was scarcely any food for their cattle, and still less a tolerable supply of water. They were almost afraid, they said, that, under such circumstances, they should lose the greatest part of their stock.

We soon arrived upon the height, when we found ourselves separated from another hill by a valley about an hour in breadth, through which winds a periodical stream, of the same nature as that above-described, the Goudebloems river—*(Golden-flower.)* It has this name from the abundance of *gorteria,* gold-flowers, which grow upon its banks, and gild them over in the rainy season. In order to find water for our horses, which were now somewhat wearied with travelling for nine hours, we went out of the road, to the banks of the river; and, after a short half hour, arrived at an uninhabited house near a tolerably copious spring. The house was open, and in one place were some old kitchen utensils, of which we immediately took possession, and applied them to our use. Some barrels and chests served us as chairs and tables; a sieve of parchment, with holes bored through it, was fixed into an opening, and made to supply the place of a window. Other inconveniences being got rid of by similar devices, the offspring of necessity, we found ourselves at length so well accommodated in this lonely place, that we resolved to remain there that night and the next day, especially as we here found, what we so much wanted, good provender for our horses. We also cleaned out the spring, which was very much fouled both by plants and animals; and, by this means, obtained at length a sufficient supply of very drinkable water.

In the hot season of the year, the usual road between the Roggeveld and the inhabited parts of the colony is almost closed up, from the great scarcity of water. A considerable circuit must then be made through the Little Roggeveld, and over the Komberg. We were, on this account, instructed

by the Governor to seek out some place in the Karroo, where water might be had at any part of the year, for the establishment of an inn as a place of rest half way for travellers, at all times and seasons, in crossing this inhospitable waste, and a storehouse for furnishing them with supplies of food. As we learnt that the united springs here were never dried up the whole year through ; and that, if they were properly attended to, and kept regularly cleaned out, the supply of water would be much more abundant, we did not hesitate to recommend this spot as suited to the object in view. The idea was about to be carried into execution, a plan was sketched for erecting buildings adapted to the purpose, and the intention was, that some invalid soldier, or subaltern officer, should be placed at the head of the institution, when the invasion of the English, and the conquest of the colony by them, put an end to the plan ; one which would have been of very great advantage to the inhabitants of these northern boundaries. The want of such a place, where travellers through the Karroo can stop to rest, is so great, that the English government can scarcely entirely lose sight of it. The soil seems constantly more fertile, the more we descend ; and the spacious *kraals* for the cattle, now empty, shewed plainly what large herds the inhabitants were accustomed to bring thither in the winter.

On going to our rest, we were warned by our guides to be upon our guard against the poisonous lizards, which, at this time of the year, abound in old walls and forsaken houses. They are known by the name of *geitjes*, and are the terror of the people all around. I was very desirous of obtaining an accurate acquaintance with these ill-famed animals, and offered a trifling recompence to any person who would furnish me with a subject for so doing. My wishes were, however, wholly disappointed. I never could succeed in procuring one. I learnt afterwards, that it is very doubtful whether the creature is as venomous as he is represented ; and whether the mortal wounds, of which examples were cited to me, were really given by the *geitjes*. The colonists are exceedingly credulous as to every thing that concerns the healing or noxious nature of the animals around them, clinging to curious prejudices with regard to them, many of which are founded only in the agreeable or disagreeable exterior of the animal. They hold that there is no creature more noxious than the *sphinx atropos*, or *death's-head-moth ;* though, in examining it, it is impossible to find, even supposing it to be

poisonous in its nature, that it is provided with any means of inflicting a wound. In the same manner all serpents and lizards are considered by them as venomous, although there are many sorts of both perfectly innoxious. The *geitje* is, however, too often represented as the most dangerous of the lizard tribe, not to presume that there must be some truth in the idea. It must, notwithstanding, be observed, that I never could find any well-authenticated instance of their being thus noxious; that the animal is far from common; and that the descriptions given of it are very contradictory. These contradictions appear to me a sufficient proof, that if it be ever poisonous, it is only under particular circumstances, and that the wounds given by it are never mortal.

The next day we had another hill to ascend, which lies also in the Karroo, and bears the name of the *Windheuvel*, or Wind Hill. It has a very flat and wide-spread summit, on which was an empty winter habitation, without any trace of water near it. While we were yet at some distance, we saw a thick smoke ascending from it; and, as we approached, we perceived that the dung of the cattle, in all the kraals about the house, was burning. Probably some travellers had thoughtlessly made a fire in one of them, and neglected to extinguish it at quitting the place. This dung, which is often two feet in thickness when trodden down and dry, burns like turf for months, nay, for a year together; and it is very difficult, nay, almost impossible, to extinguish it. Even after a heavy rain, a kraal, which has thus been set on fire, will only smoke the more violently; and, with every change of wind, the fire revives again more briskly than before. The damage done to the owner by such a conflagration is very considerable, since nothing remains but to make new kraals; and this cannot be effected without much trouble and great expence, from the difficulty of getting stakes and faggot-wood for enclosing them, and the distance that they must be transported when procured.

On the other side of the Windheuvel, the number of winter habitations was constantly increasing. We rested in one of them at noon, and farther on pursued our course along the dry bed of the Tanqua, the first stream of any note that we had come to in these parts. In the rainy season it receives its waters from the nearest hills, pursuing its course from the Little Roggeveld quite to the Thorn river. Its breadth is considerable in many places. It is regarded as the most dangerous river of the district; and, in its overflowings, not un-

frequently destroys the gardens, and greatly damages the houses of the inhabitants. It has, notwithstanding, never hitherto been noticed in any map of the colony.

In a winter habitation, at the foot of the Roggeveld mountains, where we arrived in the evening, we found a number of the most considerable inhabitants of the Roggeveld assembled. Instead of learning that the relays of oxen which had been ordered were here in waiting for us, we were received with excuses, lamentations, and disastrous intelligence. The Bosjesmans had recently been very active in their marauding parties. More than two hundred head of cattle, and a much larger number of sheep, had been driven away by them; several of the herdsmen and shepherds had been murdered, and the inhabitants of the borders had fled into the still parched Karroo, that their lives might be in the greater security. From Tulbagh we had dispatched one of our most trusty Hottentots on foot to the Roggeveld, to bespeak relays for us, and to announce our intended journey to the Sack river, that the Bosjesmans might repair thither to the proposed conference. Some paper-money, and some letters which he had carried with him, were now brought to us, having been taken from his corpse. He had been found by a farmer who was travelling that way two days before, lying on the ground covered with arrows, in a place where a narrow path winds among the chain of hills, where consequently he could, with more security, be assailed by the wretches with their poisoned weapons. They had carried away his musket and powder-horn, but had only cut the buttons from his clothes.

This disastrous circumstance could not but awaken many reflections in our minds. The information of our proposed journey not having, by this means, arrived at the Sack river at the time intended, the whole business must necessarily be delayed: while the timidity of the colonists, and the more than usual boldness shewn on this occasion by the Bosjesmans, might throw still greater hindrances in our way. All these reflections were at first absorbed in our deep regrets at the loss of our honest servant, who was devoted to us with his whole soul, and who besides left a wife and children. Proper methods of obviating all these difficulties must, however, be thought of. But we had not yet heard all. Some endeavoured to persuade us, that, under such circumstances, it was impossible to think of prosecuting our

journey. No one could be so foolish, they said, as to be our guide, or to suffer their sons to serve as our escort: a strong detachment must be sent against the Bosjesmans, who would be able to drive them away by main force. The landdrost, however, explicitly declared that he should abide by the commands he had received: he should only add to the party six or eight of the most able-bodied young men that were to be procured, whom he should seek for immediately, and fifteen Hottentots. With this small number, he said, he would repair to the Sack river, and even much farther; not to subdue the Bosjesmans by force, but to endeavour, by mildness, to bring them to reason. Yet here new difficulties arose. The murrain had raged among the horses very much for the last month, so that their numbers were greatly diminished; while those that remained were weak and poor in flesh, from the drought of the summer; consequently by no means in a situation to undertake so long a journey. Nowhere would pasture for them be found; and, beyond the Sack river, not a drop of water was to be expected. We were resolute, however, to investigate the extent of these difficulties ourselves; and in the night sent forwards to the nearest farm, with orders that relays of oxen for our waggons should be dispatched to us the next morning.

With these we set off immediately, and arrived in a few hours, after experiencing all the usual toils and troubles, at the top of the mountains. A very extensive prospect is here presented to the eye of the traveller. At his feet lies the monstrous Karroo, the hills in which now seemed nothing more than spots in the vast plain. They might easily be overlooked, from their extreme disproportion with the point from which they were viewed, and with the mountains of the Hex river towering in the south. At the farthest verge of the horizon, glistened like a cloud just discernible in the clear winter air, the summit of the Black Mountain above Zwellendam. After contemplating this noble scene awhile, we proceeded onwards, and soon arrived on a perfectly level space, not far from the spot where, a year and a half before, I had encountered the largest flock of ostriches that I ever saw together. At some distance to the north, very high hills were again to be discerned, and the little stream which we crossed seemed to run towards them: a proof that the ground was on the descent, though so gradually as to be scarcely perceptible.

CHAP. XLI.

The Jackal's Fountain.—Disagreements among the Colonists.—Trial of the Field-Cornet Olivier.—His Honourable Acquittal, and Reinstatement in his Office.—Visit from a party of Caffres.—The Rosin Tree.—Farther Depredations of the Bosjesmans.—The Bonteberg.—The Riet River.—Extraordinary Manner in which a Lion was killed by the Colonist Van Wyk.—Seldery Fountain.—Channa kraal.—Great Draught of Fish.—Quagga Fountain.—Sack River's Gate.—Kicherer's Missionary Institution.—The Missionary Christian Botma.

The first farm that we reached is called Jackal's Fountain. Here we pitched our tents for some days, to prepare every thing for the prosecution of our journey. In the first place, we sent the Governor information of the situation of things, requesting that his farther commands might be forwarded to us at the Sack river. The young men who were required to accompany us on our journey were then sent for. They appeared with their fathers, intreating that they might be released from the service. However plausible were the excuses they made, it was so impossible for us to forego their assistance, that we could not give them any attention. The Governor's orders were positive that the journey should be performed; it was our business to find the means of performing it, nor could the colonists be permitted to shake off the burden. The only thing to be done was, to take all possible care, that it should not press particularly upon any one individual more than another. From one, therefore, his son was required; from another, a couple of Hottentots; from another, a team of oxen; another contributed his best hunting-horse; and others furnished different stores for our bodily consumption. Messengers well-armed were sent anew to the Sack river, to announce our being on the way thither; and there to assemble the inhabitants of the border.

Our ears were here assailed anew with complaints from the colonists of the losses they had sustained from the Bosjesmans, from the murrain among the horses, and from the extreme drought of the last four months. There

was no end of these murmurings and lamentations: we could not get on with our business. Messengers came from the Nieuweveld, to say, that on that side also formidable inroads had recently been made by the Bosjesmans. Fifteen hundred sheep, and a hundred cattle, had, within the space of three weeks, been driven away by them. They also begged assistance, and that a strong body of soldiers might accompany us. The latter was refused, but the landdrost gave them hopes that by his presence the Bosjesmans might be won over to more peaceable behaviour. It would indeed have been unpardonable cowardice, if we had yielded to the representations of these people, and turned back. At no time was the presence of a magistrate on the spot more urgent, to suppress the licentious conduct of these savages, and to restrain the colonists from seeking to revenge themselves. The latter were at length forced to acknowledge, that a large escort would be of no use, on account of the want of horses and ammunition; and that their own interests demanded that they should give every possible assistance in promoting the prosecution of our meritorious undertaking.

We could not, however, proceed on our way, without first reconciling some lamentable misunderstandings, by which these men rendered their unfortunate situation still more calamitous, in associating to furious inroads from without, strifes and dissentions within. This was one of the most important objects of our undertaking, and was too pressing to be delayed till our return. Most of the colonists here had entirely thrown off all obedience to the Field-Cornet of the district, legally appointed by the government: they made heavy complaints of him, and demanded his removal. It had long before appeared to me, that the under-magistrates, chosen from among the colonists, had very little respect shewn them by the rest; and that they must either, contrary to the intentions of the government, forego the rights with which they were invested; or, if they performed their duties strictly, must incur the universal hatred and ill-will of their fellow-citizens.

In this last predicament stood the Field-Cornet in question, Gerrit Marits, who, from his age, his intelligence, and his punctuality in the discharge of his duty, well deserved the office he held. But he was poor; and it was an offence not to be pardoned by his richer neighbours, that one less wealthy than themselves should be set above them. Besides this, he neglected to court the favour of the missionaries and the pious women; and

he was therefore persecuted by them with the bitterest hatred. Chance so ordered, that he, one Sunday afternoon, charged by the government with the commission, summoned several of the colonists to attend a juridical examination, at the very moment when they were assembled at their social devotions, where a person, by name Heenop, presided as reader or preacher. This man was one of the Field-Cornet's most determined adversaries; and, although he waited till the devotions were concluded before he opened his commission, the pious divine immediately began a new sermon against sabbath-breaking, and exhorted the persons summoned to resist the ill-timed requisition. The whole assembly, on this, unanimously declared that they would receive no farther commands from the Field-Cornet, and compelled him, in a tumultuary manner, to quit the house. A letter which he wrote to the landdrost upon the subject was intercepted, broke open, and circulated among the inhabitants; with an agreement affixed to it for their signature, by which they all bound themselves no longer to be *tormented to death* by the hard services which he required of them. These services, however, consisted only in occasionally furnishing a horse or a yoke of oxen for expediting a messenger on the public business.

Accustomed as these people were to an unbridled freedom, it did not probably occur to them, that this agreement was a completely revolutionary measure: for it was remitted, without the least hesitation, to the landdrost, with a long catalogue of grievances against the Field-Cornet. So determined indeed were they to abide by the resolution entered into no longer to yield obedience to his commands, that we discovered afterwards, this, and this alone, was the true cause of our not finding the relays of oxen which had been ordered for us against our arrival. No sooner did we arrive at the Jackal's Fountain, than a shower of *Verklaaringen*, as they are called, was poured in upon us; in which it was asserted, that Marits was an unjust magistrate, an unrighteous Christian, one who disowned the laws of God, and an unfaithful subject of the government:—moreover, that ten years before, at the time of the disturbances in Graaff Reynett, he had worn the tricoloured cockade. The colonist Heenop, who lived only upon going from house to house, teaching people how to pray, happened to be at present on this spot, and brought in his complaint with the rest. Marits was cited before the landdrost, and appeared, notwithstanding the infirmities of his

age, and that he was but just recovered from a severe illness. A formal trial was instituted, at which the landdrost presided. The cause was opened by M. Winterbach; and M. Van der Byl, with myself, were the counsel. Our tent was laid open on both sides, and a great number of the peasants were collected round it, that they might hear all that passed. The whole was carried on with great regularity, and no bitter expressions against the accused were permitted to break out.

The Field-Cornet defended himself with great steadiness and composure. A principal article of accusation against him was, that he had embezzled the property of the government; having retained, for his own use, one of the waggons belonging to Mr. Trüter, in his journey to the Briquas. Against this charge he justified himself, by producing a letter from Mr. Barrow, under his own hand, in which he makes him a present of this waggon, with some other things, as an acknowledgment of the services he had rendered the party. In like manner he shewed very clearly, that most of the complaints urged against him were either absolute forgeries, or facts wholly perverted in the representation made of them. On one point alone he could not entirely justify himself, that he sometimes delegated his command to one or other of his friends. After three different sittings, in which our patience was very much exercised by the absurd assertions which fell from the bigotted and lawless peasants, on a summing up of the charges and the defence, the case was very easily decided: that Marits should return to his office, with renewed power; that all his orders should, in future, be punctually obeyed; and that all which had passed hitherto should be forgiven and forgotten. It was not without a great deal of trouble, that most of the people could be made to comprehend, that obedience to those in authority, and reconciliation with those with whom we had been at variance, were as essential parts of Christianity, as praying, and singing hymns. Some of the more reasonable, however, now convinced that too much had been said against the accused, solicited a reconciliation joyfully, and in good earnest: the rest followed their example, some from prudence, some from necessity. On the following day we gave a dinner to the principal people in our tent; on which occasion the pious Heenop did not fail to make a long prayer at sitting down to table, returning thanks solemnly that peace was restored among the company.

While we were celebrating this festival of reconciliation, a troop of Caffres suddenly made their appearance before us. Exceedingly amazed to see a party of these people at such a distance from the eastern border of the colony, we hastened up to them, and learnt that they belonged to an emigrant horde, who had now for several years, lived at the sources of the Chamka. Their chief had taken the name of Hendrik, and was in the habit of sending some of his people hither almost every year to beg live cattle, and any other kind of food they could procure. As they behaved with great decorum, and seemed very peaceably disposed,—as they had, moreover, brought with them some trifles, such as their baskets, and carved gourd-shells, &c. &c. to traffic with, they were received with complaceney, and some supernumerary sheep were given to them. As they were now come earlier than in former years, they gave as a reason for such a premature visit, that they also had suffered from the Bosjesmans; and, from having been plundered by them, were reduced to very great want. Some were quite in a rage when they talked of the Bosjesmans, and wanted to have the whole nation extirpated with fire and sword. The party consisted of three men and eight women, with a number of children, who were tied fast upon the oxen. Though they had now been for a long time separated from their countrymen, they had not lost that very distinctive characteristic of the Caffres,—their importunate solicitation for whatever they saw. They begged, if not obstinately, yet unceasingly, for some contributions to their already tolerably large flocks of sheep, as well as for several utensils of different kinds, which they saw in our waggons, or in the house of the colonist.

Some of the people complained grievously to the landdrost of these importunate visits of the Caffres, whom they did not dare to drive away by force, lest they should raise themselves up a new enemy. On this our worthy magistrate desired that the three men might be called, when he ordered them to tell their chief, that the government were exceedingly displeased with the frequent visits made by them to the Roggeveld; that they were particularly angry at their coming this year, when the Christians themselves, being very much in want, it was not to be expected that they could have any thing to give the Caffres. If they (the Caffres) were not in a situation to maintain themselves, in the place they then inhabited, by means of their cattle, and other objects of industry, they had better hire themselves to the colonists as

servants. Idle people, he said, were not to be endured in the colony, much less swarms of them roving about together; and he therefore gave them warning, either to quit the country directly, and return among their own people, or to expect that they would be compelled to support themselves by their industry; and that they would be made useful to the state at the expense of their liberty.

At length, on the seventeenth of May, every thing was ready for proceeding on our journey, and the very same evening, when the moon rose, our waggons were sent forwards. During the four days that we remained here, a very cold north-west wind had blown over the plain, which, towards noon, rose so high, that we had some difficulty to keep our tents standing. In the morning and evening it was tolerably still; but the air was so cold, that the thermometer sunk to sixty degrees by Reaumur; while about noon, when the atmosphere was clear, and the sun shone bright, it stood, even in the shade, at seventeen or eighteen. The nights being long, and the air of such a temperature, the growth of the plants was visible every day, notwithstanding the continued want of rain. In the neighbourhood of the Jackal's Fountain were growing among the rocks several sorts of *oxalis*, and of the smallest species of *ixia*; that is to say, the *ixia rosea, bulbocodium*, and *tortuosa*. Besides these, I found hereabouts *ornithogalum parviflora*, several *melanthia*, and many plants of the *syngenesia* tribe; as *aster*, *relhamia*, *cotula*, *mussinia*, *gorteria*, *berkheya*, *arctotis*, and *othonna*. Near the spring the *anamania laserpitiifolia* was in blow, and higher up, the slopes were almost all ornamented with a shrub, which grows from two feet to three feet and a half high, called by the colonists *harpuisbosjes*, the rosin tree, and held in great esteem by them. At the time when it is in blossom, which it was now, a considerable quantity of a sort of rosin, or bitumen, exudes from it; which, hardened into a sort of beads, covers the young boughs almost entirely. This exudation the colonists consider as a true balsam for the cure of wounds, and as such it is eagerly collected by them. It is very glutinous, quite transparent, and has a strong smell. When quite dry, it is covered over with a white powder; and it dissolves entirely in spirit of wine. A salve is prepared from it, which is almost the only specific for wounds ever made use of by the colonists. Although the Roggeveld was frequently visited by Thunberg, he probably never saw this plant in blow, since it is not mentioned in any of

his botanical writings. Professor Wildenow pronounced it a *cineraria*, and called the two sorts which grow together here promiscuously, *cineraria resinifera*, and *polygaloides*. Both have the same properties, only the latter is smaller than the former.

At the very next farm we visited, as we proceeded onwards, we were greeted with fresh complaints against the Bosjesmans. The wife only was at home: the husband had rode out with his Hottentots, in hopes of recovering some cattle stolen the preceding night by the savages. During our momentary stay, several waggons, with the colonists, and their effects, passed by. They had fled their usual habitations, and urgently exhorted every body not to remain any longer in the Roggeveld. The Kuilenburgs river was our place of rest at noon. From hence, the ground began to decline towards the north; and passing through the Little Riet river's gate, we arrived before night at the place of a colonist by name Van Wyk. As the following part of the way was one of the most dangerous, as it was extremely dark, and as a heavy rain fell, we resolved to pitch our tents here for the night, contrary to our original intention. Here again the people were in the same story: nothing was to be heard but complaints of the Bosjesmans. A few days before, they had plundered our host of almost his whole stock, and driven away the people who were attending upon them, with the loss of their muskets. Van Wyk, however, followed them so closely, that he recovered his cattle, without being obliged to fire a shot. The savages fled when they saw him, but not till after they had hamstrung three of the oxen. Van Wyk had quitted his proper habitation, and come hither, where he was more out of the way of these marauders, till there should be water at his winter house in the Karroo. We visited his family in a wretched kind of hut, which was built upon the ruins of a larger house. On account of the cold, the wife and children had got round a charcoal fire. The latter cried and trembled whenever the Bosjesmans were mentioned.

When we arose in the morning, and went out of our tents, we found the whole surface of the ground white with hoar-frost; a thick fog was spread over the plain, and the water in our saucepans was frozen as thick as the little finger. To most of our company this was a perfectly new sight; and the astonishment of our slaves, who had never seen any thing like it, either at Mozambique or in the Cape Town, afforded us infinite entertainment. It

was utterly incomprehensible to them how they could take water in their hands as a solid mass. They made a hundred experiments with it, holding it up against the light, sticking it in the fire, endeavouring to bite and to chew it: they were just like a group of children.

About ten o'clock the sun broke out, the fog dispersed, and a beautiful clear winter air succeeded. While the plain glistened with the dew, the hills still remained white for a time; till, by degrees, the sun cleared them also, and the melancholy dark hue of the masses of rock came forth. Our attention was particularly called to the highest of the mountains about us, the Bonteberg, which lay nearly a mile to the east, and which we were informed was one of the great lurking places of the Bosjesmans. There is only one way, and that a very difficult one, of getting to the flat summit, where there is a spring. Of this circumstance the Bosjesmans avail themselves, and drive the stolen cattle up there, whence nobody is in a situation to drive them down again. If they find themselves pursued, they skulk among the clefts in the rocks; and the colour of their bodies resembles that of the rocks so much, that they are in no danger of being discovered. They can, therefore, unperceived, assail their pursuers with a shower of arrows, without their having the least idea that a single enemy is at hand. The ascent to the mountain is so steep, that it is difficult to conceive how they succeed in driving the oxen up. It can only be done by pricking and goading them with their hassagais. On feeling them, the poor tortured animals are glad to put forth all their strength.

Not far from hence, the river breaks itself a way through the mountains, forming a pass of about three quarters of an hour in length. This is called the Riet river's Gate. The road lies along the banks of the river, the high reeds preventing the bed of the river itself, which does not very often contain water, from being used as a road. On the other side of the pass, where again is a large plain, in the deeper parts of the river's bed, was some water; but it was strongly impregnated with salt, and about the banks the ground was covered with a thick rind of natron. At no time of the year are these *kuilen*, as they are called, wholly destitute of water; but the quantity increases in winter, even without rain, and the water loses its salt flavour very much.

Near one of these pits was the proper habitation of Van Wyk. On account of the weakness of our horses, he had lent us some of his oxen to

assist in conveying us on to the next place where we were to stop. While our oxen were grazing awhile, and we sought the shade within the door of his house, he related to us the following history. "It is now," he said, "more than two years since, in the very place where we stand, I ventured to take one of the most daring shots that ever was hazarded. My wife was sitting within the house, near the door; the children were playing about her, and I was without, near the house, busied in doing something to a waggon; when, suddenly, though it was mid-day, an enormous lion appeared, came up, and laid himself quietly down in the shade, upon the very threshold of the door. My wife, either frozen with fear, or aware of the danger attending any attempt to fly, remained motionless in her place, while the children took refuge in her lap. The cry they uttered attracted my attention, and I hastened towards the door; but my astonishment may well be conceived when I found the entrance to it barred in such a way. Although the animal had not seen me, unarmed as I was, escape seemed impossible; yet I glided gently, scarcely knowing what I meant to do, to the side of the house, up to the window of my chamber, where I knew my loaded gun was standing. By a most happy chance, I had set it into the corner close by the window, so that I could reach it with my hand; for, as you may perceive, the opening is too small to admit of my having got in; and, still more fortunately, the door of the room was open, so that I could see the whole danger of the scene. The lion was beginning to move, perhaps with the intention of making a spring. There was no longer any time to think: I called softly to the mother not to be alarmed, and, invoking the name of the Lord, fired my piece. The ball passed directly over the hair of my boy's head, and lodged in the forehead of the lion, immediately above his eyes, which shot forth, as it were, sparks of fire, and stretched him on the ground, so that he never stirred more."— Indeed, we all shuddered as we listened to this relation. Never, as he himself observed, was a more daring attempt hazarded. Had he failed in his aim, mother and children were all inevitably lost. If the boy had moved, he had been struck; the least turn in the lion, and the shot had not been mortal to him. To have taken an aim at him from without was impossible, for the shadow of any one advancing in the bright sun would have betrayed him: while, to consummate the whole, the head of the creature was, in some sort, protected by the door-post.

Another circumstance, of a very different kind, rendered this spot doubly remarkable to me, that very near the house, in a large block of stone, I found a very fine *prehnite*, which perhaps had only come there by chance, since the people of the country seemed wholly unacquainted with this sort of stone. Late in the evening of this day we reached the Seldery Fountain, where we found a waggon sent by the Field-Cornet Olivier, with a view to its being dispatched to the Cape Town, for a supply of powder and ball to fit out a company of soldiers as a defence against the Bosjesmans. The Field-Cornet, not expecting to see the landdrost in these parts, had addressed a letter to him, in which he made known his ideas and wishes; urging many new robberies and murders committed by the savages as reasons for what he requested. After some conversation upon the subject, the landdrost agreed that the waggon, with the people appointed to accompany it, should proceed on the proposed journey, giving them a letter to the Governor, with all the necessary explanations upon the subject.

The next day brought us through a terribly dull and uniform country to the Channakraal. We pursued our way, amid very earnest consultations upon the proper measures to be pursued in the not extremely pleasant predicament wherein we stood; and we arrived at our place of rest by no means in the most exhilarating mood possible. The situation of the place, at the foot of a naked hill, separated from the plain only by the dry bed of the Little Riet river, which was now yellow with the decaying reeds, had nothing in it to enliven us and chase away this gloom. A small uninhabited hut was closed against us by rows of slate stones laid against the door one above the other. According to the custom of the country, this wall, which was only intended as a blockade against the wild beasts and the Bosjesmans, was demolished by us, and we took possession of the mansion, which we found just spacious enough to hold four chairs and a table. There would be ample reason to wonder why, in this country, where, in almost every part, there is plenty of stone at hand, sufficient to build immense palaces, with reeds in the greatest abundance to thatch them—there would be, I say, reason to wonder, this being the case, why the people build such very confined habitations, were it not for the extreme difficulty there is in procuring the wood necessary for making spars to support the roof. Since we quitted the Bokkeveld, we had not seen a single tree; and even the Karroo now appeared

to us a cheerful country, since there at least mimosas were growing along the banks of the streams. A *lycium* of two feet high, or a bush of *euphorbium* of a yellow green, was a remarkable thing here, so few plants *two feet high*, or *green*, were to be seen.

Amid these and the like gloomy observations, we wandered a little way along the banks of the Riet river, where we were told that we should find in several places deep pools, with water standing in them. Such places we found in fact, but the water was salt and muddy, and the banks were covered with a thick crust of natron. We observed notwithstanding that they swarmed with fish, and casting our nets, we dragged them entirely along one of the pools, when we perceived they were so full, that we could not draw them on shore. Some Hottentots were therefore sent into the water to support the nets, and take out the fish. There were three different sorts of *cyprinus*, the largest of which was about two feet long, and resembled a very deep yellow carp, only that it had no whiskers. The second answered to Linnæus's description of the *cyprinus gonorynchos;* the third varied from the other two in the number of the fins, and in having a long nose like a snout. The number of fish taken amounted to nearly fifteen hundred, most of which weighed above a pound. We only kept the largest, on some of which we made an excellent supper, and carried away with us two casks of them salted. As the rivers in the colony are generally very poor in fish, and as carp in particular I supposed were nowhere to be found, this abundant draught of fish was a most agreeable surprize, and contributed very much towards dispersing the vapours which were stealing over our minds.

Before we laid ourselves down to rest, we divided our company into three parties, who were by turns to keep watch during the night, since the fires of the Bosjesmans were to be seen on the distant hills. We ourselves rose several times as we happened to wake, and went our rounds, to see that the people were at their duty. All, however, remained quiet; while the barking of our dogs, who were restless and disturbed, kept both the wild beasts and wild men at a distance. On the following morning we proceeded on our way, and were soon without the boundaries of the colony, according to what are usually considered as its boundaries, and laid down as such in Mr. Barrow's map. This gives the Little Riet river as the line of demarcation; but as the

country, quite to the Sack river, is here and there inhabited by whites, this latter river is now generally considered as the boundary.

We experienced this day, for the first time, what afterwards happened to us not unfrequently, that at the place where we purposed to have rested, there was no water. We therefore pursued our way till towards evening, when we arrived at the Quagga-fountain, where, by digging a well, a scanty supply of this first necessary of life was procured. When we had collected what was wanted for ourselves and the kitchen, the next thing was to satisfy the thirst of our poor cattle. This was a very tedious operation, for by the time that three or four of the oxen had taken their draught, the well was exhausted, and it was necessary to wait some time till it was filled again before any more could drink.

After passing the night under the same regulations as the former, we proceeded the next day again in a northerly direction. The farther we went, the more dry and parched we found the country; in some places it even appeared as if the plants had been burnt on the ground, as is done about the Cape Town, for the purpose of manuring the land and exciting vegetation anew. At noon we stopped at the Dwaal-fountain, and arrived in the evening at the Sack river's gate.

This is the name given to a pass between two rows of naked rugged sandstone rocks, blackened all over,* which leads into the valley of the Sack river. From the side of these rocks flows a spring of very fine clear water, which never dries up. The pass is about a hundred paces in length, and the soil in it is much more fertile than in most of the country round, since it is to be considered as in some sort the bed of a river, the rains bringing the best earth down hither from the higher plains. For about a hundred paces upwards, on each side, this pass is covered with a short grass, or turf, almost like a lawn, the green of which forms a fine contrast with the dark dismal hue of the rocks.

---

* All the sandstone that we had seen since the Roggeveld, and farther within the country, had the same thick black covering over it. I will not pretend to decide whether this is to be ascribed to the great quantity of iron that it contains, or whether it be merely the effect of the atmosphere. The latter is the more probable, since, according to the latest observations, all stones in tropical Africa, without excepting even the chalk rocks of Egypt, are blackened over in the same way.

Swaine Sc.

Kicherer's Missionary Institute at the Zack-rivers gate.

London Published May 1st 1815 by Henry Colburn Conduit Street

It was near the entrance of this pass, that in the year 1799, the missionary Kicherer formed his establishment for converting the heathens, of which so much boasting has been made by himself and his friends in Europe. Supported by the missionary societies in England, which are tolerably wealthy, he came hither with a large stock of sheep and cattle, and collected about him a considerable number of Hottentots, and even of Bosjesmans, whom he promised to maintain, provided they would receive and follow the doctrines he should teach them. He built a sort of church, near which the savages constructed their huts,* and they assembled daily for the worship of God, and to hear him preach the gospel to them; but without his ever thinking of paying attention to forming their minds and manners in any other way. He, as well as Van-der-Kemp, seemed wholly to forget that mankind were destined to work as well as to pray. Besides, these savages were taught to pray in a language of which they understood not a word: their instructor thought it sufficient for them to learn the prayers by heart, hoping that thus they would learn the language, and then understand the prayers, how mystical soever they might be.

Such an institution bore in itself the germs of its downfall. What could be expected, when no provision was made for keeping up a supply of the necessaries of life, by instructing the pupils in agriculture, and the breeding of sheep and cattle. The original stock, however considerable it might be, was constantly diminishing; no recruits were raised; the colonists refused the voluntary contributions applied for; and the Bosjesmans, when they found there was nothing left to eat, hesitated not a moment to apostatize from christianity. Nay, afterwards, when the missionary received some supplies of cattle, they found it more to their taste to steal them and carry them away, than to purchase them, though at the trifling expence of listening to the instructions of their former tutor: thus, the sometimes pupils of the institution, became in the sequel its most formidable enemies. The drought of several succeeding

* The plate here given represents the missionary Institution above described. Among the houses to the left, the largest is the Church, as it is called, the habitation of the missionary; round about are the huts of the Hottentots. Somewhat to enliven the scene, cattle and goats are introduced, but the fact is, that the spot is entirely destitute of food for these animals. Though the soil in the pass is mentioned as being fertilized by a spring which flows from the rocks, that effect ceases close to the house, and the whole plain is naked and barren.

years increased these evils; remittances from Europe failed; the number of the pupils constantly decreased; so that at length, in the year 1803, Kicherer resolved to quit the institution awhile, and take a journey to Europe, to solicit farther support to his undertaking. That he might succeed the better in his application, he carried with him three Hottentots, a man and two women, who had several years before been baptized at the Cape Town by the preacher Fleck; and these were to be shewn as elèves of his institution. The great impression made in London by the Christian Hottentots, and how much they won the hearts of all pious people, by their steadiness in resisting every irregularity of conduct, is well known from the account published by Kicherer, with engravings of them. Mention is also made of these converts in many other publications of the time. As to what farther concerns Kicherer himself, and his merits, I can say nothing, never having known him personally: I can only judge of them by their consequences, of which it remains for me to speak.*

At his departure for Europe, Kicherer left as his substitute, at the head of the institution, a colonist by name Christian Botma, who, from pure enthusiasm for the cause of christianity, had followed the missionary hither. He now, in the absence of his principal, not only undertook the whole trouble of instructing what pupils remained, abandoning his own affairs for the purpose, but also made great sacrifices of money to support the thing. Him we found here, a quiet, orderly personage, not a man of many words, but who, from his superior knowledge and understanding, was a properer person to fulfil the office of a missionary than most of those sent out from Europe. At his first visit the Landdrost requested his advice as to the best course which could be pursued for obtaining the ends he had in view with regard to the Bosjesmans; and he in return for this confidence received us with the utmost hospitality, devoid of all constraint. He offered us the Church, as it is called, for our

* A similar establishment was also formed by Kicherer on the other side of the Orange river, which however he soon gave up to another missionary, by name Kramer. What Mr. Barrow says of him, may be seen in the second part of that gentleman's work, page 54. He did not however go alone among the Bosjesmans, but was accompanied by a number of bastard Hottentots. For the rest, Mr. Barrow himself acknowledges the very great preference that is to be given to the establishments of the *Herrnhuters*.

habitation; but as we would not disturb the daily assemblings for the service of God, we had our tents pitched, and only requested that we might have the church as our night-quarters, that affording a better protection against the cold.

This church is really scarcely any thing more than a little barn, for it consists of nothing but the walls, and a roof, without any divisions or fitting up within. To the left of the entrance is a sort of pulpit, built of stone, whence the preacher gives his instructions, and in face of it are half a dozen benches for his auditors. There is not the slightest trace of an altar, a cross, a picture, or any other symbol of christianity. Instead of these, in the dark back ground of the building, is a bed, a table, a couple of stools, with leather thongs crossed over them for the seats, and a couple of old chests: these constitute the whole household furniture of the pastor. A piece of parchment scraped fine, and stretched over a hole in the wall, serves as a window: this is not substantial enough to keep out the cold air, and not transparent enough properly to admit the light: the building is about forty feet long and seventeen broad. Near it stand six or eight *pandokken*, as they are called, a kind of huts made of reeds woven into a wooden frame, which are inhabited by the principal Bastard-Hottentots: the poorer have little low huts in the form of a hemisphere, which consist of a skeleton of wood, with a mat drawn over it.

The whole number of pupils at this moment amounted to forty, among whom were only eight men capable of bearing arms. Some, who formerly lived here, had not long since been sent by Kicherer to another place, which was dedicated to the use of the pupils under the name of Blyde Vooruitzigt, *(pleasant prospect.)* Most of those that remained here were Bastard-Hottentots: several of them were entirely white; and the greater part had been baptized before they came hither: some were even born of christian parents. Not one among them were pure absolute Hottentots: all of that description had forsaken the institution: those that remained were of the old original stock, the elect that Kicherer had brought with him to form and instruct the others: these alone adhered steadily to their calling. Most of them had been educated in christianity, and through their instruction, the end of the institution was apparently amply fulfilled; but the fact is, that they would have been much better employed in the service of the colonists, providing for their wants by

industry, than pursuing, as they did here, lives wholly useless, and abandoned to sloth. Their indolence was indeed absolutely insupportable: instead of occupying themselves in husbandry, or at least in taking care of the few cattle remaining to them, they passed the whole day in their huts in complete idleness. A boy was sent into the field with the cattle, who often suffered two or three to run away in the course of the day, without any idea ever being entertained of going in search of them. Some of our people, one day in wandering about upon a shooting party, found six of their oxen who had escaped, feeding together very quietly upon a hill, while the proprietors asserted that they had been stolen by the Bosjesmans. Nay, to such a pitch was this indolence carried, that an absolute command from the Landdrost, to go and bring them back, was necessary, before any one could be made to stir for that purpose.

The whole stock of sheep and cattle, which at first had been very large, was now reduced to about three hundred sheep and forty oxen. The kraals where they used to be inclosed at night were fallen into ruins, and no attempt was ever made to repair them; the cattle lay among the huts, or were left to run about at their pleasure; in consequence of this, the little garden which the missionary once had was all trodden down, the springs were fouled, and other mischief was done by them. In short, such was the universal sloth and negligence, that no one could remain here, but with great reluctance, and from strong necessity. Botma had, indeed, made some efforts to correct these abuses, by setting a good example in his own person. He had enclosed a piece of land of about an acre and a half, with a hedge, which was destined for growing corn, and vegetables for the kitchen; but more than once a whole side of the hedge had been carried away by his pupils, to spare themselves the trouble of going further for firewood. He lamented to us, with tears, that all his endeavours to rouse them to some degree of industry and activity had hitherto been fruitless; means to compel them to it, he said, he had not, and if he had he should scarcely have the heart to use them, since the people were all very pious, and very desirous of godly instruction. The Landdrost, therefore, took upon himself the business of endeavouring to make them see more clearly the consequences of continuing to lead such indolent lives, and threatened that if they would not exert themselves for their own maintenance, they should all be carried to Tulbagh, and there

kept to labour at the public works for proper pay. Botma had, from pure zeal in the cause, sacrificed at least half his property in supporting the institution, that it might not fall to the ground entirely. He continued to furnish from his own means the first necessaries of life, nor, as it appeared, was he likely to shrink back as long as any thing remained to him. He was very anxious for Kicherer's return, when he hoped that a more fortunate era in the institution would commence.

The regulations of the place were as follows: At the sound of an old drum, the pupils repaired to the church, where a psalm was sung, in which they all joined; afterwards a chapter from the bible was read and explained by the pastor; the latter was done with a pious unction, but on the whole in a more rational manner than I had generally heard among the missionaries. This service was performed twice in the day, at seven in the morning, and at five in the afternoon: it lasted each time about three quarters of an hour: the rest of the day was passed in sleep and indolence. Men, as well as women, were clothed in garments of tanned antelope-skins, made in the same form as the clothes worn by the colonists; the women had besides dirty linen caps or handkerchiefs tied round their heads. A few of the women were employed in making these garments; some were weaving rush mats for covering the huts; others were cooking, or fetching wood and water; but all was done in a slow and indolent manner, that bespoke forcibly the evil habits to which they were accustomed. In their whole behaviour, and particularly in their manner of talking, they endeavoured to make a great display of piety, humility, and moderation, excusing their indolence under the veil of indifference to every thing earthly and perishable. That the fault is not to be laid upon them, but upon the spirit in which the institution has been formed, needs no other proof, but the recollection that the same description of men are at Bavians-kloof trained into active and useful citizens.

CHAP. XLII.

More Conflicts with the Bosjesmans.—Two Men wounded by them.—The Case of one particularly described.—Conspiracy of some Bosjesman Servants to Murder their Master.—Consequences of this Conspiracy.—A Scheme proposed to the Governor, for endeavouring to Civilize these Savages.—Obstacles to its being carried into Execution. —Description of the Bosjesman Country.—Farther Particulars respecting the Manners, Customs, and Habits of the Bosjesmans.

The same complaints with which we had been so often assailed relative to the depredations of the Bosjesmans, pursued us hither. Only a week before, the whole flock belonging to the Hottentots here had been driven away; but the robbery was discovered before it was too late to pursue the robbers, and deprive them of their booty. Of the four Bastards who exerted themselves to perform this service, two were wounded in the rencounter; the one, as it appeared, with a newly-poisoned arrow, for he died in an hour; the other was still lying ill in his hut, and requested my advice upon his case. The wound was now trifling; but, notwithstanding that the arrow was drawn out instantly, the place swelled very much in the course of a few hours, and had occasioned very great pain. I ordered the dressing to be taken off; this consisted of sheep's fat spread on a leathern bandage. The wound was in the lower part of the arm, between the elbow and wrist; the hand, and the arm, even above the elbow half way to the shoulder, was still considerably swelled. An abscess, accompanied with a very bad appearance, was formed about the wound, having spread quite round the arm: it discharged a considerable quantity of a thin and very pungent matter. The edges of the wound were flabby and spotted, and the skin wherever the matter had run was full of little blisters, which were attended with very great smart. The patient said that he had certainly mended within the last two days; he had been free from fever, and felt less pain; at first, he said, the pain had sometimes in the night been almost insupportable. I prepared him a salve of precipitate, and gave him some medicines internally, from which he evidently received much benefit

during my stay. The wound was however scarcely healed when I saw him two months after, on my return.

At a neighbouring farm, where some *tame* Bosjesmans, as they are called, were employed as servants, a conspiracy had been entered into among a part of them, to murder their master, and carry away his cattle. One of the conspirators revealed the plot, and the leaders were arrested. They were brought before us, when they strongly denied the charge, till four young Bosjesmans, lads from sixteen to twenty years of age, were taken prisoners, who confessed that they had intended going farther into the country, and that at the last friendly visit they made to the accused at their master's farm, they had promised to join the party as guides. From these and several other circumstances which appeared in the examination, the guilt of these men seemed indisputable, and at last they acknowledged it themselves. It was therefore resolved that they should be sent to Tulbagh, there to undergo a regular trial. The rest of the Bosjesmans, however, who had hitherto conducted themselves in a tolerably pacific manner towards the colonists hereabouts, only sometimes coming to beg tobacco or brandy of them, were set at liberty, though there was very great reason to suspect them of having been privy to the evil intentions of their countrymen, if not to have been the instigators of them. It appeared to us, however, necessary to shew as much forbearance as possible towards those we had in our power, in hopes of exciting the rest to more peaceable behaviour in future.

We took the opportunity of enquiring of them, by means of our interpreter, where Captain Goedhart was at that time, since he was the person with whom the treaty of peace was now to proceed to a formal conclusion, and we had brought considerable presents for him. Our Bosjesmans assured us that he was a thorough rascal, on whom no dependence was to be placed: he had begun to rob and plunder again immediately after the Landdrost's visit, and the treaty made with him: he was, they said, the instigator of all the depredations committed; and the information that we were coming had therefore terrified him to such a degree, that he, with all his people, had fled into the Karree mountains. There, they added, we might very likely find him, with a herd of four hundred cattle, which he had collected by his robberies within the last few months. Upon this, we offered them a reward if they would go to the captain, and invite him to come to us, that we might negociate with

him to surrender his stolen cattle, and to enter into a solid treaty of peace. In case of his refusal, they were commissioned to threaten that a strong party of soldiers should be sent to punish his misdeeds. They all, however, declared unanimously that they would not undertake such a commission, since they should most certainly be instantly put to death: he had menaced every one, they said, who had ever lived with the christians with such a fate.

We made these men some little presents, and dismissed them with many wholesome admonitions; but we learnt in the sequel that it would have been more prudent to send them prisoners to Tulbagh. Scarcely a month after, the same lads fell by night upon a farm, to which a few days before they had made a friendly visit, killed the dogs, and carried away the cattle. The proprietor, collecting his neighbours, pursued them, when two were shot dead in defending their prey, and the others were compelled to resign it. On the very same day that these were dismissed, some more Bosjesman prisoners were brought in, who had stolen a yoke of oxen sent to us from the Roggeveld; they were seized in the very act of devouring one of them.

Among the new prisoners, was one who had for a long time been the terror of the neighbourhood, and who, though often taken, had always found means to escape. He was known to the colonists by the name of *the beard-man*, since he was the only Bosjesman ever seen with hair on his chin and lips; and this was supposed to be from his age, which might be between fifty and sixty: his wife, and two children of four and six years old, were taken prisoners with him. He had been informed by those who took him, that the Landdrost was in the country, and would most probably order him to be shot, so that he trembled all over when he appeared before us, and it was a long time before our interpreter could get an answer to any question put to him. He was asked why he had always been so addicted to stealing: by way of answer, he pointed to his body, which hung together in folds, and taking a piece up in his hand, he drew it out as far as it could be drawn, to shew how much it would hold if it was full; then, without waiting for an answer to this demonstrable reason for his depredations he begged for something to eat, although not more than an hour before he had been regaled with a good breakfast. Every answer he made shewed great indifference to what was passing: he seemed to speak with much difficulty, and manifested besides so much stupidity, combined with so much of the weakness of old age, that we were

greatly embarrassed what to do with him. As, however, he appeared still to have sufficient strength remaining to do much mischief, it was in the end resolved that he should be sent to Tulbagh. His wife also being accused by the colonists of instigating him to his robberies, and of having even assisted in them, we were afraid of setting her at liberty; but on account of her children, she was treated more mildly than the husband; and was carried in another waggon chained by only one arm. When the husband and wife were separated, the old *beard-man*, though supposing always that he was to be put to death, gave no sign of being affected in any way: he quitted his children without even casting a look at them. Two other prisoners, brought in at the same time, were sentenced to share his fate, that they might be prevented from incurring any farther guilt. They, however, made their escape by the way, the colonists who were to guard them through the Roggeveld, having in compassion taken off their irons, and in this situation left them unwatched.

We sent at the same time a long memorial to the Governor, stating fully the disastrous situation of the colonists, and submitted to his consideration whether it would not be expedient to send a party of soldiers against the Bosjesmans: his decision upon this subject was requested against our return. In case of an affirmative answer being sent, a supply of powder and ball was desired, since there was so great a want of them in these parts, that the peasants had not the means of defending themselves, much less of resorting to the chase as a means of support, or of making incursions upon their enemy.

In a private letter which I wrote to the Governor, I suggested that if permission was granted for a party of soldiers to be formed for the defence of the colonists, instructions should be given them to spare the lives of the poor savages as much as possible, and rather to endeavour to make them prisoners. A place in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town, the Robben-Island, perhaps, might then be set apart to hold them in a sort of easier imprisonment, where they should be kept to moderate work: the profits of their work might, it appeared, be made to pay the state the expence of maintaining them. It might then be hoped that by degrees, though perhaps not till the second generation, they would be led to adopt more active and civilized lives. To this, the teaching them to have more than one want would essentially contribute, since now they had but one—that of food. A double good would in this way

be attained; the borders would be freed from a terrible evil, and these poor creatures would be excited to aim at a higher degree of cultivation. As a reward for good behaviour, the best might gradually be restored to liberty, and allowed to return home, where they might introduce something like civilization among their countrymen. It was not, however, to be denied, that there was a great obstacle in the way of such a plan, viz. that the wild Bosjesmans will never receive again among them any of their people who have lived long among the christians; and that a Bosjesman who had once been in any degree civilized, would never bear to reinhabit his own inhospitable wastes; or, if he did, he must soon lose the milder manners he had acquired and return to his old trades of robbery and plunder.

General Janssens, however, thought, for many important reasons, that it was proper to refuse the request of a company of soldiers. Matters of more importance demanded almost his whole attention at that moment: the expected attack of the English would scarcely allow of his permitting himself to be occupied by divided cares, and it rendered the sparing any ammunition for less important objects a thing scarcely to be thought of. To carry the above proposal into effect was therefore for the moment wholly out of the question; and since those to whom it was made have no longer the power of adopting this or any other plan of the kind, it remains for the new government to exercise all their prudence and circumspection in devising the least objectionable means for removing so great an evil as these perpetual strifes between the Bosjesmans and the European borderers. Above all things, it is incumbent on the colonists themselves, to shew the utmost humanity towards this unhappy race of men; not to shed blood but in cases of the last extremity; rather to make as many prisoners as they can, and send them away to Tulbagh. Nothing like inhumanity on the part of the colonists towards their enemies ought to pass unnoticed by the government: a strict account ought to be demanded of the life of every Bosjesman that falls in the conflict.

Perhaps this is the best opportunity that may occur to add what more I have to say concerning the country of the Bosjesmans, the manners, customs, and modes of life of the inhabitants, so as to give the most connected view of them. These additional remarks will serve as illustrations of the adventures I have to record, and will support the truth of many assertions that will be

The true native country of these people is the district which lies between the Orange river, and the mountains that extend from the Roggeveld eastward to the Snow Mountains; a district in seeing which the traveller is convinced that a country may exist, even more barren and inhospitable than the Karroo itself, and may, notwithstanding, be inhabited. The Karroo is at a certain time of the year refreshed with genial rains; it becomes green and lovely to the eye; it is overspread with flowers. But no such happy moments ever bless this deplorable region. Whole years pass without the soil being fertilized by a single drop of rain. The ductile clay of the Karroo requires nothing but moisture to give life to vegetation, but the ground here is covered with broken masses of rock, and with blocks of stone; while a thin layer of soil, composed only of the smaller particles from these masses, gives life to nothing but a few of the succulent tribe of plants. This tract of country is divided between two very different climates; that which is general throughout the colony of the Cape, and that of the interior of the Caffre country. Yet it does not share with the former the genial winter rains, or with the latter the cooling thunder-storms of the hot season; now and then an irregular and hasty cloud only, in passing over, will discharge itself, as if by a mere chance.

In such a kind of spot few animals can find nourishment; those alone which nature seems to have formed expressly for it. The ostrich, the eland-antelope, the rhinoceros, and the sparing sheep, which was first introduced here through the intervention of the distant settlers that intruded themselves into the more fertile parts bordering on this district,—these are the only objects which are to be numbered among the luxuries that regale the miserable lives of the inhabitants. Their common objects of pursuit are serpents, lizards, ants, and grasshoppers; the larger game seldom fall victims to the imperfect weapons with which alone they can assail them. Little accustomed to drinking, they will remain whole days without a drop of liquid ever passing their lips; as a substitute, they chew the few succulent plants with which their barren soil supplies them; and their food is all eaten without salt. Always seeking their prey from place to place, following the track of the antelope, or of the insects on which they feed, they have no fixed habitation, but pass the night in holes made in the ground; or in the milder season of the year, beneath the branches of such trees as the country affords. The corporeal form of people doomed to such a mode of life, can be no other than

what it is in fact. The Bosjesmans are low in stature, lean, and apparently weak in their limbs; yet from the necessary exertions attendant upon their wandering mode of life, they are capable of enduring much more fatigue than could be supposed at the first sight of them: they are less indolent in their movements than the Corans, and other of the more civilized Hottentot tribes. Their higher organs of sense are particularly acute, as they are daily very much used in spying out their objects of food at a great distance, and in lurking after them. Their lower organs are on the contrary weak: they might almost be supposed to have neither taste, smell, or feeling; no disgust is ever evinced by them at even the most nauseous kind of food, at least what would to us be the most nauseous, nor do they appear to have any feeling of even the most striking changes in the temperature of the atmosphere.

Where each individual thinks of nothing but satisfying for the moment the first animal wants of our nature, without any regard to the future, without thinking of the permanent possession of any property whatever, no social bond can unite any number of men together. Families alone form associations in single small hordes;—sexual feelings, the instinctive love to children, or the customary attachment among relations, are the only ties that keep them in any sort of union. The hardships that attend on satisfying the most urgent necessities of life, preclude the possibility of forming larger societies: these families, even, are sometimes obliged to separate, since the same spot will not afford sufficient sustenance for all. A part wanders one way, a part another: chance sometimes reunites them; and if circumstances are more favourable; if they have been so fortunate as to capture any object among the larger sort of game; if necessity compels them to unite in some scheme of plunder which promises a rich booty, they then continue for a longer time together. No one obtains any ascendancy over the rest by hereditary rank: bodily strength alone procures distinction among them; but this gives sometimes so great a degree of ascendancy, that the weaker, if he would preserve his own life, is obliged to resign to the stronger, his weapons, his wife, and even his children.

In short, there is not perhaps any class of savages upon the earth that lead lives so near those of the brutes as the Bosjesmans;—none perhaps who are sunk so low, who are so unimportant in the scale of existence;—whose wants, whose cares, and whose joys, are so low in their nature;—and who are consequently so little capable of cultivation. Certainly no other tribe of savages

has yet been found in whom so high a degree of brutal ferocity is united with so much craft, and so many proofs of real power of mind. To sleep, to eat, and to drink, are the only wants,—smoking tobacco and drinking brandy are the only joys that the Bosjesman knows,—yet these wants, these joys, he can forego longer than any other person. The very same man, who with five of his fellow-countrymen will devour a fat sheep in an hour, or a quagga in half a night, will be able to fast for three or four days together, even without this abstinence having been preceded by such a feast. Mere sloth is sometimes the principal motive of this forbearance: he would sooner resist the cravings of his stomach, and endeavour to sleep them away, than make any bodily exertion to satisfy them. He will live for months together upon a few little bulbs, which, at certain times of the year, are to be found in the low parts of the country, and never leave the spot till the whole harvest has been consumed. An uncommon degree of perseverance is distinguishable in every thing that he undertakes. He will sometimes spend a whole day together, in low places, scratching up the ground, endeavouring to find water, and if once convinced that there is any to be found, will dig even to the depth of six feet to come at it. The whole recompense of this toil is perhaps a handful of water for each person concerned in the achievement, which they take in rotation, each being obliged to wait the replenishment of the little well after the former has had his quantum. If they perceive the track of any wild animal, they never cease following it till the animal itself is taken: no difficulties, in short, deter them from pursuing any undertaking on which they are once resolved. To the first step alone do they ever shew reluctance; but if once their propensity to indolence is so far subdued as to begin, the object is pursued with boldness, with cunning, and with pertinacity, till it is attained. Yet this boldness is a very different quality from martial courage: they venture much on the idea of good-luck, nothing from confidence in their own power. They never stop to meet an adversary in fight in the open field: a single musket shot will put a hundred to flight, and whoever rushes upon them with only a good stick in his hand has no reason to fear any resistance from ever so large a number. To aim their arrows at an unarmed person from some secure skulking-place is their only mode of making war.

Their greatest dexterity is shewn in the use of their weapons, or in watching their enemy and his motions. However imperfect their language is, they

have a very intelligent manner of conveying their meaning to each other, by signs and gesticulations. They have so much adroitness in managing signals, that they will make them understood at the distance of many miles; in the night particularly, by means of fires on the summits of the mountains, they will indicate to each other the numbers of a herd or flock which they mean to plunder, with the means of defence that the people have who are guarding them. Their sight is rendered so acute, by spying continually around them from a great height, after their prey, that they perceive objects clearly at a distance, which no European, even with the best eyes, could see without the assistance of glasses. Of this I have witnessed frequent proofs, since our Bosjesman servants have sometimes discerned flocks of antelopes at the distance of a mile and a half. Some of the most striking instances I saw of this native gift, as it may be called, of the Bosjesmans, were furnished by a lad of this nation, whom General Janssens carried with him to Europe. In our return home on board the Bellona, this lad would often, as he stood on the deck, discover ships in the horizon, which the sailors at the mast-head could not see, and which we could scarcely discern with our glasses. If, however, he was set to look for a vessel which had been seen by the captain, with his glass, from the mast head, he could never discover it.

As their weapons are their only property, and at the same time the only work of art produced by them, it seems desirable that a short description of them should be given. The bow is commonly about five feet in length, and consists of a staff of very hard wood, thickest in the middle; the string is made of the intestines of animals, twisted together, and is about the thickness of a straw: the whole is a very rough and simple piece of workmanship. The arrows are upon an average about three feet and a half long: the shaft is made of a strong thick reed, slit at the lower end, that it may catch the string of the bow: it is wound round with entrails, that it may not break farther than is required, and has the feather of a bird of prey fixed to it, to give it a more certain direction in its flight. At the upper end is fastened either a hard hollow piece of bone, commonly the thigh bone of the antelope, sharpened to a point, or a small triangular plate of iron: in both cases it is strongly rubbed over with poison. This poison is of a brown colour and a glutinous quality: when fresh it has the consistence of wax, but it soon dries and becomes hard. It is composed of several substances, the baleful effects of which upon the

animal frame, experience has taught them by degrees. The principal ingredient is always the poison of serpents; but as this is of itself too thin, and evaporates too soon, they mix with it the poisonous sap of one of the larger species of *euphorbia*, called *wolf's-milk*, which thickens to the consistence above-mentioned. Another sort of poison used by them is extracted from the bulb of the *hæmanthus toxicartus*, which is a sharp alkali, and when mixed with the blood, decomposes it immediately. The tame Bosjesmans call this sap in Dutch *bolletjes poison*. Another sort bears the name of *rock poison*, from being a sort of brownish viscous substance, occasionally found upon the rocks. I have never seen this, and cannot imagine what it can be. A colonist, who was well acquainted with it, and to whom I mentioned my conjecture that it was a sort of bitumen, said that I was in an error; he thought it was a sap which flowed from some plant.

These ingredients are mixed according to the object against which they are to be used. If against a man, there is a larger proportion of the animal poison; if against animals in the chace, then the sap of the *hæmanthus* is the prevailing ingredient. Although these people know very well that the poisons are only noxious when mingled with the blood, they cautiously avoid preparing them with the naked hand: they are mixed up with a wooden stick, in a hollow stone which has previously been heated. They are particularly cautious in smearing their arrows, since they might easily wound themselves by giving an awkward turn to the weapon while they are doing it. For this purpose, a stone is used, in which is a sort of small channel, or gutter, and this being filled with the poison, the point of the arrow is laid into it, and the mixture rubbed on with the little stick till the proper quantity is imbibed. A horrible accessray to these weapons is that the arrow is cut half through, about an inch below the point, so that if in wounding it should happen to strike against a bone and rebound, it will break off at this place, and leave the point sticking in the wound. Besides this, to make the matter more sure in wounding the fleshy parts of the body, at least in case of any attempt to withdraw the arrow, a sort of hook made of a small piece of quill, is contrived near the place where the incision is made, and if the arrow be incautiously handled, the point is sure to be left in the wound: no chance of life then remains, for farther help is impossible, the part swells so immediately over the point.

The wood for the bows, and the iron points for the arrows, are both procured from a distance, by exchanging for them, with their countrymen to the east, arrows ready made; or sometimes the iron is procured by plunder, from the Hassagais of the Caffre tribes. They are ignorant, however, of the use of fire in working the iron: the triangular plates they use, are produced by beating the iron with stones, so that a whole day is sometimes occupied in making one. By far the greater part of the arrows are pointed with bone: those with the iron heads are never used in the chase; they are reserved to be employed against mankind. The preparing the arrows, and mixing the poison, are considered by them as arts in which few ever attain entire perfection.

In like manner, it is not every one among them that can distinguish the poisonous sorts of serpents from those that are harmless. In general it may be taken as a rule, that those which move with the greater agility are of the noxious kind. The well-known horned serpent, which among the colonists is esteemed so very dangerous, is little esteemed by the Bosjesmans, because it does not move rapidly. Some which are very poisonous are slow and languid in their movement at the time they are about to cast their skins, and, according to what the Bosjesmans affirm, they have then no effective poison. The greater the trouble they have in catching a serpent, the harder they must hold it down between the stones, the more it writhes and seems enraged, the more pungent is the poison esteemed, the more certain and dreadful in its effects. The dexterity and courage shewn by them in catching these serpents is truly astonishing. No sooner do they see the animal upon the level ground than they set their foot upon its neck, press the head fast together with their fingers, so that the jaws cannot be moved, and then separate the head from the body with a knife, or, for want of that, bite it off. All this is the operation but of a moment. They then take the bag of poison out of the head, and prepare it for use, before time can be allowed for the least particle of its pungency to evaporate. That they greedily devour the body of the serpent, and even prefer it to fish, I have mentioned already.

The quivers in which the arrows are kept are made of the hollow stem of a large sort of aloe; on this account the plant has obtained from the colonists the name of the *quiver plant:* it is nearly allied to the *Aloe perfoliata.* The

bottom, and the cover of the quiver, are of leather; sometimes, to make it the stronger, the whole quiver is covered with leather. It is slung over the left shoulder with a leather thong, hanging so that the arrows can be drawn out directly under the left arm: when, in case of one missing, another is ready at hand in an instant. In this way they can shoot five or six times in a minute. They do not direct the bow on a level, as might be supposed, but inclining, like Sagittarius in the Zodiac: they hold it in the middle with the left hand, the arrows rest on the thumb, and with the right hand they draw the arrow back at the same time upon the string. This is all done at a commodious height below the eye, so that the direction of the arrow may be perfectly calculated, but not its inclination. For this reason they often fail in the height at which they aim, but never in the direction, and can hit to a certainty the stem of any given tree of some height, and half a foot in thickness, while they would almost always shoot over a hedge three feet high, or perhaps not reach it. The distance at which they can take their aim with the greatest degree of certainty is about eighty paces; farther off, the best marksman will often fail; we once, however, saw a man hit his mark at the distance of a hundred and five paces.

In the chace, artifice and dexterity must supply all that is wanted from the imperfection of these weapons; and they are so practised in lurking after the game, that they scarcely find any their masters in this respect. It is no trifling art in these naked barren plains, to be able so to conceal themselves from the shy antelope, and the long-sighted ostrich, that they can get within fifty or sixty paces of them. This is done by almost crawling along the earth upon their bellies, strewing their bodies and garments over with dust, that the colour may not betray them, and never moving if they see that the animal appears to be looking that way. Nor is their patience exhausted, though they are obliged to remain in this situation even for hours, so that an animal seldom escapes when once the pursuit of it is undertaken.

With the same precaution and regularity in their plan, do they proceed in their marauding parties. They never venture on an attack without having first well reconnoitred their ground, and having come to a proper understanding with each other upon the signals to be made in every possible case that can occur. The last quarter of the moon is the time when their incursions are the most to be apprehended, for the depredations can then be completed

during the darkness of midnight, while the morning moon is of great assistance to them in making their escape. Still more must people be upon their guard against them in cold and wet weather: at such a time it is not safe in many places to trust the cattle at night in the pastures: they know very well that in the damp a gun will often miss fire. The Hottentots, besides, who are employed as shepherds and herdsmen, having an extreme sensibility to this damp cold, creep into holes in the rocks, where they make a fire and lie down to sleep: then are the oxen driven away by the Bosjesmans, and their keepers, or those who ought to be so, not unfrequently murdered in their sleep. To be the more secure against all resistance, the murder is often performed by throwing a large stone at the head, which dashes it entirely to pieces.

I have already, in two different parts of these Travels, related many other things concerning the Bosjesmans, which there is no occasion here to repeat. I have, for example, described their cloathing, their food, their propensity to plunder—I have mentioned that they have no names, and scarcely any language, with various particulars of the like kind. When, therefore, I have observed, that they do not seem to have the least idea of a Supreme Being, and are more superstitious than even the Caffres themselves, I think the reader will be possessed of all the most important information that I can give concerning them. I therefore return to the account of our journey.*

* Some remarks upon their language will be found in the Appendix at the end of this volume.

CHAP. XLIII.

The Travelling Party assembled.—Departure from the Sack River.—The Latitude of this River ascertained.—Kopjesfontein.—Patryssefontein.—Lion's Fountain.—The Author and a Party go in Search of Captain Goedhart.—Description of the Karree Mountains.—Large Flock of Ostriches and Quaggas.—Hunting Parties.—Unfortunate Death of Krieger, killed by an Elephant.—His Grave.

By degrees we collected together some of the colonists and Hottentots who had been required to accompany us. Far the greater part, however, did not appear, excusing themselves by writing, and sending a number of useless testimonies, that it was impossible for them to serve. The Field-Cornets Nel and Van Aart, wrote to say, that it was not in their power to comply with the demand for a certain number of young men from their district to serve in the escort, since all their youth were already gone in a body to the Karroo. Some who did indeed come, were yet so deeply impressed with the recent horrors committed by the Bosjesmans, and of the dangers to be encountered in our journey, that they begged permission to return for a few days previous to setting off with us; and, this permission obtained, we saw them no more.

Thus, instead of the number we ought to have had, only three remained true to the cause. These, however, from their zeal and abilities, almost made amends for the failure of the rest: they were, in every respect, of the greatest importance to us. One of them was a man already somewhat advanced in life, by name Jacob Krieger, who had lived, for several years, among the savages that we proposed visiting; and who was likely to be of the utmost use to us as a guide in these trackless countries. At the time when the colony was in the possession of the English, he, with his brother, were guilty of some crime against the state, for which they were arrested; but while their trial was pending, they found means to escape, and fled beyond the boundaries of the colony, among the tribes of the Corans. After three

years passed there in great misery and want, the other brother lost his life, and Jacob then ventured to return into the colony; when, through the intervention of some friends, a pardon was obtained for him, on condition of his furnishing all the information he could respecting these people. At that time very little was known concerning them. This information, which was indeed somewhat exaggerated, was, in part, the occasion of our present journey; and he was soon to confirm to us himself the truth of his assertions. Guilt and repentance had made deep furrows in his countenance: he spoke little, and scarcely ever was his mouth distended into a smile. In his sunken eyes was an expression rather of contempt of danger, than of youthful courage. A large grey beard, thick eye-brows, and long hair hanging over his face, gave him a wild and formidable appearance. He was armed with a short, thick elephant-gun, which carried shot of a quarter of a pound weight.

The second of these men, Gerrit Vischer, was a youth only eighteen years of age, whose father had, in the course of his life, carried on frequent negociations with the Bosjesmans, and had succeeded, in the year 1796, in establishing a peace between them and the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. From him our young man had learnt the language of these savages: he had always been his father's companion in his journeys among them. He had even accompanied him once into the country of the Briquas. The third was John Van der Westhuizen, of the same age as Vischer, whose companion he was frequently in the chace. He was a great acquisition to us, both from his youthful cheerfulness and courage, and from being one of the best shots in the country.

Our whole company now consisted, besides the landdrost and myself, of six Christians, including the messenger Mong; of twelve Hottentots, and five slaves; in all, twenty-five persons. We were obliged to have nearly a hundred oxen for the use of our three waggons, besides some that we carried as stores, to be killed when occasion required it; for the same purpose fourscore sheep were added to our convoy. We had only eight horses among us, and they soon became very weak and languid for want of proper food. Only two of them lived to return. Four goats that we also carried with us, held out the best of any of our animals, and never ceased to furnish us with excellent milk for breakfast, however barren of food the country might appear to be.

Before we departed, the colonists of the country once more endeavoured to deter us, by representing, in forcible colours, the hardships attendant upon the undertaking. Krieger had already said every thing that could be urged, with regard to the probable want of water, and of pasture for our cattle; that we might not have, in the sequel, to charge him with having been wanting in his duty, by not giving us due warning of what we were to expect. But we were firmly resolved to obey the Governor's commands, and satisfy our own curiosity as much as possible; and therefore persisted in undertaking the journey, promising only to use the utmost discretion in prosecuting it, and to turn back, as soon as we saw that we could not proceed without manifest danger.

On Sunday, the thirtieth of May, we left the Sack river, and, with it, took our leave, for several months, of any country inhabited by white men, or Christians. Since this river has been made the northern boundary of the colony, its situation is become much more important. In the week that we stayed there, I therefore made observations daily, to ascertain the latitude; and the result was, that the *Sack river's Gate*, which is about a quarter of a mile from the river, may be laid down with tolerable certainty, as in latitude thirty degrees sixteen minutes.* For the rest, the Sack river does not bound the most northerly part of the colony: that is bounded by the Koussie river, which is among the Khamies mountains. The Sack river, the sources of which are in the Nieuweveld mountains, forms the boundary of the colony for thirty miles, running in a direction from east-south-east, to west-north-west. Farther on, it is so lost in a sandy plain, that scarcely any traces of its bed can be discerned. Still farther, its waters are collected together again, and form a river, but no longer bearing the same name. It is then called the Hartebeests river, and, under that name, falls into the Orange river. At the time we were in the country, the Sack river was entirely dry; and the colonists said, that it had never been otherwise for the last six years. The devia-

* These observations were made with two good sextants. Fortunately my countryman, Mong, who had formerly served as pilot's mate on board a ship, understood how to manage them, so that we could take two corresponding observations every day. The want of a clear horizon was compensated by a quicksilver glass.

tion of the magnetic needle, at the place of observation, was twenty-five degrees and a half north-west.

Directly on the other side of the river, the country was tolerably level, broken only by some small rounded eminences scattered at intervals, but which had by no means the naked, rugged appearance of the more southerly hills. After travelling three hours, we came to a spring called Kopjesfontein. Towards noon we reached the Brakke river. From thence we proceeded to the remains of what had been once a cattle-place, belonging to a colonist by name Corf, but which he had been obliged to quit, when the government would no longer allow of any settlements being made by the peasants beyond the boundaries of the colony. The kraal for the cattle was still entire, and served for night quarters to our animals. Finding here fresh traces of the Bosjesmans, we made a large fire, hoping this signal might entice some of them to come and visit us ; but, since in this we were disappointed, we were doubly watchful during the night. The waggons were drawn up to the tents, and guards were placed in them, who relieved each other by turns.

On account of the very poor supply of pasture here, we set off again the next morning with the dawn, and stopped, after some hours, at a small spring between two hills, where was a little grass. This place is called Patrysse-fontein, (Partridge Fountain.) From this place we went on a shooting party, and killed some hares and stone-antelopes. In the latter part of our day's journey, we met a troop of quaggas, one of which was hit in the haunch by a shot from our party. He notwithstanding attempted to fly, and bit violently when we went up to secure him. However desirous we were to spare our powder and shot as much as possible, we were obliged to fire at him a second time; for all attempts to come near him were vain, and manifestly not to be made without danger to ourselves. When he was killed, our Hottentots immediately began to cut him up, and the best parts were added to the stores in our waggons. We attempted to eat some, but not being Hottentots, we could not find it relishing.

It was night, and still no water was to be met with. How cold soever it was, and how weary soever our poor oxen grew, we were therefore obliged to go on. About midnight we came to a narrow mountain-pass, where, by the advice of our guides, our convoy was so arranged that the loose cattle marched in the centre, between the waggons. We ourselves kept with the waggons,

carrying our guns in our hands. The advanced guard on horseback fired some shots to clear the way; and in this manner we got happily through, without being attacked by man or animal.

It was three o'clock in the morning when we reached the Lion's Fountain, where, to our great joy, we not only found a plentiful spring of water, but a pit made close by, in which a large quantity of water was already collected. When day-light appeared, we perceived the place to be pleasantly situated between two low hills. Through the midst of the valley meandered the dry bed of a river, which was thickly grown over with dried reeds. These we set on fire, partly to drive out the game that might be harboured among them, partly as a signal to the Bosjesmans that we were come on a friendly errand, and did not wish to conceal our arrival, but would be glad to see them if they would come to us. Neither of these objects was, however, attained.

Vegetation was here so poor, that we could not find bushes enough to cook a little soup. Fortunately, some months before, a party of missionaries had travelled through the country, carrying with them a large number of cattle; and the dried dung of these animals served us as fuel both here and in several other places as we proceeded farther. As the poor cattle are obliged in these parts to feed almost entirely upon the woody stems of the *mesembryanthemum spinosum*, the dung contains a great deal of this, which made it burn almost like turf. It was necessary, however, to take great care that the saucepans made use of should be well secured against the smoke getting in; for that gives a very unpleasant flavour to every thing impressed with it.

Our next place of rest was called the Klipfontein.* Here again we were tolerably supplied with water, which poured out from a large cleft in the rock. The reeds, with which the spot was overgrown, were burned, and we discovered a chasm, a hundred feet deep and twenty wide, enclosed by perpendicular rocks. It is probable, that, in times of hard rain, the water must pour down here with great force; since, at the bottom of the fall, a deep

* All these places received their names from the colonists in the frequent shooting parties which they formerly made beyond the borders. In later times these expeditions have been prohibited by the government, and we were obliged to carry the tri-coloured Batavian flag upon each of our waggons, to shew that we travelled under government authority.

bason was hollowed out, which was now full of clear water. The stone which formed this bason was a soft kind of schist, veined with iron, in thin horizontal strata, sometimes running parallel, sometimes in a curved direction. The part exposed to the air had, in many places, a smooth, shining, dark-brown surface, as if it had been glazed. Among the plants which I found near the spring, in a somewhat green and flourishing state, the most abundant was *myrsiphyllum*, or *medeola asparagoides*. From the heights above our camp, we had, for the first time, a view of the Karree mountains, which, divided into three groups, formed the whole northern and north-eastern horizon, and, gilded by the morning sun, had a truly picturesque appearance. What renders these hills particularly distinguishable from hence is the number of summits, all of an equal height, and all flattened; each having a level of some hours at the top. We had here to encounter a pretty severe degree of cold, so that the water was frozen over by morning to the thickness of some lines, and could bear our youngest slave, a slight made lad of fourteen. So great, however, was the power of the sun, that, by ten o'clock, not a particle of ice was any longer to be seen.

According to the information given us at the Saek river, we might expect to find Captain Goedhart, with his people, in this part of the country; and abundant fresh traces of cattle and sheep, reminded us of him many times in the course of our journey this day. As, however, it was not probable that he would come first to visit us, it appeared desirable that we should endeavour to see him, which would be an indisputable proof of our confidence. I mounted my horse, therefore, with the most resolute of our company, Mong, Krieger, and Vischer, to seek for him; and that there might be nothing inimical in our appearance, we went entirely unarmed. Two Hottentots, who were particular adepts in the use of a gun, were ordered to follow at a distance, so that by a signal given they might soon come to our assistance, if required. The traces that we followed brought us soon to the foot of the Karree mountains, through many a valley, where our hearts certainly sometimes began to beat. After some hours, we came to the Schietfontein's river; and, pursuing our way along its shores, at length reached a plain, where the remains of fires, of bones, of dung, and other indisputable tokens, shewed that men had been here very recently. My companions, experienced in matters of this kind, said, that they could scarcely have quitted the place four-and-twenty hours. We

followed these traces still somewhat farther, and convinced ourselves at length that the Bosjesmans had directed their course entirely westward, that they might keep out of our way as much as possible. As the day, besides, began to decline, it appeared more adviseable to give up any farther pursuit, and rest satisfied with the assurance that the great horde of this Goedhart would not incommode us on our way. According to the quantity of tracks, our colonists estimated the cattle that they had with them at a hundred oxen, and three hundred sheep. With such a stock, the Bosjesmans become shy and full of fears, and are not likely to think of commencing an attack. They are not perfectly happy till all is eaten, and they are secure that their prey cannot be taken from them. Such a stock therefore does not last for more than a few weeks, since all the Bosjesmans, far and near, when they hear of the fare that is to be had, hasten to partake of it, and the company does not separate till every morsel is demolished.

We pursued our way through the long gaping vallies of the Karree mountains, to the river above mentioned, and rejoined our company at night, they having already pitched the tents by the Schietfontein at the foot of the largest and most prominent of these hills. A flock of hartebeests being met by the way, a Hottentot had shot one of them: as it was too late to carry it away the same evening, we covered it with some bushes which we tore up, and fastening a white handkerchief to them, as a little flag, we hoped that the lions and hyenas would be frightened by its waving about, and not venture to attack our booty. This is a very common experiment, but not always crowned with success: in the present instance it succeeded very happily: the animal was found the next morning untouched, and was brought home in safety to our camp. Near the river two of these animals were lying dead. From the bareness of their skins in many places, they appeared to have died of an eruptive disorder, which the colonists call *brandziekte*, and which often in very dry seasons carries off numbers of animals.

The Field-Cornet Olivier, and another young colonist who was to accompany us, had promised to follow in a few days, and were to overtake us, at the latest, at this place. Here therefore we stopped for a day, which I employed in a hunting party among the Karree mountains. I took as my associates some of our Hottentots who were the best shots; and as I had made myself acquainted

the day before with the country to the west, I now directed my course eastwards.

It is difficult to give an adequate idea of the desert wildness of these mountains. The rugged forms of the mountains in the Lower Bokkeveld, and the lofty jagged masses of the Black Mountains, with their deep wooded dells, astonish, and make an impression on the mind that is far from disagreeable. In these wide gaping vallies, on the contrary, where not a tree or a bush is to be seen, not a stream or a blade of grass, where the mountains around are in the form of a ball, a tower, or a table, where the naked trough-like appearance of the low-grounds contrasts with the wavy lines of the heights, and the smooth rounded sides fatigue with their uniformity,—in such a frightful solitude, the first impression made can be only silent melancholy and repugnance. The whole country may very well be compared to the sea in a violent storm, when the waves rise to a mountainous height, and naked vallies alone are stretched out beneath. The eye is carried between mountains through vallies stretched far beyond any distance that it can reach, and at every new turning a new labyrinth opens. Not a trace is to be seen of the valleys ever being trodden by human feet, yet in no direction is the way obstructed by rocks or woods. Not a plant thrives here which could furnish food to a man, were he driven to the utmost necessity, so that even the very Bosjesman flies these vallies; and there are probably many into which no human being ever yet entered. It is over a vast circuit that this mountainous ocean extends. As far as we could see the day before nothing else presented itself to our view eastward, and we were assured that the end of it would hardly be reached in six day's journey. The mountains run in a regular direction from west-north-west to east-south-east, and their flat summits appear to be the highest ground on the western side of Southern Africa. If the more distant mountains to the east, in which are the sources of the Orange river, and which no one has yet examined, may perhaps be higher, it is certain that the summit of the Komberg is only on a level with the valleys of the Karree mountains, these vallies being at a height of from eight hundred to a thousand feet. Whether the extraordinary form of the mountains, their equal height, the horizontality of their summits, the absence of all traces of any mighty convulsion, do not speak a very elevated situation, and a very

early emersion from the great deluge, I must leave to experienced geologists to determine.

Not without the most cautious observation to avoid missing our way in returning, did we proceed from one valley to another; and through what a length of them did we go without discerning the least trace of any living creature. At length one of our Hottentots remarked a narrow path which seemed to have been beaten by ostriches. This we followed awhile, when, at turning round an angle in the mountain, we perceived a flock of about thirty of these gigantic birds directly before us, and behind them a troop of quaggas, amounting to not less than eighty or a hundred.* As we approached them we were seen by the ostriches, who immediately took to flight, and were followed instinctively by the quaggas; for how different soever these animals are in their habits, they have a great attachment to each other, and are almost always found together. The quaggas follow the ostriches, as I have already mentioned, because the latter can see to so great a distance, and therefore sooner discern food or danger; the ostrich, on the other hand, likes to associate with the quagga, because his dung attracts a sort of large beetles, which are, to this bird's palate, great dainties.

It is impossible to restrain a young and eager Hottentot, fond of the chase, from firing whenever an opportunity is presented. Little did it signify, therefore, that I represented to my lad how wholly useless it was to fire at the quaggas, since we had at the moment an absolute superabundance of fresh meat; besides, we were at such a distance, that it would be impossible to carry any home. I encouraged him, however, to fire at an ostrich, because I wished to get the whole plumage of one, and all the most important parts of the skeleton. He made a circuit therefore on the slope of the hill, and came round the fugitives, so that he could with ease have taken aim at an ostrich; but the other was to him the more tempting morsel, and he brought down a

* The annexed plate gives a view in the Karree mountains which I sketched myself on our return. The general description of this country given above will best explain the print. Ostriches and wild-asses, cited in the Holy-Scriptures as emblems of solitude, are here given as the only inhabitants of these desolate regions. They are to be supposed flying from the hunters, who are behind to the left, out of sight, and to be seeking some still more remote part of the mountains as a place of refuge.

large quagga, even the skin of which we could not carry away. Just as I had collected together some few remarkable plants and insects, and we were about to make a retrograde movement, and seek our camp again, a large rhinoceros appeared in sight: at first it seemed to graze leisurely, but, as we approached, it suddenly trotted off with amazing velocity. It was late in the afternoon when I rejoined my companions, very much tired, but not ungratified with the seven hours that I had spent in these researches. Towards evening the weather became cloudy and rainy, and we had some difficulty to warm ourselves. The next morning the atmosphere was enveloped in a thick fog, and the ground was covered with a white hoar-frost; our tents were frozen quite stiff. We observed in the sequel that a like remarkable turn in the weather almost always took place at the change of the moon, but that it never continued above four-and-twenty hours.

As the sun broke out about noon, and the companions whom we expected to join us did not appear, we determined not to wait for them any longer, and proceeded on our way through the *Schietfonteins-poort;* so a narrow pass between the two principal groups of the Karree mountains is called. After some hours, we arrived at a large plain, inclosed with mountains, the summits of which had the absolute forms of cones and towers, and which might be about six miles in diameter. Some of our people, who were sent forwards with spades and pick-axes to level the worst places in the road for our waggons, having surprised a party of Bosjesmans, went up to them in a friendly manner, hoping to draw them into conversation; they, however, fled immediately, and vanished with incredible speed among the mountains.

To our great joy we remarked that the rain of the day before had been here very abundant, and that there was much more vegetation in the valley than in some parts through which we had passed. One shrub fell under my observation which was very remarkable; every twig from the root upwards, even to the smallest, came forth by three together, so that each one formed with those that stood by its side, as well as with the principal stem, an angle of a hundred and twenty degrees,—that is, the third part of a complete circle. This shrub is known to the colonists by the name of the *Tri-thorn;* it appears to be of the *Lycia* family, having this property in common with that tribe, that the end twig is always sharp pointed. As, however, not the least trace of fruit or flower was to be found upon it, I must leave it for future travellers to examine this

very remarkable plant, and determine its class. Some other shrubs of larger growth, which we had seen within the last few weeks, were also flourishing here in full leaf, but none were in flower. Farther on in the plain the flowers of some of the smaller liliaceous plants were already blown.

Here also the larger sorts of game, as hartebeests, elands, ostriches, and quaggas, were in the greatest abundance. Whole flocks of them were to be seen wherever our eyes were directed. We all dispersed ourselves about different ways upon our horses, and all succeeded in killing something. One of us having discovered a pool of water in the midst of the plain, it was determined that our camp should be pitched near it, so that the whole booty we had made might be safely stowed. When we reached the place, one of our waggons was entirely unloaded, fresh oxen were yoked to it, and it was sent round to collect the produce of our day's sport. Though all was not to be found, a very heavy load was brought home. Among the prey were two elands, that weighed, one seven hundred, the other five hundred pounds, with a hartebeest, several stone-antelopes,* and an ostrich. The latter I had shot myself.

Such a hunting party as this must be reckoned one of the principal amusements afforded by a journey through these solitary African regions. No great dexterity is requisite to find ample sport in a country abounding so with wild animals; a good gun and a well-trained horse, are the principal requisites for that purpose. Most of the colonists have horses so well-trained, that though little promise appears in their exterior, they are found to have acquired by long practice so high a degree of dexterity and understanding, that the sportsman rider has scarcely any occasion to guide or to stop them. When once well-accustomed to following the game, no sooner are they put into pursuit of one object in particular, than they never suffer themselves to be diverted from it by the intervention of any other: they follow that, and that alone, not with an eager pace, but a constant steady gallop, which by degrees wearies out the animal pursued. When they are got near enough to the object, a signal with the mouth is sufficient to make them stop, so that the rider may take his aim

* These two latter species of antelopes have too many systematic names for me to put them down here, without, at the same time, giving an ample justification of the familiar name by which I have commonly called them. I purpose, therefore, in another place to explain myself more fully with regard to the whole antelope species, and elucidate all these names.

securely. If the shot fails, the horse waits patiently till his master has loaded his piece again, and then resumes the pursuit with the same steady perseverance as before. Sometimes it is better to dismount to take the aim, but then the horse may be left entirely to himself; he stands perfectly still; nay, the rider may even rest the gun upon his neck or back to fire, and be assured that he will never move. Dogs are of little use in pursuing the game after this fashion, because the colonists do not understand how to train them sufficiently so as to restrain their ardour; and because they find it better for pursuing the lion and the tyger, that they should retain a certain degree of wildness.

The following morning was passed in salting and smoaking the best parts of our newly-acquired stores. The Hottentots, according to their usual custom, cut their shares of the flesh into small strips, and hung them upon the bushes to dry. The smell of this brought around us an incredible number of hungry ravens, *corvus albicollis*, which were scarcely to be driven away. From this circumstance our colonists gave the place, which as yet was without a name, that of *Kraayenkraal*. This day again we saw a vast deal of game very near us, but as they were only the same sorts of which we had already so great plenty, they were spared. The quaggas even came among our cattle as they were grazing, and fed quietly with them; a proof how little shy they are in a place where they are scarcely ever pursued. I had plenty of employment now for some days, in preparing the skulls, and other remarkable parts in the skeletons of the animals that we had taken, for being deposited in my collection.

The number of birds of prey, particularly the large vulture, increased so much, that we thought it better to make room for them, and at noon we proceeded on our way. Though we had left these voracious creatures abundance both of flesh and entrails, they soon followed us, and continued to do so during the whole of our journey. That they were always the same birds was proved, because, whenever we killed one, we invariably found in its maw some of the relics that we had left at our camp of the night before. After amusing ourselves very much with hunting in the course of the day, we came in the evening to a spring, now dried up, which has the name of the *Graftfontein*—the fountain of the grave; a name given to it because the brother of our companion Krieger lies buried here. While these two brothers, during

their banishment, lived among the Corans on the other side of the Orange river, they often used to go with the natives to shoot elephants. On one of these occasions they found several elephants together, which they began to chase in all directions. The elder Krieger had already killed one, and while the Corans were cutting it up, he went in pursuit of another which had been fired at. Probably he ventured too near, his shot failed again, and he was killed by the elephant. Certain it is, that when some of the Corans a few hours after went to seek for him, they only found his corpse lying on the declivity of a hill, dreadfully disfigured. Their first suspicions fell, not upon the elephant, but upon their hereditary enemies the Bosjesmans, a little horde of whom they had met at a spring. Without any farther reflections, they immediately sought them out, attacked them with their kirris and their hassagais, and put every one to death.

This horrible deed was performed before the younger Krieger returned from the strifes of the day, when too late he proved to them by the most indisputable tokens that his brother must have been trodden to death by the elephant. He then had the corpse brought hither for interment: it was deposited not far from the spring, and he raised a sort of wall over the grave, of pieces of slate stone piled together, intending it at once as a simple monument to his memory, and a defence to his remains. This wall being now somewhat dilapidated, he calmly occupied himself in repairing it, without appearing in the slightest degree affected with the recollections attached to what he was doing. The large elephant gun which he carried was the same that his brother had in his hand upon this disastrous occasion, and he pointed out a seam upon the stock as a proof with what eagerness the elephant must have trodden it to the ground. The death of this brother laid indeed the foundation of his receiving his pardon; since he now proved that the deceased was the contriver and instigator of the crime for which they were banished, that he had himself only been deluded into it as an accomplice. Thus it appeared, at least, from the act of pardon: he himself never said a word to us upon the subject. He indicated to me the place where the Bosjesmans were killed, and I went thither, in hopes of finding a complete skull; but the lions had broke all the bones to pieces, and strewed them about.

CHAP. XLIV.

Great want of Water.—The Salt Lakes.—Jokes among the Travelling Party.—The Modderfontein.—Several Meetings with Bosjesmans.—The Great River's Gate.—Arrival at the Orange River.—Description of this River.—Arduous Passage over it.—Visits from Bosjesmans and Caffres on the other Side.—Bands of Hottentot and European Robbers inhabiting the Country.—The Small-Pox reported to be raging among the Savages.

We now proceeded through another pass, which carried us entirely out of the Karree mountains; and, before the sun was gone down, we were presented with a view of their northern front. The country became, at every step, more level, more sandy, and more barren. Fresh traces of human footsteps, which we, however, found, occasioned us to press forwards; that, if possible, we might overtake those by whom they had been made. But our endeavours were useless. Towards evening, the cold became very piercing; and continued increasing, till at length we could not sit upon our horses. We were obliged to dismount, and proceeded on foot, as long as the moon afforded us light. Our horses seemed to feel themselves so much in need of our protection, that they followed us voluntarily: there was no occasion to lead them; not the least disposition was shewn by them either to go on before or to linger behind.

A hill, which had been pointed out to us as the boundary of our day's journey, was at length reached, at the moment when the moon was going down; but the spring, at which we had hoped to refresh ourselves and our cattle, was dried up: not a drop of water remained in it. We formed our little camp under the shelter of an immense wall of rock, and made a large fire, which revived us very much. During the night, we all kept watch by turns, with loaded guns, to guard both ourselves and our cattle against the lions, numerous traces of which we had seen in the sands. Soon after midnight the rest of our company arrived with the waggons. The oxen were

extremely fatigued, and had great need of rest; so that the want of water embarrassed us exceedingly. If in the next day's journey we were still to find the springs dried up, our situation would be such as to give much cause for reflection, and that not of a very pleasant nature. It was therefore resolved to send some of our people forwards, to examine the situation of the country farther on, that we might return back in time, if it should be found so unfavourable as to preclude the execution of our enterprise. While they proceeded on their way, we enjoyed, round our fire, as much rest as cold and thirst would allow us; and having become, by degrees, very much accustomed to hardships and privations, we resigned ourselves to our situation with tolerable philosophy. At three o'clock in the morning we set out again, that, in case of good tidings being brought, as little time as possible might be lost in taking advantage of them.* Many of the company condemned this haste as very imprudent, but they were obliged to comply. We had secretly resolved, notwithstanding any difficulties that might be presented, to penetrate at least as far as the Orange river. This, at the utmost, could not be more than three day's journey from the spot where we were; so that it was very little farther to go on thither, than to return again to the last spring we had quitted.

As none of our messengers were returned by noon, we began to cherish very pleasing presages, since it was agreed that one should return, and give us intelligence if no water was found in the first six hours. They had indeed discovered a spring; and a smoke, which began to be visible at a distance, rising from a fire they had made, soon converted our hopes into a joyful certainty. We hailed with shouts a little pool of dirty water, about ten feet in diameter; which, though supplied by a spring trickling so gently as to be but just perceptible, seemed to us an invaluable treasure. It was not without considerable trouble that we could restrain the horses and oxen, whose thirst had not been allayed for now nearly two days, till we ourselves had drank, and till they were somewhat cooled. The pool was then enlarged

* This place was called by our guides *Blesfontein*, though by others it is called *Buffelhout*, because a Coran Hottentot was once nearly trodden to death here by a buffalo. As the man had been lame from that time, the above name was given to him, and thence transferred to the spring.

and cleaned; but, notwithstanding this, the momentary supply was wholly exhausted, before the turn came for the last ox to drink.

Very near this place we arrived at a perfect plain, of some hours in circumference, which, in very heavy rains, is filled entirely with water, and resembles a lake. When it dries again, after having been thus overflowed, it is covered with a thick crust of natron. In this situation the valley so entirely resembles a frozen lake, that even in going over it, from the glitter of the natron, and the crackling of the salt under the feet, any one might easily be deceived into the belief that they were actually going on ice. The crust was in many places, particularly about the middle, where the moisture had continued the longest, from two to three lines thick, and might be broke off in large lumps. On every side the footsteps of game of various kinds were perfectly traced in the salt, so that I had to regret the brittleness of the crystals, which would not resist impressions. This place is generally called the Chalk Fountain, the base of one of the hills consisting entirely of a white chalk, while higher up it is composed of a variety of minerals running one into the other. By some the name of Jonkerfontein is given to the spot.

Our business, while we rested here, was confined to writing down our journals; to little excursions about the country; and to some domestic labours for the advantage of the whole party. As night closed in, the whole company assembled round a large fire near the camp, and weighed, in common, the hardships and dangers which had been surmounted, and those which the following day might bring. Not far from us several small fires had been made, and the slaves were occupied in preparing our supper. The Hottentots, more accustomed to the want of wood, were content rather to suffer somewhat from cold, than take the trouble of collecting bushes to make a fire. We found them even sleeping near our fire, and permitted our jovial young men to make a noise and frighten them, that they might recollect they ought to be upon the watch. While they were sitting half asleep, our wags went slily to a little distance, and shot a couple of arrows from a Bosjesman's bow. No sooner did the slumberers hear the twang of the spring, and perceive the shafts falling by them, than they sprang up hastily, almost tumbling over each other, to get their arms from the waggon. They were received there with a loud burst of laughter from the people about.

For this joke they afterwards took ample revenge. As the same young

men were amusing themselves one dark evening with setting fire to some dried reeds, about two hundred paces from our camp, and were vastly delighted with the crackling and sparkling they made, some of the Hottentots stole directly behind the reeds, and, with the shell of an ostrich's egg, imitated the roaring of a lion so naturally, repeating it three times, every time as if nearer than the former, that at length the young men, recollecting that these reeds were a favourite haunt of the lions, ran away, screaming violently, and came almost breathless to the camp. These, and similar kind of jokes, contributed very much to the maintenance of good humour, in a journey which was otherwise very monotonous. The evening was passed among us amid sportive sallies relative to the Bosjesmans and lions; among the colonists in singing hymns; and among the Hottentots with dancing and other pastimes. After supper we separated, some to our rest, some to mount guard.

About noon the following day we set off again; and, after travelling some hours, found the rest of the *avant-coureurs*, who had been dispatched in search of water. They were seated by a spring, which, like the former, was near a salt lake, and was strongly impregnated with natron. They had surprised a Bosjesman here, who, when they came pretty near him, ran away with almost incredible swiftness; but, after much search, he was found crouching under a bush, rolled up nearly as round as a ball. They took from him his weapons, and brought him to us. He told us, through the intervention of the interpreters, that he belonged to a little horde, whose usual abode was at the distance of some days' journey; and that he had been for several days out on the chase, but had not shot any thing: he therefore begged that his weapons might be restored. His arrows were examined, when only five were found fit for use, very slightly poisoned, and without iron plates. He asserted that he knew nothing of the robberies of his countrymen, nor of the situation of the people who lived farther up the country. As he appeared under great apprehension, it was signified to him that no injury should be done him; but that we would always be the friends of every one of his nation who abstained from robbery. His bow and arrows were then restored to him; and, as he gave us to understand that he was very hungry, a large piece of cooked meat was presented him to eat directly, and a quantity of smoked eland's flesh as store for his journey. He, however, devoured the whole immediately with the utmost dispatch, roasting the latter in the

ashes, while he was regaling on the former. He then begged for brandy and tobacco: the latter he stuffed into a reed, and smoked with such eagerness, that he was soon completely intoxicated, and fell down senseless. He had not puffed out the smoke as he inhaled it, but had swallowed every morsel. Our Hottentots rolled him about upon the ground; and nature assisting to throw up what affected him, he at length came to himself. He soon after began eating again, and evinced such complete satisfaction at the hospitality we had shewn him, that we proposed his accompanying us for the remainder of our journey, with liberty to quit us whenever he might wish it. He readily accepted the proposal, and immediately sought himself out a place near our tent, where he slept quietly the whole night. The next morning, however, when we were about to depart, he seemed seized with a sudden panic. At first he began to steal away slily and slowly; but soon, when he thought he was far enough, he set off running with such swiftness, that he was out of sight in a few moments.

The place where we had now stopped is called Modderfontein. It is remarkable from a row of hills which begin here, stretching a considerable way eastward, and which appear to be composed entirely of a pale green, semi-transparent quartz. No particular regularity of strata was to be observed; but here and there large masses seemed loosened from the general mass, and were either standing free, like pillars with their points erect, or lying in large cubical blocks at the foot of the hill. The exterior of the stone was in some parts more, in some less, affected by the weather. Many pieces had nearly lost their transparency: when fresh broken, they were still clear within, and every where interspersed with flakes of mica. The nearest hill to us was about a hundred feet high, very steep, almost entirely naked, with only a few plants growing upon the summit, or shooting out from the interstices. Among them I observed, with great pleasure, some of the larger aloe species; things we had not seen since we quitted the Bokkeveld. I considered this as an earnest that we were getting into a better country, and I did not find myself deceived in the expectation.

In an hour from our setting out, we came to a third valley, larger than either of the others, and, like them, covered with natron. At the farther end of the valley we discerned five men, whom, on examining them with our glasses, we determined to be Bosjesmans. I made my way up to them,

unarmed, taking an interpreter with me; and though at first they seemed disposed to fly, by calling and making signs, we succeeded at length in prevailing upon them to stop. They all wore little mantles of antelope skins, which served as a proof that they lived by the chase rather than by robbery. My companion employed all his eloquence in their language, to persuade them to go with us, but without success, till he gave them a little tobacco, and promised them plenty more, if they would come to our camp. On this they accompanied us, holding, by the way, an eager conversation with each other, which my companion could not understand entirely; for he remarked that they made use of a dialect very different from that of their countrymen on the borders of the colony. One said that they belonged to the other side of *'t Gariep*, so they call the Orange river, and had come hither only in pursuit of game. They had already shot, he said, two ostriches and an eland; and therefore proposed soon to return. When we asked whether they did not let their women partake of their booty, they answered that they had ants and locusts enough, so they had themselves eaten all they had killed. The spokesman had a good open countenance, with very small lively eyes, which sparkled with joy when the promised tobacco, and some brandy, were given to him and his associates. He was obliged to repeat every thing three times before he could make Vischer comprehend his meaning; and he found no less difficulty in understanding any question put to him. The language of these people had, indeed, a very different sound from that to which we were accustomed. They spoke in a very high tone, particularly in the last syllable of a sentence, which was uttered like a loud shout, and sunk, by degrees, into a low and faint tone. Some of these sounds continued even for four or five seconds. At taking leave they begged for more brandy, which was refused them; but instead of it they were regaled with roasted meat. We gave them also a live sheep to take to their wives and children. They seemed, however, not to think of going away, but ranged themselves round a fire to eat their dinner. In a short time a Hottentot came and told us that they had already killed their sheep, and were busied in devouring it. Indeed, their voracity excited in us the utmost astonishment. Without skinning the animal, they cut out large pieces, threw them, all bloody, into the fire, whence they soon withdrew them, and then began to eat, supplying their place in the embers with fresh pieces. The sheep was small, not weighing

more than about thirty-six pounds; yet it appeared scarcely comprehensible to us, that it was all devoured in less than an hour. Some of the entrails they kept, and had wound them round their legs. They remained at our camp all night, and went away early in the morning, without taking any farther leave.

We now arrived at a pass between two high mountains, which is called, by the colonists, the Great River's Gate. Here, for the first time since we quitted the Karroo, we saw some mimosas; and the place where we now pitched our camp appeared to us, on that account, very pleasant. The want of water was more easily supported, as we had brought some barrels of this necessary article from the place where we last rested, and we found good pasture for our cattle. Besides, the Orange river was not now at a great distance, and we were hastening forwards to reach it as soon as possible. Before we quitted the place, I ascended one of the hills: the chain, of which it forms a part, stretches to some extent from east to west, running parallel with the Great river. I saw, with no small delight, the vallies lying before us, displaying a richer verdure than any we had yet traversed: and, upon the declivity of the hill, I found several beautiful plants: some were even in blow. From all these things it was evident that we were getting into a better soil, and a more benignant climate. The plants were almost all new to me. There were not only succulent plants, such as the *quiver tree*, and others of the aloe tribe, but flowers of the finest perfume, and the richest hues, belonging to the tribes *justicia*, *salvia*, *acanthus*, *röellia*, and others.

The usual signal for our departure being given, that is to say, three smacks with one of the long colonist waggoner's whips, which may be heard to the distance of half an hour, I was too soon obliged to conclude my walk, and rejoin my company. I, however, found in our route, which lay through a wide spread valley, many things to attract my attention. Almost every object presented a new, and most a very striking, form. The greater part of the thickets were composed of a shrub with feathery leaves, and strong thorns curved backwards; by these, myself, as well as my Hottentot, were many times caught, as we endeavoured to seize some very fine beetles that were sitting upon the bushes; nor could we disengage ourselves without much difficulty, and having our clothes torn. Unfortunately the shrubs had not, at this time, either fruit or flowers. Krieger afterwards told us, that when

he quitted the country, he had carried cuttings with him to his own house, and had raised hedges from them, which, on account of the thorns, were impenetrable to all beasts of prey, even to the jackal. Besides these, I saw several sorts of *lycium* and *cestrum*, covered over with the most beautiful insects. Among the latter I particularly distinguished the *buprestis interpunctata*, and the *gryllus mola*. The former is one of the largest and most beautiful beetles of Southern Africa, the latter an animal of the most paradoxical conformation: both were hitherto wholly unknown to me. Upon these bushes I observed, in many places, a parasite plant, with very fine deep red flowers,* which was a real ornament to the valley. The rocks too partook of the same character of novelty as the plants. Several specimens which I brought with me have been classed by German mineralogists as entirely new mountain productions.†

Occupied as I was with such a variety of interesting objects, I lingered behind the rest of the party, and did not reach the banks of the Orange river till some hours after them; so that I found our camp already formed, under the shade of some tall trees. The sight of the river, a rapid stream, with its lofty banks richly shaded by trees, was most transporting to us, after travelling so long through a barren waste, often in want of water. The present low state of the water, and an island in the midst of the river, which concealed half its breadth from us, at first diminished very much, in our ideas, the representation given by our guides of the frightful depth and force of the stream. On examination, however, it was easy to see, that, under other circumstances, that representation would be found in no way exaggerated. The proper bed of the river is about twenty feet deeper than the nearest level ground; and

---

* M. Wendland, principal gardener in the botanic garden at Herenhausen, determined this plant to be a new species; and, to do honour to my little merits, gave it my name, under which it is described among his *Collection of Native and Foreign Plants*, Vol. II. Tab. 39. Professor Wildenow has, however, restored it to the species *loranthus*, from which it varies only in the number of its filaments.

† Under this description comes the true *fibrous quartz*, which the principal physician, Counsellor Klaproth, examined, and has described in the Magazine of the Berlin Society's *Friend to the Inquirer into Natural History for the Year* 1811.

the distance of the banks from each other in the broadest part, including the island, is, according to an accurate measurement, one thousand seven hundred and twenty Rhenish feet. The greatest part of this breadth was at present dry. Each arm that enclosed the island might have water to the breadth of a hundred and forty, or a hundred and fifty feet, at the utmost. The island itself may be about six hundred feet in breadth. It is evident to an accurate observer, that this whole breadth is sometimes entirely filled with water; that even the island itself is submerged. Bunches of grass were now hanging to the trees that grow upon it, and the banks bore fresh marks of the force with which the stream must have rushed along. Sometimes even, though very rarely, it overflows its high banks, and spreads itself over the surrounding country, quite to the foot of the nearest mountains. Some of our companions said, that they had seen it in this state four years before; and pointed out, as a proof of the truth of their assertions, some large trunks of trees lying at a certain height upon the hills on both sides, which must indisputably have been carried thither by the waters. The breadth of the river must then have exceeded a geographical mile; and, at a moderate computation, it must have risen at least fifty feet higher than it was in its present state. It would, however, be a great error to ascribe this prodigious inundation to the general immoderate swelling of the whole mass of waters. It arises from the stream being confined, about a German mile and half lower down, in a very narrow chasm between two steep rocks. At both ends of this streight, the hills stretch from the north and south so as almost to form a dam, and appear as if, in ancient times, they had enclosed a lake, the waters of which, by degrees, bore down this dam in the lowest part, and forced themselves a way through. If, as is sometimes the case during the summer months, violent and continued thunder-showers fall along the banks of the river, and among the hills to the east, this narrow chasm is wholly inadequate to affording a passage to the body of water which pours down; and, thus repelled from going forwards with the rapidity necessary for carrying it off, the water must spread itself out on each side. For this reason the waters rise higher just in this spot than in any other part. On the northern side of the river some remains are to be discerned of the old bed of a river: that is to say, the same pebbles are found there, in abundance, as those

which compose the upper stratum in the banks of the present river; namely, agate, jasper, and chalcedony. Some of these are very large, and of great beauty.

Many of the trees which ornament the banks of the river are of a considerable height. Among them may be particularly distinguished the *zizyphus mucronatus* of Professor Wildenow, vulgarly called the *buffalo's thorn*. The stem of this tree is rarely more than two feet in thickness. The branches are all set with thorns, which grow by pairs, the one of which stands erect, the other curves backwards. Lower down, on the steep banks, are mimosas, different sorts of willows, and *Karree bushes*. Among the latter the colonists include several sorts of *rhus*. Between these, and farther into the plain, are many shrubs, particularly of the tribes *lycium, cestrum*, and *zygophyllum*. To get down these banks to the river itself, it is best to follow the paths beat by the river-horses, in their nocturnal excursions on shore. Were not such evident traces of their ponderous feet every where to be seen, it would appear almost impossible for such an enormously massive body to get up an ascent so steep.

As we found the water uncommonly low, it was resolved to attempt the passage of the river without any delay, lest a sudden increase of it should augment our difficulties. After a careful examination, that we might be sure of taking the most commodious spot, and having, not without some trouble, made a path, we mounted our horses, and rode by the side of the waggons; while, for their greater security, we made some of our Hottentots strip themselves, and lead the oxen, that they might not swerve, in the slightest degree, to the right or to the left. One of the colonists, who thought all this caution by no means necessary, in going over a bank between the shore and the island, deviated from the direction we had taken, and fell into the hole of a river-horse, where he was in the utmost danger of being drowned: he was only extricated from his perilous situation by the extraordinary strength and dexterity of his horse. Two of our sheep were carried away by the stream, and drowned. The deepest place we found was on the other side of the island, where the water was nearly over the backs of our horses, and penetrated into our waggons. As we had some reason to apprehend this, all the goods had been raised and supported in the waggons, so that nothing was injured. No sooner had we accomplished our arduous task, and reached the

opposite shore, than we pitched our tents, resolved to rest for a day, and recruit our cattle after so much fatigue. Our guides, however, advised us not to stay here very long, since the fresh river-water might prove injurious to the oxen after they had been so long accustomed only to brackish water. We ourselves indeed found a great difference, and were forced in the end to confess that the river-water tasted vapid, and that the salt-petre water we had drank for some time quenched the thirst better.

On the following day, early in the morning, Krieger's large elephant gun was fired several times to notify our arrival to the Corans and Bosjesmans of the neighbourhood. After some hours, two Bosjesmans actually appeared, who saluted us with their *'t Abeh*, asked for some tobacco, and having received it, seated themselves behind a bush, by a little fire, to revel at their ease in the delight of smoaking. I devoted a considerable time to observing these men very accurately; and though, according to all that is related above, I must allow the validity of their claims to be classed among rational creatures, I cannot forbear saying that a Bosjesman, certainly in his mien, and all his gestures, has more resemblance to an ape than to a man. One of our present guests, who appeared about fifty years of age, who had grey hair and a bristly beard, whose forehead, nose, cheeks, and chin, were all smeared over with black grease, having only a white circle round the eye washed clean with the tears occasioned by smoaking,—this man had the true physiognomy of the small blue ape of Caffraria. What gives the more verity to such a comparison was the vivacity of his eyes, and the flexibility of his eye-brows, which he worked up and down with every change of countenance. Even his nostrils and the corners of his mouth, nay, his very ears moved involuntarily, expressing his hasty transitions from eager desire to watchful distrust. There was not, on the contrary, a single feature in his countenance that evinced a consciousness of mental powers, or any thing that denoted emotions of the mind of a milder species than what belong to man in his mere animal nature. When a piece of meat was given him, and half rising he stretched out a distrustful arm to take it, he snatched it hastily, and stuck it immediately into the fire, peering around with his little keen eyes, as if fearing lest some one should take it away again:—all this was done with such looks and gestures, that any one must have been ready to swear he had taken the example of them entirely from an ape. He soon took the meat from the embers, wiped it hastily

with his right hand upon his left arm, and tore out large half raw bits with his teeth, which I could see going entire down his meagre throat. At length when he came to the bones and entrails, as he could not manage these with his teeth, he had recourse to a knife which was hanging round his neck: with this he cut off the piece which he held in his teeth, close to the mouth, without touching his nose or eyes,—a feat of dexterity which a person with a Celtic countenance could not easily have performed. When the bone was picked clean, he stuck it again into the fire, and breaking it between two stones, sucked out the marrow; this done, he immediately filled the emptied bone with tobacco. I offered him a clay pipe, which he declined; and taking the thick bone a great way into his mouth, he drew in the smoke by long draughts, snapping his eyes like a person who with more than usual pleasure drinks a glass of costly wine. After three or four draughts, he handed the bone to his countryman, who inhaled three or four mouthfuls in like manner, and then stuck it, still burning, into his leather bag, to be reserved for future occasions. They both now looked at me with complacence, and seemed to divert themselves very much at my observing them with such eager curiosity. They did not leave us till we ourselves quitted the spot, but we could not obtain from them any information respecting their own countrymen or the Corans.

Soon after them appeared a numerous horde of Caffres—people whom we little expected to have seen here. When by means of our interpreters, we had held a conversation with the chiefs of the party, one of whom was called Oalela, and the other Gola, both being, as we learnt, nephews of Sambeh, we found that this party were emigrants from their own country, and had been now for a considerable time established in these parts. The interpreter who had taken the Dutch name of Danster, *(Dancer)* and who called himself the corporal of the horde, had left his country about ten years before with a large swarm of followers; but he had soon, with a select few, separated himself from the rest, and retired to this neighbourhood. After remaining here awhile, he was driven by want to seek refuge in the colony, where he hired himself to a farmer as his herdsman, while his companions in like manner each procured themselves some means of gaining a subsistence. Having learnt the Dutch language, and served till he grew tired of his situation, he collected the greater part of his band again about him, and established himself with them

upon the banks of the Great river; a part of the country which was become an asylum for all the rabble that were for any reason outcasts from the colony. Here he became acquainted with some of the followers of the wretched Hottentot Africanus, who was leader of the band that cut short the days of the worthy Pienaar, as mentioned in the first volume of this work.* The fear of falling into the hands of justice, after having been guilty of such a crime, induced the perpetrator to quit the colony entirely, and he retreated at that time to an island in the river, where he intrenched himself very strongly, and whither he always returned after a fortunate predatory excursion. With this man, Danster by degrees entered into so strong a friendship, that a plan was in agitation to unite their two hordes; when suddenly, in the absence of most of the Caffres, the few who remained were slaughtered by Africanus's band, and the women and children were carried away. Danster, too weak to revenge himself, sought, at least, to set the prisoners at liberty, in which he succeeded one dark night, when the robbers were asleep, after having celebrated a festival for some new victory, with dancing and brandy. He stole to the place, and got the women again into his power, but was betrayed too soon, before he was able to put Africanus, with his companions, to death as they slept; he was even obliged to leave the children in the power of this terrible Hottentot. From that time Danster did not dare to remain any longer in the neighbourhood of his former friend, but went farther up the river, where, after encountering for some time great vicissitudes of fortune, he met with a party of his countrymen, who had emigrated at a later period than himself, under the two abovenamed leaders. These people, although more than a hundred strong, united themselves with his little family, and placed themselves under his guidance. From that time they had gained but a miserable existence, partly with breeding cattle, and partly with the laborious pursuit of game, sustaining perpetual conflicts with the Bosjesmans, and constantly wandering about from place to place, though always returning, from preference, to the banks of the river.

We had scarcely entered into conversation with them before they began to exercise their country's charter, and beg of us, not only brandy and tobacco, but a number of sheep, that they might have a substantial dinner. Convinced

---

* See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 139.

that they would seize by force what they could not obtain by solicitation, we did not venture upon a positive refusal of their demand, but sought to elude it under different pretences. We soon perceived that the two chiefs seemed to have very little authority, but that Danster issued out his orders without referring in the least to them. Him therefore we sought to win by many secret presents, and by treating him with a distinguished courtesy of behaviour: by these means we at length succeeded in getting a release from the tribute required, upon a promise that at our return we would share with him whatever we might then have in our possession. Though we were now pretty well accustomed to hearing stories of murder and plunder, related as matters of little moment; to see a man's life considered as a trifle; so that in listening to such details we seemed only attending to things relating to national customs and manners;—how much soever this was the case with us, it was still not without great internal struggles, that we could suppress the indignation perpetually rising within us, so far as to treat in such a manner with a wretch like this Danster; for he gave us, with the most consummate audacity, and without the smallest reserve or appearance of shame, such histories of the murderous deeds which he had committed among the Corans and Bosjesmans, and talked of so many more which he projected, that we were quite chilled with horror. He also told us of a band of christians who lived farther up the river, subsisting entirely upon the chase and occasional plunder. From all the circumstances, and especially from the christian names of the leaders, which only he could repeat to us, we had no doubt that they were the brothers Bezuidenhout and the brothers Lochenberg, who, in company with some English deserters, had for many years led a vagabond life, and were proscribed by the government.* Danster farther talked of some christians whom he occasionally saw singly wandering about, whom, from the description of their cloathing, we had no doubt were deserters from the Dutch army. As we inquired about these with particular anxiety, he hesitated in his answer: he only assured us that we should not find them; so that we could not help suspecting that they had also fallen victims to his hardened soul.

* See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 330.—One of these names is there by mistake called Lochenhout, instead of Lochenberg.

I was much struck in contemplating the countenances of Oalela and Gola; with observing that they both squinted; a thing I had remarked in almost all the near relations of Sambeh. For the rest, the appearance of these princes was somewhat poor. Instead of the beautiful tyger-skins worn with so much parade by the princes during the conference at the Fish river, they had only garments of sheep and antelope skins, which were indeed of the Caffre fashion, but had holes in many places; a thing which a Caffre cannot endure. Their skin too wanted the shining hue usual in their country, and they complained to us, as a serious evil, that there was none of the proper dying stone to be found here, that they could only rub themselves over with fat and ashes.

One piece of information, however, with which the Caffres sought to dissuade us from proceeding farther, gave us more uneasiness than all the rest; this was that the small-pox raged very much among the people whom we proposed visiting, and that many persons had already died of it. Notwithstanding all our precautions, we could not keep this from reaching the ears of our African companions, who were already a little weary with the difficulties encountered in the journey; but this new danger threw them into such dreadful apprehensions, that they no longer saw any thing but inevitable death in the prosecution of our plans. In the year 1753, the small-pox had raged very much in the Cape Town, so that two-thirds of the inhabitants had been swept off; the very name of this disease had ever since been sufficient to make an African tremble, and we could not therefore blame our companions much for the anxiety they evinced. They declared that they were ready to encounter every danger with us, which might be overcome by courage and resolution, but to die of this miserable disease was so horrible to their imaginations, that they must renounce serving us any longer. We endeavoured to persuade them that the report was most probably an entire invention of the Caffres, who wanted to prevent our going farther, and that it would appear very foolish in us, if we suffered ourselves to be deterred from our purpose by a mere report, without examining into the truth of it ourselves. By such representations we at length succeeded in somewhat tranquillizing them; but the impossibility of returning without us, had I believe much more influence in determining them to proceed.

CHAP. XLV.

Departure from the Orange River.—Another Meeting with Bosjesmans.—Precocity of their Children.—A Hottentot Wedding.—Description of the 't Gorrah, a Hottentot Musical Instrument.—The broken Red Rock.—Striking Curve of the River.—Rencounter with some Missionaries.—John Matthias Kok.—Different Climate of this Country.—The Hottentot Republic.—Laauwaterskloof.—Mode of Worship of the Missionaries.

These Caffres were so little agreeable to us as neighbours, that, contrary to our original intention, we determined on breaking up our camp the very next morning, to proceed on our journey. The ford of the Orange river, where we had crossed, and which bears the Coranian name of Priskab, is very judiciously chosen for the purpose. The river here makes a curve in the form of an S, so that in the first day's journey we did not entirely quit its banks, but remained always upon, or at a short distance from them. The most northern part of this curve is four hours distant from the ford: but as we loitered a long time upon the road, and a part of our company did not return from the chase till late, we only reached it as the sun was fast declining.

I had, with some of our party, got to a distance from the waggons, in pursuit of a flock of gnus, and were returning back, when we met, in a little valley, with a Bosjesman family, seated under some bushes, who, to our astonishment, waited our coming up to them very quietly. Besides the old ape, who had visited us the day before, and who came towards us with the utmost confidence as acquaintance, there were four men and six women, with several young girls and little children. When we came up to them, they all shouted repeatedly, *'t Abeh*, *'t Abeh*, in which our old man joined; but, excepting him, not one of the party moved from the sitting or recumbent postures in which we first saw them. Soon after, they called, in a gentler tone, *Twak*, *Twak*, holding out their hands for tobacco. When we had dis-

tributed among them the little we had about us, the girls putting in for their share, as well as the rest, they all began to talk very quick: during which, they sometimes looked at us, sometimes rubbed the tobacco in their hands, and stuffed it into their bone pipes. Their conversation was apparently concerning us; but each one seemed only repeating his thoughts aloud, without any view to the rest listening to him, or answering him. A couple of young girls, who looked at us very roguishly, distinguished themselves particularly by the vivacity with which they spoke. They lengthened out the sound of the last syllable interminably; and, when it appeared as if their breath was wholly exhausted, after a pause to draw breath, they recommenced such a clattering, babbling, and snorting, that we were obliged at length to stop our ears.

An old woman now drew out a large root from the ashes, which I afterwards learnt was that of some water plant, and which looked savoury and good. She divided it with the other women; upon which they laid down their tobacco bones, after having taken in several very large quaffs of the smoke. The little children were extremely ugly, and no less shapelessly thick in the body, than the grown people were shapelessly lean. The skull projecting exceedingly behind, and the short hair growing very low down upon the forehead, gave them the appearance of hydrocephalus; and they had almost all such small winking eyes, sunk so deep in fat, that at first I thought there had been some general complaint in the eyes among them. In endeavouring to convince myself whether this was so or not, one of these children began to cry most piteously; and the mother seemed so little to understand my coaxing it, and patting it on the back to make it quiet, that she drew it to her with a distrustful air, and put it under her cloak. The whole party immediately ceased speaking, which we took as a mark of ill-will towards us: but we no sooner began to divide among them the few superfluities we had about us, as, for instance, some of the buttons which we cut from our coats, than their eloquence was recommenced.

Another thing which I remarked in the children was, in what an extraordinary degree, considering their age, they seemed able to help themselves. Quite young creatures at the breast crawled about in the sands, without any help; and many, who did not appear to be a year old, went alone, erect upon their legs: others but a little older, were grubbing about in the fields, to get

up the little bulbs, which they immediately ate. The prettiest among them were the children from eight to fourteen years old. The boys, who were a little older, looked already piteously lean, and their skin had that flabby appearance which characterises the whole nation. Among the men here, as was the case with the old *beard man*, their bellies were hanging down in folds. With some the skin of their breasts hung down also on each side, in such a manner, that, between this circumstance and the want of beard, it was easy in a person of years to mistake the sex. Having no interpreter with us, it was difficult to make them understand, by signs, that we invited them to visit our camp, where they should have some presents. It is, indeed, probable, that they did not understand it at all, although from their nodding their heads, and talking very loud, we supposed they did: for we never received any visit from them, nor did we see them any more. What we observed here, however, confirmed a remark which I have made before, that the Bosjesmans about the Orange river are the most gentle and sociable of any among their countrymen. At taking leave, we repeated to them their *'t Abeh*, that we might not go away in an entirely cold and unsocial manner: they, however, laughed, as they only salute each other at meeting, never at taking leave. They observed a strict silence as we quitted them, nor appeared to pay the least attention to us.

In the mean time it was dark before we reached the waggons, where we were expected with the utmost impatience. We were now again by the river side, but not in a place where we could go down to it, and we were therefore necessitated to proceed some way farther by moonlight. As there is no beaten track here, and the way was rendered much more difficult by the dry grass, and the deep gutters which ran down the hills to the river; —as, besides, one of our company had had the misfortune to fall into a pit made by the Bosjesmans for ensnaring the river-horses, from which, however, happily he escaped, without being materially hurt, the usual stake not being stuck into the middle of it,—all these things considered, we were at length obliged to resolve on stopping for the night. Our Hottentots, moreover, had begged very hard not to go farther, because they wished to celebrate a solemn festival this evening by the light of the full moon. At the Sack river we had taken into our company a Bastard Hottentot, who, with his family, was desirous of joining the institution of the Missionary Anderson. A sister,

who previously belonged to our company, soon pierced the heart of this new-comer; and, a few days before, he had requested, with all proper form and ceremony, our permission to make her his wife. Here, then, was the nuptial feast to be solemnized; and no sooner were the tents pitched, and the oxen properly taken care of, than all the Hottentots assembled round a large fire, to prepare their supper, and to enjoy, with singing and shouts of transport, a double ration of brandy, which was allowed them for the occasion. After supper they went through their usual sports round the fire: they had mock-fights, and concluded the whole, late in the night, with a general dance. These pastimes, however, had not much of national character, since the present generation of Hottentots in the interior of the colony have, in this respect, very much adopted the European customs. They seemed to pay little attention to the new married couple, and the whole appeared to be principally a pretence to have a frolic by moonlight, according to ancient custom.

The bridegroom was perfect master of playing on the *'t Gorrah*, one of the proper musical instruments of the Hottentots; one which is not now very often to be met with, and which is seldom well played upon but by old shepherds and herdsmen. It consists of a staff of hard wood somewhat curved, over which is stretched a long catgut string: at the lower end a quill is fastened to it, with a horse-hair, and by this only again brought into contact with the staff, so that it is in some sort insulated, and can sound of itself. The person who plays takes the quill in his mouth, and, by blowing stronger or weaker, occasions a vibration of the catgut. The whole has very much the appearance of the bow of a violin; and is, according to the above description, partly a stringed, partly a wind instrument. It is commonly played lying down, and the Hottentots seem scarcely able to play, but amid the tranquillity of night. They wrap themselves up comfortably in their skin, lay one ear to the ground, and hold the *'t Gorrah* commodiously before the mouth. In the latter weeks of our journey, the amateurs would sometimes amuse themselves with this instrument almost the whole night through, although they had been obliged to drive our loose cattle for nearly the whole day. We were, by degrees, so accustomed to the monotonous sound, that our sleep was never disturbed by it; nay, it rather lulled us to sleep. Heard at a distance, there is nothing unpleasant in it, but something plaintive and

soothing. Although no more than six tones can be produced from it, which do not besides belong to our gamut, but form intervals quite foreign to it, yet the kind of vocal sound of these tones, the uncommon nature of the rythm, and even the oddness, I may say wildness, of the harmony, gives to this music a charm peculiar to itself.

I venture to make use of the term harmony, for so it may indeed be called, since, although the intervals be not the same as our's, they stand in a proportion perfectly regular and intelligible, as well as pleasing to the ear. Between the principal tones and the octave lie only three intervals: the first is at least somewhat deeper than our great third: the second lies in the middle, between the little and great fifth; and the third between the great sixth and little seventh; so that a person might imagine he hears the modulation first in the smallest seventh accord. Yet every one lies higher in proportion to the principal tone; the ear feels less the desire of breaking off in the pure triple sound; it is even more satisfied without it. Practised players continue to draw out the second, sometimes even the third, interval, in the higher octave. Still these high tones are somewhat broken, and seldom pure octaves of the corresponding deep tones. Melodies, properly speaking, are never to be heard; it is only a change of the same tones, long protracted, the principal tone being struck before every one. It deserves to be remarked, that the intervals in question do not properly belong to the instrument: they are, in truth, the psalmodial music of the African savages. But to return to ourselves.

Our camp was pitched in a very dangerous place: directly before us was the stream, and directly behind a long steep wall of rock. If the stream should happen to rise suddenly in the night, as is not unfrequently the case, we should have had great difficulty to escape. Instances of such misfortunes, as I have remarked already, when speaking of the Gaurits river, are by no means rare on the banks of the larger rivers in Southern Africa; and the place where we were, as we had occasion to observe on the following day, is particularly distinguished for it. It will easily be comprehended, that, in a place where so powerful a stream takes, on a sudden, a completely contrary direction, the forms of the mountains must be very peculiar; and that they must bear upon them strong marks of the powerful effect produced by the stream working upon them through long-enduring centuries. The steep walls, indeed,

which compel the river to take this extraordinary turn are extremely picturesque. They rear their heads to a vast height, often curving like arches over the willows and mimosas which ornament the banks: vast blocks which have fallen, and between which these trees slowly and sparingly shoot up, display forcibly the vast power of the waters when they rise to a considerable height. From two deep chasms, which divide the chain of mountains into three groups, two periodical rivulets fall directly down into the main stream: their banks are thickly grown over with wood, and in the interior of the vallies are some very wild and bold cliffs. The first rock at the entrance of the southern chasm is of a very extraordinary structure; its strata are exceedingly broken, and sunk at the sides, but are united together again in their present situations by later concretions. For this reason travellers have given it the name of the *Red-broken-rock*, and this name is now extended to the whole spot. The stone of which the rock consists stretches in strata of a sort of slate deep into the river; it is of a fine blue colour, and is esteemed by the colonists extremely durable; they use it therefore very much, when it can be procured, for rubbing over their houses and walls, first oiling it well. Farther within the valley the rocks are covered with a sort of crust of a red yellow ochre, which proves that they contain a great quantity of iron; and almost every where the mass of the rock is interspersed with cubical iron stones.*

Early in the morning Krieger quitted the camp to seek out a horde of Bastard-Hottentots and Corans who formerly lived on the other side of the river. Towards noon he returned, without having found them; but he communicated the disagreeable intelligence that he had met with some missionaries, who came from the Briqua country, whence they brought no very welcome tidings: they had formed their camp just beyond the turn of the river, where they were waiting for us. We accordingly set out without delay, but were obliged to make a very long circuit through the mountains, to arrive

* The principal physician, Klaproth, who examined also this mineral, found it of so very distinct a nature from any other he had seen, that he pronounced it a new species of mountain, and gave it the name of *Blue-iron-stone*. Its particular hardness, and the durability of the blue colour, which resists fire, are very marked characters in it. An accurate account of its chemical properties, and of all its component parts, is given in the description published by Mr. Klaproth in the Berlin Society's *Friend to the Inquirer into Natural History* for the year 1811.

at a place which in a straight line lay at not more than an hour's distance from us. After ascending and descending constantly for four hours we arrived at the spot, when we saw the rocks, beneath which we had passed the night, as it were directly at our backs.

We were received by the missionaries Van-der-Lingen and John Matthias Kok, the former a Dutchman, who had only a few months before travelled to the Briqua country, the latter an African born, having lived four years among these savages. They told us that they had been under the necessity of quitting the country, on account of a war which had broke out between two tribes of the Briquas. Two other missionaries they said were also already on their return, and were only three day's journey behind them. They had both numerous families with them: the Hottentots were busied with making a sort of huts of mats between the wheels of the waggons. The disagreeable news of the small-pox having broken out among the savages, was confirmed by them; but they added that the disease was of a very favou able kind, and had already abated much. New terrors were now awakened in our camp. None of our African companions would venture to go near the missionaries for fear of taking the infection from them; nay, their apprehensions were carried so far, that they kept always to windward of the missionary camp, that the infection might not be wafted to them through the air. It was true, that not one among the missionary party was ill with the disease, yet as they had quitted the last village of the Bastard-Hottentots only three days before, some one of them might, unknown even to himself, carry the poison about with him, and might perhaps be taken ill the very next day. We did not say a word against these precautions, lest our good colonists should take a fancy to quit us, and join these people, who were retreating from the danger, rather than remain with those who were running into the midst of it: on the contrary, we commended their attention to preventing the infection from spreading, only representing to them, that in case of the worst they would be safer in our company, since we had medicines, and could take better care of them. The confidence which they had in my medical skill was on this occasion not without its use; the colonists did not the less, however, employ all their eloquence to persuade us to return. It was clear, they said, that our stay among the savages must be in the highest degree dangerous, since these messengers of peace had found themselves under the necessity of taking their departure so hastily. The

same reasons which had obliged them, they alleged, to quit the country, would render our stay in it impossible: one of Kok's Hottentots even whispered them that the king of the Beetjuans had come to a resolution not to suffer any more white men in his dominions, and that the missionaries had in fact been driven away.

Not without reason were we impressed with the suspicion that it was some disputes and jealousies among the missionaries themselves which occasioned their present journey to the Cape Town, or that they had attempted to exercise some str tch of power among the savages, which had ended in their being compelled to remove in haste. If either of these was the case, an additional and very urgent motive was here presented for continuing our journey, that we might execute the more amply the commission we received from the government, who expected to be fully instructed by us of the manner in which these same missionaries conducted themselves. To proceed with all possible circumspection, our apostles were the next morning questioned separately, and the questions and answers which passed with both on this occasion were drawn up by our secretary in a regular protocol for our use.

Van-der-Lingen first urged his ill health as the reason of his returning into the colony, then the want of means for the support of life, then the perverseness of the Beetjuans, who would not receive the christian instruction offered to them; at length he acknowledged, half unwillingly, and as if sorry afterwards that he had made such a confesssion, that both were driven away owing to the querulousness and thirst of rule shewed by the two last arrived missionaries: he added, also, the war between two tribes of the savages as a principal reason of his quitting them. Kok on the contrary asserted that he should never have thought of returning into the colony, since he found himself very comfortable among the Beetjuans, if he had not received an order to repair to the Cape Town to answer to some charges against him—charges which he asserted could only have been made by wicked calumniators. This order he said was brought to him by Koster and Janssen, and he was the more surprized at it, since these persons had also set out on their return, while he had yet proceeded but a very small part of the way.

These accusations gave us much light upon matters which particularly concerned the objects of our journey. To put Kok the more to the proof,

we told him plainly that nothing should deter us from going to the king of the Beetjuans, to learn from his own mouth all the proceedings of the missionaries in his country, and what restraints it would be necessary in future to put upon them. We were in want, however, of a guide, who was well acquainted with the country and with the language of the savages; and we could not dispense with his joining us, and returning to serve as our guide and interpreter. This he declared himself very ready to do, and added that he was upon such friendly terms with the king of the Beetjuans, that this king had indeed so strong a personal attachment to him, that he had good reason to hope he might render us important services. The only thing which troubled him was that he could not take his wife and children with him, and it was impossible to leave them in that desert country, among the Caffres and the Bosjesmans, without his protection. He however consented that they should join the missionaries, who were expected here in a few days, and travel with them to the Sack river, where they might wait his rejoining them.

We were followed even hither by the Caffres, who put our patience to a very severe trial by their continued and importunate begging. That they might not become too heavy a burden upon the poor missionaries, we gave them several live sheep, and presented them also with some trifles; this however did not prevent their continuing to beg. We had besides again some Bosjesman visitors, as well men as women and children: the men were well armed with an ample store of strongly poisoned arrows, and Beetjuan hassagais. The girls and children had a bald circle round their head, and their hair and faces were thickly powdered over with the dust of a deep yellow iron ochre: they seemed not a little delighted with this decoration. We gave them an opportunity of evincing their voracity, offering them many things in exchange for their bows and arrows. They hesitated extremely what to do, and appeared very suspicious of our having insidious views in making such offers.

I earnestly recommend to the notice of travellers, who may hereafter visit this country, a lovely spot upon the high banks of the river not far from this place. There, seated under the shade of a venerable buffalo-tree, which must have weathered the blasts of centuries, he may enjoy a large extent of prospect over the quiet stream that glides below. Its course may be seen for half a German mile upwards, and its curve downwards may be followed

beneath the high dark walls by which it is enclosed, as far as the Red-broken-rock. The shrubs on either shore, newly clothed with green, the clear watry mirror, whose smooth surface is only broken by a rocky cliff, against which the little billows dash with a pleasing murmuring noise, give, all together, a tranquil and soothing feeling to the heart, which, amid this inhospitable, rude, and barren waste, is a real and solid blessing to the traveller.

The necessary preparations for continuing our journey were now made. Some of our young oxen were slain, and salted; a quantity of bread was baked; candles were made; bullets were cast; a number of axle-trees for the waggons were provided, by cutting down some of the largest trees on the banks of the river; a quantity of powder was distributed among the men, &c. &c. In order to provide ourselves with a supply of bread in our journey, a quantity of flour was among the stores contained in our waggons. An oven for baking it could always be made in a very short time. Our Hottentots used to dig a hole from four to six feet in diameter, in the nearest dry bed of a river, where the soil was the most disposed to clay. It was not very often, however, that we could find wood enough to heat such an oven.

On the fifteenth of June, early in the morning, we set off from the Orange river. It was a clear frost, and the ground was thickly covered with a white clothing. The country was tolerably level: only low gentle risings varied the scene, with large widely-stretched plains. The land appeared, at every step, to increase in fertility: the foliage of the bushes was thicker, the green of it was more vivid, and the trees were less stubbed, than on the southern side of the stream. Large tracts were furnished with what, at some seasons of the year, must be long good grass; but at present it was dried, and our cattle could still find little nourishment, excepting the same succulent plants on which they had been obliged to feed in the desert. All the sorts of grass that I saw were new to me: they seemed, for the most part, to belong to the families of *poa*, *melica*, *aristida*, and *andropogon*.

The climate of this country is strikingly different from the more southern district, which forms the colony of the Cape: it resembles much more that of the Koossa country. In winter, the season at which we now were, a dry fresh cold, with a serene air, seems to prevail. In the night, and more especially towards sunrise, the thermometer sinks below the freezing point;

still, as far as my experience goes, never lower than twenty-seven degrees, by Fahrenheit. In an hour after sunrise, the frost is commonly melted entirely; and, by ten o'clock, the weather is warm, like summer. At noon, the sun's rays are even oppressive; but in the shade it is cool: for a steady equal north wind blows over the plain. This is the almost daily tenor of the weather, without any variation. At a change of the moon alone, and particularly at the new moon, did we remark, in all the three months of our journey, any striking variation: never at any other time. As a prelude to this change, the wind first veered a little towards the west, and settled at length in the north-west. The air was heavy, the frost was thicker in the morning, and snow or rain fell: the weather, however, cleared again about noon; and, in the evening, the wind returned to the north. In one instance, the bad weather continued two days; and the situation of us poor nomades, particularly of the Hottentots, who slept out in the open air, was then really pitiable. But our oxen and horses were the severest sufferers: the greater part of them, in fact, died, some sooner, some later, of cold and hunger. In August and September, the weather is again warmer; the south-wind begins to be prevalent, but the weather continues dry till the setting in of the hot months, when, from the heavy thunder-showers that then prevail, the spring may properly be said to commence. These storms occur several times in the week, sometimes for many days successively, and produce a vegetation, which, according to the account given us by the missionaries, for rapidity and luxuriance, exceeds all description. A short time before the storms come on, the heat rises to an almost insupportable degree; but it cools again the moment the thunder-clouds begin to gather, even in the distance. The autumn months are again dry, with a considerable degree of heat, of the most disagreeable kind, the missionaries said, in the whole year. In this, and in the greater degree of cold in the winter, which must be ascribed to the high situation of the country, the climate differs from that of the Koossas.

After a long day's journey, in which several elands, and other game, became our prey, we arrived, late in the evening, at the first village of the Bastard-Hottentots, where we were received by the heads of the principal families, and by the missionaries Koster and Janssen. The place is called Laauwaterskloof, or sometimes, more familiarly, Bastertskloof. By the Corans it is

called Aa 't kaap. It is one of the six villages of the Hottentot republic which has been formed under the patriarchal government of the missionaries. The whole nature of this remarkable establishment was not perfectly understood till our journey. That such a thing existed at all, had only been known within a few years. Reports not very favourable to these men having reached the government, one of the objects of our journey was to examine into the real situation of the establishment, and give an exact account of it.

Colonel Gordon, at his journey to the Orange river, found a little colony established here of emigrant Bastard-Hottentots. But neither through him, nor through any other traveller into these parts, was more known of them than that they were clothed after the European manner; that they were converts to Christianity; that they lived by breeding cattle, or by the chase; that they had good fire-arms in their possession; and that they obtained powder and ball, with other necessaries of civilised life, by a traffic in elephants' teeth with the inhabitants on the northern borders of the colony. This trade for powder was considered as very dangerous: the Hottentots, it was said, were overreached in it in the grossest manner. It was secretly carried on by some citizens at the Cape Town, through agents on the borders. They bought the powder from foreign ships that touched there, and gave the elephants' teeth in exchange, at a moderate price; thus underselling the East India Company, who had formerly the monopoly of this trade. It was thought, besides, not a thing to pass over unnoticed, that such a number of men should be collected together at the very back of the colony, furnished with European arms, without being under the regular controul of the government. Some English missionaries were sent thither in the time of the former government, and remained there without farther permission. These people exerted themselves strenuously to keep the little state true to the interests of his Britannic Majesty, and that power was constantly prayed for in their daily offices of public worship. It was supposed that they waited only for information of the English having landed, to break loose entirely from the Dutch government. This last assumption, the absurdity of which was self-evident and glaring in the extreme, had attracted the attention of the ruling powers, less on account of itself, than because it led

to an investigation into the nature of the secret traffic for powder; and this was a principal cause of the inquiries we were directed to make concerning the institution itself. The amount of what we learnt is as follows:

A considerable tract of land, including about two hundred square miles, is inhabited by nearly a thousand men, whose regulations as a community, and whose habits and customs exhibit a curious intermediary state between savage and civilised life. They have only recently begun, under the conduct of some shrewd and understanding missionaries, to unite in one general and firm bond of union. Most of them are Bastard-Hottentots, descended, in part, from old Christian families. Perhaps some elucidation may here be necessary. In the middle of the last century, when the country north of the Elephants' river was first peopled, when the customs and manners of the colonists had degenerated less from European manners and customs than they have at present, reciprocal necessities, and more pure religious feelings, united the colonists and the Hottentots in their service more closely together than they are now united, when, in spiritual cultivation, they approach so much nearer to each other. I say, approach so much nearer, because I am afraid it will be found, that, while the heathens have advanced a step upon the ladder of Christianity, the South African Christians have descended a step lower. At that time the Hottentot was considered as a member of the family, which was governed patriarchally by the head of it. The daily exercises of devotion were celebrated in presence of the whole assembled flock. The children of the Hottentot women, in whose veins Christian blood often flowed, were educated in Christianity: they learnt to sing psalms, and to read; and were, even to receiving the sacrament of baptism, as good Christians as the pure offspring of the Europeans. At the death of one of these heads of families, his servant would often assume his name; and not unfrequently sought himself some little spot, to which he retired with all belonging to him, and gained a subsistence for himself and his family by the breeding of cattle. No quit-rent was paid by him to the government: they perhaps did not know of his existence, or thought that a Hottentot had better be exempted from taxes, the imposition of which might have been considered as a tacit acknowledgment of his right of citizenship.

Many Hottentot families of this description had established themselves in the Lower Bokkeveld, when the increasing population of the colony occa-

sioned new researches to be made after lands capable of cultivation; and the white children of the colonists did not hesitate to make use of the right of the strongest, and to drive their half yellow relations out of the places where they had fixed their abodes. These Bastard Hottentots were then obliged to seek an asylum in more remote parts, till at length, driven from the Sack river, as they had been before from the Bokkeveld, nothing remained for them but to retreat to the Orange river. Here, united more and more every day in a community with each other, their former ties with the Christians growing every day weaker, yet retaining the customs, manners, and opinions which they had imbibed among them, in the utmost purity, they became at length what we found them. It must, however, be acknowledged, that they would not have arrived so rapidly at the degree of cultivation they had then attained, without the intervention of the missionaries, who found the means of making an easy and pleasing impression upon them. When Kicherer founded his institution at the Rietfontein, in 1801, his principal merit consisted in nothing more than in preaching to the Hottentots already established in the country, who had been educated in Christianity; in building, with their assistance, a rude kind of church; and in leaving, when he quitted them after a stay of some months, his assistant Kramer to take care of their souls. His undertaking had, however, the happy consequence, that the families who had hitherto been scattered about, united under his instruction. One pandok after another was constructed, till at length a little village arose. With them were soon united several hordes of pure Hottentots, who lived wandering lives along the banks of the river, under strong suspicions that their hands were not wholly free from robbery and plunder. But these men brought with them no means of subsistence: their only idea was to live in indolence: they expected to be maintained entirely by the Bastards, who were anxious for their conversion. To these were added rabble of every kind, free blacks, and slaves who had escaped from their servitude; some even of Africanus's band were to be found among the motley assemblage. The pretence for joining the institution was always a desire to be instructed in Christianity; but the fact was, that they found it pleasanter to lead a wholly idle life, than to give themselves the trouble even of robbing and plundering to obtain a subsistence.

Among the members of these institutions were accordingly Hottentots of

every tribe and every description. I was much rejoiced to hear from many of them that they were Namaaquas, and had wandered hither ten years before, on account of the drought. The numbers that settled to the south of the Orange river were never considerable: the whole could, at no time, consist of more than four kraals. It was therefore extremely natural that Mr. Barrow, in his journey in 1797, should have sought for them in vain; and it was very hasty and unjust in him to assert, that the whole nation of the Little Namaaquas had been entirely destroyed by the colonists. Besides these, we heard the names of several other tribes which have been long lost in the colony, and are only now to be found in the narratives of former travellers,—as the Giriquas, the Cheisiquas, and others.

The impossibility of finding subsistence for so large a number of people on the same spot, soon began to be manifest. They therefore scattered themselves about, moved from one pasture ground to another, and only assembled all together on a Sunday, when the missionaries held a meeting for public worship. This wandering, unstable life was liable to very great objections; so that the first efforts of the English missionary Anderson, a very worthy man, who came hither in the year 1803, were directed to establishing them in fixed habitations, and turning their attention to agriculture. For this purpose, he divided the whole population into six parts, who were distributed in the like number of villages, under the names of Laauwaterfontein, Rietfontein, Witwater, Taayboschfontein, Leeuwenkuil, and Ongeluksfontein. Here the persons of most distinction among the Bastard Hottentots were appointed as magistrates to inspect and take care of the rest. Anderson, with Kramer, performed the office of pastors.

It cost, however, no small trouble to make the pupils comprehend, that breeding cattle would never suffice for their sustenance; but that agriculture, and the improvement of the meadow lands, could alone secure them against the danger of losing all their stock in years of drought, and at length dying themselves of hunger. Some, indeed, did begin to plough small portions of land; but most of them considered this as wholly superfluous, till the dry year of 1803 drove them to the necessity of wandering into the more northern parts with all their cattle. On this expedition they were conducted by Anderson himself. When they returned hither, at a more propitious season of the year, the prudent missionary immediately sent a waggon to the

Roggeveld to procure seed corn: implements of husbandry were also procured, in part, from the same quarter, while some were of necessity made on the spot, in the best manner that the means would admit of. Thus, in the first year, a tract of land, of fifteen acres, was rendered cultivable; and, notwithstanding that the season was somewhat dry, the ground was rendered so fertile by means of having water conveyed to it, that, on an average, the corn yielded a hundred fold. This fortunate experiment had the desired effect, so that in the very same year corn was sown in all the six villages, and succeeded admirably. The pure Hottentots could not, however, the more be persuaded that it was incumbent on them to assist as volunteers in the task: they contended that they ought to be hired by the Bastards for the service, and receive wages proportioned to their work.

The place where we were was inhabited by about thirty families, of which one half were Bastards, the rest were Namaaquas, and Hottentots of the Great river, as they are called. The former lived in large clean huts, and were clothed in linen or woollen cloth; the latter lived in dirty pandoks, and had skins thrown over them. The Bastards almost all bore names well known among the colonists, and each family had considerable herds of cattle, of mor than a hundred head. In their behaviour there was a certain good-natured ostentation, a sort of vanity, which seemed to shew, that they considered themselves as much superior to the rude Hottentots. Towards us, however, they were uncommonly polite, and often assured us that they knew perfectly well what was due to the ambassadors of the government. They therefore mingled abundantly in their conversation the term *Edele Heer*, (Noble Sir,) as was the form of addressing the members of the government in the time of the Company: and on the following morning, which happened to be Sunday, the whole population of the village, Hottentots included, came in procession, and defiled before us, first the men, then the women, as we stood at the entrance of the tent, to receive their compliments. These compliments consisted in each one stopping, making a low bow, and pronouncing very slowly, *Good morning, noble Sirs.* Some of the most distinguished added a long welcome, and wishes for our happiness. Afterwards they modestly enquired whether we had brought with us any old clothes, or linen and woollen wares for barter. There is nothing of which they are so much in want as a regular supply of clothing, and they are ready to pay a good sum

in cattle by way of exchange. To the speakers and their wives some of the things asked for were distributed in the way of presents: the rest made various purchases of our people, who had brought with them, upon speculation, many of the articles required. Their clothes were so well made, and their linen was so clean and white, that we could not contemplate them without astonishment: the more so, since the times having been bad, and every thing very dear, many, even of the colonists, were clothed only in garments of antelope leather. They explained to us, however, that they had procured a great deal of linen and woollen cloth from the English, when they were in the country, by way of barter for their cattle.

On the same morning the missionaries held a solemn meeting, in the open air, for public worship; since, otherwise, the families living here must have gone to attend church either at Rietfontein or Leeuwenkuil. A psalm was first sung, which the whole audience knew by heart, and which was accompanied by the two missionaries with the violin and clarinet. One of them then laying aside the instrument, preached a long, drawling, heavy sermon, from Klinkenberg, a celebrated preacher in Holland; the matter of which was far beyond the comprehension of the assembled auditors. The service was closed with a general hymn.

Immediately after this ceremony we held a conference with the missionaries. They were both young, and not long arrived from Europe, and made a great parade with explaining their principles. It was never their idea, they said, to make mere devotees of the savages, but to infuse instruction into their minds by mild and pleasing impressions, particularly by the aid of music. One of them had been formerly assistant to a surgeon at the Cape Town, and boasted much of the happy effects which had been produced upon the minds of the savages, by some cures which he had performed among them. As these men had only left the Cape Town a few months before us, we expressed our astonishment at finding them so soon on their return. Those by whom they were sent, we observed, could not be pleased that a journey, the expences of which must have amounted to several thousand dollars, should have served no other purpose than to procure them the casual sight of a country, and a people, whose instruction and civilization they had engaged to undertake: we must, therefore, be particularly anxious to know the reason of a step, which, as appeared upon the face of it, was so little to be justified. Upon this, they

gave us in substance nearly the same account we had heard from the others: adding, that they, as Europeans by birth, and as having received a liberal education, must inevitably feel the necessity of living in an orderly and comfortable manner; that they considered it as their duty, in collecting the savages around them, to set them an example of cleanliness, of order, and regularity, both in their houses and their persons, not to level themselves with them, and occupy themselves in the troublesome unchristian business of hunting: this latter occupation might do very well for rugged colonists (pointing to Kok), but would not do for missionaries sent from more civilized parts, to instruct the savages no less by their example than by their doctrine. Such a peaceable and respectable mode of life, they proceeded, had however been found impossible, and they had been able but poorly to fulfil the purposes of the missionary institute at the Cape, by whom they were deputed. No other alternative remained to them but either to die with hunger, or, contrary to their principles, to take arms into their hands. To the latter, though reluctantly, and unpractised in the use of such weapons, they had been obliged to have recourse: war and scarcity had followed, and the king, how much soever he wished to retain them, had not been able to furnish them with any support in procuring the means of subsistence.

From all this, it was evident that these men had represented to themselves that the business of convert-making would afford them as easy and quiet a life as that of a good country parson; that they conceived the savages to be as much bound to provide them with the necessaries of life, as if they had been their chosen confessors. One of them had besides a young wife, who, born in the Cape Town, probably did not find the privation of her accustomed ease and conveniences very much to her taste, and wished therefore to return home as soon as possible. That all their reasons for returning were unsatisfactory, appeared clearly in the sequel, since they had a sufficiency of European goods by them to exchange for food. And why could not they, as well as Kok, have had recourse to the plough or to breeding cattle, if they found the chase too severe labour for them? Above all things, why did those by whom they were employed think of sending out such poor creatures, not even inspired with sufficient enthusiasm to sacrifice their usual ease and comforts in fulfilling the objects of their mission?

It always appears to me that the African colonists who devote themselves

to convert-making succeed much better with the savages, though they may not be so deeply read in the doctrines of christianity, than most of the European missionaries. They are accustomed to a solitary life, they are in habits of intercourse with these people, they learn their language with facility, they easily fall into their modes of thinking, they know the nature of the country; and from this knowledge are better enabled to make use of its productions, and to turn the fertility of the soil to a good account. It is true, that most of those who undertake the task, do it only with the view of gaining a subsistence, being too poor to purchase a place in the interior of the colony. But while they obtain among the savages as good a subsistence as an ordinary African peasant obtains, their converts receive a full equivalent in becoming acquainted, through them, with many of the advantages of civilized life, no less than in being instructed in the doctrines they come to preach. This was the case with Kok and the rest of the missionaries connected with him, how much soever they might be decried by these new-comers: they did more real essential good among the Beetjuans, than all the rest put together. In the sequel, he alone of the whole body returned into the country: most of the others, after wandering about for a long time, at length established themselves, some in one place, some in another, as citizens, gaining their livelihood by pursuing some mechanical occupation..

The two missionaries here, on being sent away by the king of the Beetjuans, understood that he would no longer suffer any christian to come into his country, but would immediately drive back those who might attempt it. They therefore counselled us earnestly to return, warning us against the inimical views of these suspicious and artful people. We thanked them for their cautions, but earnestly intreated them not to hint any thing of this kind to our companions. Kok, whose counsel we asked upon these matters, said it was very true that the Beetjuans were prone to anger, artful, suspicions, and warlike, that he could not therefore be answerable for our visit being attended with happy consequences, yet he thought that he knew the king of the Beetjuans better than the other missionaries did, and he was inclined to think that there was no reason to entertain apprehensions as to the event. In any case, he said, he was ready to go first himself, and learn how our visit would be received.

When we questioned the missionaries about the Bosjesmans, they said that they had been extremely molested on their journey by numbers of them,

and had found it no easy task to defend themselves against them. Their whole herd had once been seized by these savages, and it was only by a sort of miracle that they were recovered. Part of their company were at the time absent in pursuit of a giraffe, and without knowing any thing of the robbery, answered the signal of alarm from the camp; the Bosjesmans on this thought they were surrounded, and fled in the utmost haste, leaving the cattle behind them.

The account of the small-pox having broke out was here fully confirmed. It had prevailed very much for several months in all the places belonging to Anderson's Institution, but it was of a very favourable kind, since on an average not more than one in twenty-five of those infected had died, although no other remedies had been employed than native emetic and cathartic plants, and after the disease was nearly over, drinking pure whey. I found some persons still ill, and was not a little surprized to recognise all the characters of the true gennine small-pox: till this ocular conviction, I had believed that it was some other eruptive disorder, to which that name was erroneously applied. According to the universal testimony, the disease was brought hither by the Corans from the interior of the country, among whom, as well as among the Caffres, it is known to have been prevalent at various times. The oldest Bastard-Hottentots, having gone through the disease on a former occasion, were exempt from it on this; many of them were indeed strongly marked with it. This dreaded disease had therefore for several generations been frequently in the neighbourhood of the colony, without the inhabitants having concerned themselves about it. The few people whom we found marked with the small-pox among the Koossas, had, as it was generally supposed, received the infection from the crew of a ship; but here we suddenly found the same malady very far in the interior of the country, among a people with whom the inhabitants of the coast had so little intercourse, that they scarcely even knew of their existence; and these people asserted that the malady was brought to them from the north, whither the traditions of the Caffres equally traced it. Certainly this is remarkable enough, and the matter seems well worthy the investigation of future travellers, since the conjectures respecting the true native country of so destructive a disease may receive much elucidation from such researches.*

* I have given my ideas upon this subject more amply in *Hufeland's Medical Journal* for the year 1810, Vol. 33.

There was no occasion to give any warnings, or to issue any prohibitions to our people, against holding communication with those who were ill; they, however, received an useful lesson that the disease was not so formidable and so fatal as terror had pictured it to their imaginations: they saw also that in our mode of travelling effectual precautions might easily be employed so as to obviate all danger of taking the infection. We had therefore now no great difficulty in persuading them to continue the journey. In order, however, that the disease might not be carried into the colony, and spread there, written orders were given to the missionaries, that in case the small-pox should break out among their people, they were not to pass the borders till a fortnight after the perfect recovery of the last person infected; a precaution, which, as we learnt afterwards, was by no means superfluous.

We made use of the favourable disposition of the Bastard-Hottentots towards us, and their attachment to the government, to solicit from them fresh teams of oxen for our waggons. Our request was readily granted, and in a few hours all the best oxen from this and the neighbouring villages were collected together, while others were to be ready to meet us as we proceeded on our journey. Our lean, and almost exhausted cattle, which we had brought from the Roggeveld, were left under their protection till our return, and they promised that the utmost care should be taken of them.

CHAP. XLVI.

Departure from Laauwaterskloof.—Enormous Swarm of Locusts.—Some Remarks upon these Animals.—The Rietfontein.—Account of Cornelius Kok.—Probably known to Le Vaillant.—Description of the Coran Hottentots.—Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot Villages.—Vast Quantity of Wild Animals.—Witwater.—Leeuwenkuil.—The Missionary Anderson.—Account of his Institution.

As our business here consisted principally in obtaining a complete list of all the heads of families, with the places of their birth, their former modes of life, and the number of their children, this being concluded, on the seventeenth of June we proceeded on our journey. We had scarcely passed the northern entrance to the kloof, when we perceived by our side one of those enormous swarms of travelling locusts which I had hitherto wished in vain to see. It had exactly the appearance of a vast snow-cloud, hanging on the slope of the mountain, from which the snow was falling in very large flakes. I spurred my horse up the hill, to the place where I thought the swarm seemed the thickest. When I was within a hundred paces of them, I heard the rushing noise occasioned by the flight of so many millions of insects: this constantly increased the nearer I approached; and when I got into the midst of them, it was, without any exaggeration, as loud as the dashing of the waters occasioned by the mill-wheel. Above, below, and all around me, the air was filled with, and almost darkened by these insects. They settled about the bodies of myself and my horse, till the latter was so much teased and fretted, that he became extremely restless, turning his back constantly towards the side on which their flight was directed. Every stroke of the riding-cane swept twenty or thirty to the ground, and they lay there so thick that it was impossible to take a step without trampling a number to death. I gathered up some for my collection, but found them all injured; even those who flew before me were obliged almost immediately to settle themselves. Those that settled were indeed only the wounded of the party, such as had a leg or wing broken in their flight by coming in contact with their neighbours:

these formed a very small part of the whole enormous mass. Those that flew the highest, rose to fifty or sixty feet above the ground; those which did not rise to more than twenty feet, rested at every hundred paces, and then flew on again. They all took exactly the same course, not going with the wind, but in an oblique direction against it, directly towards the fields of the Hottentots. I was very much alarmed for the young corn; but on my return I learnt that the swarm had done no mischief; it had gone over at the distance of a thousand paces from the fields. They never deviate from the straight line, so long as the same wind blows. The bushes around were already eaten quite bare, though the animals could not have been long on the spot, since an hour earlier our oxen had been grazing, without the persons who attended upon them having seen a single locust. Finally, that I might complete my survey, I rode against the swarm so as to pass them, and found that the train extended in length to between two and three thousand paces; in breadth it could scarcely exceed a hundred.

It is difficult to conceive how so prodigious a number of these voracious insects can find sufficient nourishment, in so naked a country, till they arrive at maturity; since we must take it for granted that the number of the larvæ greatly exceeds that of the perfect animal. Probably sudden prolific showers, which for awhile renew vegetation, may at the same time assist the hatching of the eggs, and the developement of the young larvæ; yet this supposition is not a little contradicted by the observation that such swarms are seen at all times of the year, even after a long and general drought, and in countries the most bare of vegetation. On my first journey I once found in the lower Bokkeveld a whole field strewed over with the larvæ of another sort of insect: they sat by hundreds on a bush, gnawing the rind, and the woody fibres: every thing around was devoured, and nothing was to be seen which appeared capable of affording subsistence to these creatures: it was evident that they must have been hatched upon the spot. We may therefore presume that the eggs are hatched very suddenly, and that the young animals require little nourishment; that it is not till they become perfect, at the time when vegetation is more abundant, that their extreme voracity commences. The locusts of Southern Africa have hitherto been supposed the same as those which infest Asia and some of the south-easterly parts of Europe, *gryllus tataricus;* but on the examination of some specimens which I preserved, they

are determined to be a very different species, and they now bear their appropriate name of *Gryttus devastator*. I did not here see any of the birds *Tardus Gryllivorus*, which usually follow the swarms of locusts.

After some hours, we arrived at the Rietfontein. Here it was that Kicherer first collected around him the Bastard-Hottentots, and here is still a church, which is, if possible, smaller and more wretched than that at the Sack river. His successor, Kramer, having returned into the colony, the care of the flock devolved upon the Bastard Solomon Kok, as the most substantial personage in the place. This man had entirely the appearance of a colonist: he was well made, and spoke the Dutch language tolerably correct, and with tolerable purity. He was the son of one of the oldest and most noted among the Bastard-Hottentots, by name Cornelius Kok, who lives now at the mouth of the Orange river, and who always made one of Colonel Gordon's suite. At that time his principal occupation was elephant-hunting, and he carried on a contraband trade in elephants' teeth, by which he had a prospect of soon becoming a rich man. According to the information we received from his son, it seems probable that Le Vaillant was well acquainted with him. On our enquiring of Solomon whether giraffes were to be found in the country where we now were, he said that the first to be seen were in the Briqua country, whither, in his early youth, he had several times travelled with his father. They had once, he said, killed a very large and beautiful giraffe, the skin of which they had stripped off carefully, with the intention of selling it in the Cape Town. However, on their journey thither, when they were in the Karree mountains, they met with a Frenchman upon his travels, to whom his father sold the skin for twenty dollars: the same Frenchman, he said, had shot various sorts of birds and other wild animals, for the purpose of stuffing them. He travelled with them some way, and made many enquiries of them concerning the country on the other side of the Orange river.

When we had enrolled in our register the names of all the fathers of families in the place, had listened to their complaints relative to the small-pox, and the inroads of the Bosjesmans, and had answered their enquiries whether we had any clothes or gunpowder to dispose of, we proceeded on our way to Witwater, which place we reached the same day late in the evening. On the way we were joined by a horde of Coran Hottentots, some of whom had already visited us at the kloof. These Corans are the oldest original inhabit-

ants of the country ; they are a tolerably numerous race, mild, and well-disposed, speaking almost the same language that was formerly spoken by the Hottentot tribes within the colony, but which has not hitherto been sufficiently known by the Europeans to acquire from it much insight into the ancient customs and habits of these people. They still live after the manner of their forefathers, in small villages or kraals, in huts of a hemispherical form, and are slothful by nature, so that they are not so successful in breeding cattle, though their country is extremely well adapted to it, as the stronger and more industrious Caffre tribes. With these, who are their nearest neighbours, they live on very good terms ; but a perpetual warfare subsists between them and the Bosjesmans ; the latter are hated by them to excess. The Corans have hitherto been very erroneously confounded with the Bosjesmans ; but they are a totally distinct people, having their principal residence on the banks of the Narb and Vaal rivers, north-east from where we now were, and south of the Beetjuan country. They are divided into several tribes, the principal of which are called the Kharemankis and the Khuremankis. In their size and corporeal structure they resemble the Hottentots very much, but the cheek and chin bones are less prominent, and the whole face is more oval than some other of the Hottentot tribes. They have all a kind of voluptuous expression about the mouth, which, united with a peculiar wild roll of the eye, and a rough broken manner of speaking, give them altogether the appearance of intoxication ; nor indeed are they falsified by it, since they are truly a voluptuous race, deficient in bodily strength, and destitute of martial courage.

Their clothing consists in a mantle of prepared skin, made either from the hides of their cattle, or from those of the antelopes : it is smaller, and of a somewhat different form from that worn by the Beetjuans, and is never made of several small skins sewed together. A favourite mode with them is, to scrape figures of various kinds on the hairy side of these mantles. They trade with the Beetjuans for ornaments for the ears, neck, and arms. The cattle are held in high consideration by them : they take much more care of these creatures than the other tribes, or than most of the colonists. They are so much celebrated for training the oxen, as riding and draught animals, that the Beetjuans acknowledge them to be in this instance their masters, and purchase of them those that they use for riding. These animals go an exceedingly

good trot or gallop, and clear a great deal of ground in a very short time. There is no occasion ever to be harsh with them: 'tis sufficient to touch them with a thin osier. The rider never neglects, when he dismounts, to have the animal led about slowly for a quarter of an hour, that he may cool by degrees. The bridle is fastened to a wooden pin, stuck through the nose, and a sheep's or goat's skin serves as a saddle. On this the rider has so firm a seat, that he is in no danger of being thrown by even the wildest ox. The Corans do not apply themselves at all to agriculture: their dwellings are spherical huts, very much like those of the Koossas, but not so spacious. Some skins and mats, on which they sleep, some leather knapsacks, and a sort of vessels somewhat in the form of cans, which are cut out of a piece of solid wood, with some calebashes and bamboo canes, compose the whole of their household furniture. Most of them wear a knife of the Beetjuan manufactory, in a case slung round their necks, with a small leather bag, or the shell of a tortoise, in which is the pipe, the tobacco, and the flint for striking fire.

They have no fixed habitation, but often move from one place to another, always carrying with them, as is the custom among the other tribes, the staves and mats of which their huts are built. All the goods and chattels are packed together within a very small compass on the back of the patient ox; and thus a whole Coran village is struck, and in full march in a few moments. Their form of government is the same as with the other Hottentot tribes: the richest person in the kraal is the captain, or provost: he is the leader of the party, and the spokesman on all occasions, without deriving from this office any judicial right over the rest. His authority is exceedingly circumscribed, and no one considers himself as wholly bound to yield obedience to him; neither does he himself ever pretend to command them. Only in case of being obliged to defend themselves against a foreign enemy is he the first, because, being the richest, he suffers most from the attack. Plurality of wives is not contrary to their institutions; yet I never heard of any body who had more than one wife. They are by nature good-tempered; but they are indolent, and do not take any great interest for others; less cunning than the Hottentot, therefore easy to be deceived in trafficking with them, and, from their simplicity, easily won to any purpose by the attraction of strong liquors, tobacco, and the like luxuries.

The company who now joined us were a certain Sigeb, with eight or ten of

his people, whose habitation was at that moment only at the distance of a few hours. He had lived awhile in the colony, and had been, with several of his followers, in the service of a farmer. Here his good behaviour acquired him many friends; and it was not without regret that they saw him, after some years, return to his native country. He himself repented of this hasty measure, and requested, when we should pass that way again, that he might be permitted to join us, and seek his old acquaintance among the colonists. He said that it was impossible for him to remain longer where he was, on account of being so grievously molested by the Bosjesmans: if the Bastard-Hottentots were not so near, and had not sometimes taken him under their protection, he should long ago have lost all his cattle, perhaps not even have escaped with his life. But these good friends were now destitute of powder, and could not, without great difficulty, protect their own herds. He was desirous, therefore, once more, to seek his fortune in his ancient situation. Some of our company recollected him, and observed, that when he was in the colony, the name of Slapparm was given him, because he was lame in the left arm. His corporal was, for the same reason, called Buffelhout, because he had once been thrown down by a buffalo, and wounded by him with his horn in the thigh. It was after him that the Biesfontein, where we stopped on the sixth of June, received the same name. Another of these people had, in like manner, been thrown down by a buffalo, and was so much hurt as to be rendered an absolute cripple; it was not without great difficulty that he could sit upon an ox. We afterwards saw many of the savages, who bore about them strong marks of the ill-treatment they had received from these mischievous animals; among others may be mentioned a Beetjuan, whose left ear had been severed from his head by the tread of a buffalo, as if it had been cut off by a razor: he was named by his countrymen after this accident.

The inhabitants of Witwater were almost all Hottentots: there was only one bastard family among them. As, from fear of the small-pox, we pitched our camp at a little distance from the village, we were very much disturbed in the night by the jackals and lions; they ventured so near, and terrified our oxen and sheep to such a degree, that these creatures broke loose, and were with difficulty collected together again in the morning. We also heard the noise of quaggas near our camp incessantly the whole night through.

The next morning we proceeded onwards, the weather being very cold.

The wives of the Corans, who had associated themselves with us the day before, joined the party, running by the side of our waggons, while the husbands rode in great state upon their oxen. These lords of the creation were exceedingly angry that their ladies would not stay quietly at home; and took great pains to excuse themselves to us, and to assure us that they had come out against their express commands. Upon some little presents being made them, they, however, soon quitted us, but the husbands proceeded a considerable way farther. The extraordinary protuberance of the hinder parts of some of these women excited our utmost astonishment; the more so, as they were otherwise in general very slender. Perhaps the custom of carrying their children always on their backs may have some share in thissingular conformation, but it is certain that the principal cause must be sought for in the original organization. Examples of this structure about the hips are to be seen among the women in almost all the Hottentot tribes, even among those in the service of the colonists, who have never had any children; and one cannot forbear again observing, that this is also the country which produces the enormous fat-tailed sheep.

We were now again in a district abounding exceedingly with game, and, after having passed Taayboschfontein, the smallest of the Hottentot villages, leaving it a little to the left, the fields were overspread with elands, gnus, and springbocks. They were soon frightened by the noise of our train, and began to fly, but we dispersed ourselves about in pursuit of them. I followed first a troop of springbocks, one of which I killed; but my attention was soon diverted from them by a party of very fine large ostriches. I also saw at a distance a herd of buffalos; but as I was on foot, and alone, it was impossible to think of following them. After some hours, I rejoined our company, and sent a Hottentot in search of my slaughtered springbock; but the Bosjesmans had already made a prize of it, leaving only the entrails as my share.

Towards evening, as we were proceeding on our journey, rain came on, with which, after sunset, snow was mingled: this incommoded us extremely, when, on arriving at Leeuwenkuil, our tents were to be pitched in the dark. We were, moreover, obliged to forego our supper entirely, since we could not get the fire to burn; this, as adventurers now pretty well seasoned to hardships, we should not much have regarded, had not the cold made the comfort of a hot meal particularly desirable to us. As the wind besides blew

with considerable violence, we were every moment afraid of the tents being blown down; so that we all together passed a very sleepless and comfortless night. Added to these grievances, and worse than all the others combined, a lion broke into our camp, dispersed our cattle, and carried off our best milch goat, directly from the side of one of the waggons. We could hear the cry of the poor animal to a great distance, without being able, from the darkness, to afford it any assistance; and the next morning we could trace the course which the robber had pursued, by the drops of blood along the snow. The bad weather did not subside till noon the following day, but the evening was mild and serene.

We were now at the dwelling-place of the missionary Anderson, in the largest of the Hottentot villages, which contained between three and four hundred inhabitants. We paid our visit to the patriarch, who was very ill, and so weak, that he could not quit his hut. His habitation was a Coran hut, only somewhat larger than the usual size; it was very poor within, but kept perfectly clean; the bed was shut up from the rest of the room by a curtain: in the middle was a table, and round about, some chests and coffers instead of chairs. Some small English prints were hanging about the roof of the hut, such as the apotheosis of a child's soul, and portraits of Van-der-Kemp, with other celebrated missionaries. We found in Anderson an amiable appearing man, about thirty years of age, with great serenity and piety in his whole deportment. His features were fine, and his eye beamed with a spirit of religion and resignation; this, combined with the evident traces of a long-standing sickness, gave him wholly the aspect of a saint, and could not fail, at the first glance, to win the heart of every one who approached him. He spoke the Dutch language tolerably well, sufficiently so to make himself perfectly intelligible to the Hottentots, but he was not a little rejoiced at being able to talk with us in his mother-tongue. He assured us that our arrival was most gratifying to him, for he had long wished to see the attention of the government turned towards his institution, that he might, with the greater confidence, address his petitions to them for support. He was sensible that many obstacles must exist to this assistance being granted; and his penetration did not go far enough to meet all that might be urged by evil-minded individuals against the interests of the government, and of the institution.

Our missionary had already been four years in the country, yet he com-

plained, that notwithstanding his most strenuous exertions in his vocation, he had accomplished but little. This he thought was partly to be ascribed to the successive years of drought which had intervened, and which obliged them perpetually to move from one place to another; partly also to the high degree of indocility which unfortunately characterized most of his pupils. It was only since their being permanently fixed on that spot that he could see any prospect of his efforts being attended with the happy consequences which his wishes had anticipated. Since that time, he could perceive among them an increasing spirit of industry, of docility, and desire of improvement: the example of the best among the Bastard-Hottentots seemed to make some impression upon their wholly savage brethren. His great object at present was to keep the institution fixed, and for this purpose he was endeavouring, by all possible means, to excite a spirit of attention to agriculture, and to wean them from their attachment to the nomade life. He had already persuaded some of his people to build themselves permanent houses instead of moveable huts; he was even occupied with having a large building erected, partly as a habitation for himself, partly as a place of assemblage for divine worship. He had had canals dug in some of the low grounds to drain them, they being too marshy for use; and he hoped, by this means, that they would the next year be fit for cultivation; he hoped also, by such exertions, to increase the spirit of agriculture, as one of the best means of rendering the people stationary.

The Leeuwenkuil is a long valley between two ridges of flat-topped hills: at the upper end of the valley is a copious spring, which renders the whole a sort of morass; further down, the waters are collected into a bed, and the slopes on both sides are amazingly fertile. This part has been particularly devoted to agricultural purposes: equal shares of from five to six acres are portioned out, and allotted to those who have industry to cultivate them. On the slopes of the hills which border the great valley, some small stone houses are already erected; and somewhat lower down is a very neat house, built of wood and bricks, with a kitchen garden adjoining, which belongs to the most distinguished among the Bastards, by name Moses. The greatest industry and spirit of order reigned in this household, more than is often to be found in African farms. Maize and tobacco were cultivated in the garden with the usual vegetables for culinary purposes. Not far from the spring was the half-

finished building designed for a church, which in size was much the same as that at the Sack river, but of a very superior construction. If the two institutions be compared with each other, one cannot be sufficiently astonished that Kicherer's should hitherto have been so exceedingly extolled, and Anderson's treated with so much contempt.

From the most accurate inquiries that could be made into the situation of the institution, and the relations which it held with the colony, the following results were obtained. It is undoubtedly true that these men carry on a sort of contraband trade for powder and fire-arms with some of the citizens at the Cape-Town, who have *cattle-places* on the borders of the colony, giving in exchange for them horned-cattle, elephants' teeth, ostrich feathers, and the hides of animals. In this traffic the disadvantage is so much on their side, that they cannot obtain a musket of even a middling quality for less than five or six oxen, or a hundred weight of ivory. And yet, perhaps, since in all cases merchandize can only be estimated according to its relative value, it may appear hard to call this traffic unjust. At Amsterdam it would undoubtedly be a gross imposition, if an ignorant person were taken in to barter a large elephant's tooth at a frippery shop against an ordinary coat; but on the other side of the Orange river such an exchange might be far from unfair. Individuals among the Bastard-Hottentots have sometimes come privately to the Cape-Town, where they have bought arms and powder more advantageously; but experience has taught them that it is better to give the higher price, and be spared the fatigue and expense of the journey. The breed of elephants, however, begins to diminish very much in this country, so that they fail in their most valuable article of traffic, and for some time they have not been able to purchase powder. Till very recently, a small supply, which they procured from the English commissaries in 1801, had not been wholly exhausted, but at length even that failed, and the whole little colony was reduced to great distress for the want of so necessary an article. This calamity was the more severely felt, since the Bosjesmans had begun to discover that they could no longer use their fire-arms, and had therefore become much more troublesome, and bolder in their incursions.

This specimen alone is sufficient to shew the dependence of the institution upon the colony, and the folly of asserting that it is ever likely to become dangerous to the European establishments. How little an incursion from these harmless men is to be apprehended, is obvious from their considering

themselves as fellow-citizens of the colony, and subjects of the colonial government; they are even ignorant of the boundaries fixed by the government for the colony. Anderson's regarding himself as completely under the controul of the government, his inculcating on his followers a strict obedience to it, and even relying on it for assistance, proves no less the falsehood of the reports circulated against him, than it attests the real purity of his views. It is very true that another English missionary did in his prayers mention his own king; but this never happened among the Bastards; nor could such a thing be any designed injury to the Batavian republic, since its relations with the other European powers were then wholly unknown.

Undoubtedly this little State deserves not only the attention but the earnest support of the government at the Cape. However necessary it may be that the extending the boundaries of the colony should be prohibited to European adventurers, it is on the other hand no less advantageous that so fertile a tract of land should be cultivated and rendered useful; that it should be inhabited by people who will readily barter the superfluity of corn and cattle, with which heaven may bless them, against European commodities; who are too remote from the colony, and are separated from it by so inhospitable a country, that there is no danger of their ever being engaged in contests with the colonists on the borders. All will depend in future upon a careful choice being made of the missionaries who are allowed to come hither; that, like Anderson, they may unite with an eager enthusiasm for spreading the principles of true religion, enlightened views with regard to human policy. No less important will it be that a strict attention to rectitude and good faith should be observed in the interchange to be carried on between the Hottentots and the colonists. For this purpose, it will be well that persons of tried integrity should occasionally be sent into the country to reconcile any little misunderstandings that may occur, and to punish any offences committed against the laws.

We made use of the opportunity now presented us to recommend the instructions of the worthy missionary in the strongest manner to the attention of his pupils, and to enforce upon them obedience to him as one of their first duties; assuring them that the neglect of it would be considered as an offence against the government, and would be punished accordingly. The diligent were encouraged to occupy themselves still more assiduously

with husbandry, and hopes were given them that the government would lighten the taxes upon the produce of their labour, and endeavour to have them supplied with European commodities at an easier rate. The slothful were admonished to forsake their bad habits and imitate the industrious, otherwise they were threatened with being sent away for ever from the institution. Some of the most untractable among the Hottentots were pointed out to us by Anderson, as those who stood in the greatest need of these exhortations and admonitions; nay, their comrades complained no less of these people, that they would not even work for hire, but expected to be maintained by the more wealthy in total indolence; that thus they were a heavy burthen upon the whole society. The aggressors themselves could not deny that they were strong and healthy enough to work; they acknowledged also that sloth was a crime, but answered, when asked why they would not work, that it was the *sinfulness of the flesh, the innate bad principle of man.* They could not, they said, renounce this fault; but God was merciful; and as they were so ready to acknowledge their transgressions, he would forgive them; for he alone who had Jesus within him, who was humble of heart, and full of faith, could be saved. Here again is a fresh proof how contrary the doctrine taught by most of the missionaries is to the true welfare of the human race, and how much harder it is to convert men to christianity, whose minds are not prepared for it by early cultivation, than to make pious and religious people of polished Europeans. Anderson himself told us that it was always the most lazy and worthless people in his institution, several of whom had even been detected in attempts at robbery and murder, who talked the most about religion, who had the most piety in their mouths; with regard to some, the fear alone of making them wholly villains, who would become dangerous to the institution itself, induced him to retain them; he should otherwise dicard them entirely, and abandon them to their fate.

From hence, dispatches to the governor, and letters to our friends at the Cape-Town, as well as some to be forwarded to Europe, were sent by two Hottentots, who were returning to the Sack river on riding-oxen; and thus, our business here being concluded, on the twenty-first of June, we took leave of the worthy Anderson and his pupils. We had here deviated in some measure from the exact direction towards the country of the Beetjuans, and now once more resumed a due westerly course.

CHAP. XLVII.

Departure from Leeuwenkuil.—Ongeluksfontein, why so called.—Grotesque appearance of the Travellers.—Remonstrances of the Party against the Prosecution of the Journey.—Two Hottentots murdered by the Bosjesmans.—Their Families rescued by the Travelling Party.—John Bloom's Fountain.—The Dogs of the Bosjesmans.

Our course was now over a flat desert country, which scarcely produced any thing but some dry grasses, and a few small plants of the *syngenesia* tribe, as *asters*, *gorteria*, and *berkheya*. By the dry bed of a stream were several sorts of mimosas, altogether new, and such as I never yet found described: the formation of the leaves was very remarkable. Here we first found some single shrubs of that favourite among the Beetjuans, the *grewia obtusifolia*; farther on grew in abundance, rising even to the height of a man, the *tarconanthus camphoratus*. This is one of the bushes in which the Bosjesmans particularly delight to make their nests: its aromatic leaves were chewed with the greatest delight by our Malay slaves, since they found the flavour very similar to that of some of the plants of their own country.

After ascending a small hill, towards evening we arrived at Ongeluksfontein, so called, because some years before a Bastard-Hottentot had the misfortune at this spot, by handling his gun incautiously, to shoot his companion in the chase.* This is the most northern of the villages inhabited by the disciples of Anderson. We found it inhabited only by Namaaquas, and Hottentots of the Great river; they were nevertheless equally civil and obliging as the others. They brought us milk, panther-skins, and oxen,

---

* All these places have likewise Coran names, which I had collected with the intention of inserting them equally in my work. I soon found however either that these names belonged to the whole district, or else that the residence of each single horde had a different appellation, or was pronounced differently. Besides, as these names are in general very long, and as the pronunciation of them is extremely difficult, I have confined myself to giving the Dutch names, which are much more used by the present inhabitants of the district, and afford less danger of alteration

which they offered in exchange for our European goods upon very reasonable terms. As the last day's journey had been very long, and as the next spring lay at the distance of more than a day's journey, we determined to proceed a part of the way only on the twenty-second, taking with us a provision of water sufficient to satisfy our wants for the night. We did not set off till the afternoon. Such long rests are often very necessary in journeys like the present, not only to relieve the cattle, but also for preserving the health of the travellers, who otherwise would be liable to suffer much from a want of cleanliness and proper food. It was not indeed possible for us to pay all the attention that could have been wished to our dress, and to the neatness of our external appearance. From the time that we quitted the Sack river we had constantly passed the night with our clothes on, that in case of danger we might be ready in a moment; nor did we ever sleep in a bed till three months after this, at our return to Tulbagh. From circumstances, we were obliged often to remain a week together without being able to change our clothes. Our large trunks were in the waggons under a quantity of other goods, and seldom could be unpacked: we had only each a little cloak-bag with some changes of linen, and these we were often obliged to wash ourselves, since the slaves either had really not the time to spare, or did them so ill that we could scarcely wear them. In like manner we were also obliged occasionally to mend our clothes, and even our shoes, ourselves, because there was no one amongst us who could do it better.

In the early part of our journey we had made a point of shaving ourselves regularly; but as we found that the water, being strongly impregnated with natron, could not, from the particles of sulphuric acid which it contained, be easily made to froth with the soap, and besides, that perhaps for five or six days we had no opportunity of performing this ceremony, we at length agreed to wave it altogether, and we began now to have all of us very respectable beards. Krieger and Van-der-Byl in particular acquired by this means a most venerable aspect, which sometimes produced a very favourable impression upon the savages, and pleased them exceedingly. Our whole exterior indeed gave us so strongly the appearance of adventurers, that we often could not forbear laughing at it ourselves: it would have afforded an interesting spectacle to any European who had suddenly come among us. We had among us people of all colours, and clothed in a variety of fashions;

natives of Mozambique in Malay garments, with a sort of turbans on their heads, and full short breeches; brown Malays with their hair twisted up in curls upon the head; half-naked tame Bosjesmans with bodies smeared over with grey ashes; yellow Hottentots with cloaks of sheep-skin and skin caps; Bastards, with brown leather waistcoats and breeches, large white felt-hats ornamented with black ostrich-feathers, and black mustachios; colonists in their light national costume; and lastly, Europeans in old half-worn-out clothes of various fashions; one was in a short shooting-jacket, with a night-cap and fur-boots, another in an uniform with a helmet cap and military shoes, perhaps large woollen stockings drawn over the leather breeches. These varied costumes composed particularly picturesque groups, when in a cold evening they were collected together round a large fire, and the light was thrown from below upon the black or bearded countenances; the fire perhaps illuminating a rugged mass of rock in the back-ground. A faithful sketch of such a group, with the horses standing near, and the arms and saddles lying about, would have afforded a most admirable frontispiece to some terrible romance, in which a troop of banditti were to play a principal part.

We had here again another conflict to sustain against the reluctance of some of our party to proceed on the journey. The Namaaquas had only a few days before been attacked by a numerous horde of Bosjesmans, and the sufferers asserted that the district before us was the true native country of these marauders; that they were here bolder and more formidable than near the colony, and their numbers were so great, that if they were to make a serious attack upon us, our force would not be sufficient to resist them. Our guides added, that we should not meet with a human habitation between that place and the Beetjuan country; that our horses would be famished, and no longer able to move; that we were ill-provided with powder; that we had not more than three or four effective dogs; that several of our guns were no longer fit for use; with many other objections of a similar nature. Moreover, even supposing that we had the good fortune to escape with safety from the Bosjesmans, it was not at all improbable that we might find ourselves in a very disagreeable situation with the Beetjuans, whose dispositions were, to say the best of them, at least very doubtful. How would it be possible to defend ourselves against this numerous and

warlike nation, in case they should choose to seize our waggons, our horses, and our oxen; and how much harder should we find it, supposing we escaped with our lives, to be obliged to return through the Bosjesmans' country on foot, and unarmed. Kok himself, whose advice we asked, seemed to feel his courage droop. He had now for some time expected two Hottentot families who were in his service, and who were to follow a few days after his departure: he had hoped to meet them at the Rietfontein, since nothing had detained them from setting out from the Beetjuan country, but some little repairs which were wanting to their waggon: having the most perfect dependence on their good faith, he had purposed trusting his family to their protection, on their journey to the Sack river. Some disaster he was convinced must have happened to them: either they had been coercively detained by the Beetjuans, or murdered in the way by the Bosjesmans.

All these representations were however insufficient to shake our determined resolution, and our companions were necessitated to yield to our will, which was immediately and decidedly declared without the least hesitation. Kok submitted joyfully, and assured us that our resolution determined him to proceed with us as far as we chose, for he must now believe that it was inspired by God, who willed our journey; he should therefore think no more of fear.

Soon after noon, therefore, we set forwards along the declivity of a small hill which lay to our right. At the distance of about three miles to our left, we saw a high ridge of hills running parallel with it for a great length of way, which, on account of the distance that it extends from north to south, is called the Long-Mountain. The declivity over which our route lay was interrupted in several places by small dells, the beds of so many periodical streams. Though we sent some of our people forwards with pick-axes and spades to level the ways over these places, they were often dangerous to our waggons, and wearied our oxen extremely. Besides this, there was now scarcely any beaten track to be discerned: here and there only could we perceive in the grass some faint impressions made by the wheels of the missionaries' waggons. From hence therefore we were obliged to trust wholly to the compass and to the direction of the mountains as our guides. The way we pursued was chiefly over a plain, uninterrupted by cliffs, dells, or high shrubs of any kind. In this country it was that we first discovered

the footsteps of giraffes: these we took some pains to examine accurately, that we might know how to distinguish them in future.

When we had almost reached the place where we were to encamp for the night, a most tragical scene was presented to us. I had gone on before wit Kok, who, according to our usual custom, was giving me a lecture in the Beetjuan language, when we discovered in a little thicket before us the tilt of a waggon. As we approached it, Kok recognized the wives and children of the people he was expecting, and exclaimed joyfully: "There they are!—There are my Hottentots, Jantje and David."—We hastened up to the waggon, and reached it before we were observed by any of the party. At the moment when we came up, one of the women, seeing us, uttered a loud and piercing shriek, and falling prostrate to the earth before Kok, embraced his knee in a tumult of agony. In an instant after, the children ran towards us crying, sobbing, and lamenting, in the most piteous manner, so that it was some time before my worthy companion, down whose cheeks tears were streaming, had power to ask the unfortunate woman where her husband was. For a while renewed sobs were the only answer he could obtain, till at length the woman pointed with one hand to a little distance, while she held the other over her eyes. We looked up, and saw a few paces from us a boy about twelve years old making a grave with an old iron axe, and near him, lying on the ground, the body of his father wrapped in a mat. "The Bosjesmans have murdered him," exclaimed the unfortunate lad; and letting his axe drop, he broke out into the most bitter cries and lamentations. After awhile, from several incoherent answers, which were all we could at first obtain, we comprehended that the other Hottentot also, with one of his children, had fallen victims to the barbarity of the Bosjesmans; but by degrees having succeeded in somewhat calming these poor creatures, we learned from them the following particulars.

These men were brothers, unmingled Bastard-Hottentots, who had long been attached to our Kok, and who had accompanied him, with their families and their property, in all his travels for the work of conversion, giving every day new proofs of their devoted adherence to him. The inclination which led Kok among the Beetjuans extended itself to them: they lived upon the best terms with these savages, they learnt their language, they adopted their customs, nevertheless avoiding any interference in the

contests which were perpetually taking place between these people and the Bosjesmans; not one of this miserable race had ever fallen by their hands. They saw therefore no reason to apprehend being molested on their journey, and strongly rejected the warnings of the Beetjuans not to follow their master, who must already be so far before them, through so solitary a country, with their worn-out waggon. A number of elephants' teeth which they had collected together they hoped would sell to great advantage at the Cape-Town, and they expected to return well equipped with new implements for husbandry, clothes, and tools for work.

On the third day of their journey they were joined by some Bosjesmans, who begged for the offals of the game they had killed, which being given them, they sat down quietly at a little distance and eat them. A herd of sixty oxen, however, which the Hottentots carried with them, strongly excited the appetites of these voracious guests; but too dastardly to attempt to seize them by open force, though the little convoy consisted of no more than two men capable of bearing arms, with their mother, their wives, and fourteen children, they formed a plan to get them by degrees in a number of petty contests. The watchfulness of the brothers prevented their commencing the execution of their plan the succeeding night, but the next morning these men, being at work at some distance from each other, the wretched invaders seized the favourable moment when one of them had bent himself down to do something to the shaft of the waggon, and while a party engaged him in conversation, one of the boldest thrust a sharp hassagai into his back, quite through to his breast. A girl of eight years old, the darling of her father, and who was standing near him, seeing his danger before the thrust was actually made, uttered a violent shriek, for which a spear was run through her by another Bosjesman. Alarmed by the cry, the brother looked up, and saw the horrid deed performed, without the possibility of coming in time to prevent it. Enraged, he rushed forwards, having nothing in his hand but a short axe, when the murderers, notwithstanding they were eight in number, hastily took to flight. After having in vain aimed a stroke with his axe at the head of the hindmost, he seized his gun, and firing after the fugitives, wounded one of them in the shoulder; but before he could load his piece again, they were all out of sight. Bows, arrows, spears, all were thrown away by them, that they might fly with the greater haste.

The bodies of the poor murdered father and child being removed into the waggon, the party immediately proceeded on their way, lest the Bosjesmans should return upon them with increased numbers. In order to conceal from the savages the place where the bodies were deposited, since it is a custom with them to misuse exceedingly the corpses of those who have fallen by their hands—to obviate this, they were buried in the dark the following night. The next day the unfortunate party continued their flight under the most painful anxiety, the Bosjesmans appearing every now and then at a distance upon the heights, without daring to renew their attack: the night was passed in the open field, under the strictest watch, to keep the enemy at a distance. The next morning, however, the route lay at the edge of a considerable thicket of mimosas, whence the travellers were assailed with a shower of poisoned arrows, by which some of the children were touched. Those who were in the waggon found an extraordinary protection from the dried skin of a buffalo, which was hung on the side of it by mere chance, and in which many of the arrows stuck. Yet the wretches were terrified at the courage of a single man, and a shot from the Hottentot's gun drove them from their lurking-place, and put them to flight. Somewhat farther on, the attack was renewed, but the arrows were then principally aimed at the draught oxen, that the progress of the party might be stopped. Some of these fell, but they were immediately replaced by others; while the man and the eldest boy, however, were doing this, the latter received a very slight wound, the father a more severe one. This did not prevent his still defending his children and his herd: eleven of the children, notwithstanding, as they continued their course, one after the other received wounds from the miscreants. The morning of the next day put the final seal to this catastrophe; the robbers appeared in greater numbers upon the heights around, and at length moved towards the little convoy in several divisions, so as to surround it. The Hottentot fired his piece; but this was the moment for which they waited: all the arrows were then aimed at him, and while he was endeavouring to load his piece again, he was mortally wounded in three places. That he might not fall before their eyes, he hastened, half-fainting, to the waggon, his son following him: and the miscreants with a shout of victory drove away the whole herd.

The wounded man soon lost his speech and recollection, and died in the space of an hour. All hope of escape was lost to the sufferers, when, about

noon, at the place where we met with them, the axle-tree of their waggon broke. Plundered, languishing with their wounds, inevitable death seemed before their eyes. Some lurking Bosjesmans were seen spying about the hills, as, it appeared, with a view to possessing themselves of the last remaining draught oxen. The uncertainty alone whether the wounded defender might not be still alive, whether his little remaining strength might not yet be employed against them, seemed to make the cowards keep aloof, to make them hesitate in putting the finishing stroke to the misery of their victims: and it was probable that they waited only for the closing in of night to renew their attack with the greater security. Fully convinced that it was this alone which afforded them any respite, the women collected their children around them, and employed the interval in prayer, when suddenly the Bosjesmans, probably having seen us, disappeared, and hope once more revived in the bosoms of these unfortunate people: it seemed possible that they might be able to reach Ongeluksfontein, which they knew to be at no great distance. They were therefore hastening to deposit the dead body in the earth, purposing, when that was done, to employ all the strength left them by three days of anguish, passed without rest, sleep, or nourishment, in flying with the utmost speed that the circumstances would permit.

Our companions, who now began to justify their former apprehensions, and again to mention our returning, were soon however obliged to confess with shame, that had it not been for our perseverance, all these people would have fallen victims to a horrid and painful death; an hour later, and we had probably not found one of them alive. The people themselves considered our incomprehensible appearance in a place through which scarcely a single traveller passes the whole year round, and that at the moment of the most imminent danger, as an absolute miracle, as a visible interposition of heaven for their preservation. Kok, to whom they poured out their hearts in the most affecting manner upon this subject, thanked us eagerly with tears of gratitude for the firmness with which we had that morning adhered to the prosecution of our journey. Disposed by all this to be satisfied with our determination, we found a still farther justification of what we had done, in the manifest cowardice, which, according to the tragical relation we had heard, was displayed by the Bosjesmans: from this cowardice we received the surest pledge of that determination being sanctioned by the event.

Our first business was now to take care of these unfortunate people. Three of our Hottentots were sent back in the night, well armed, to Ongeluksfontein, to fetch some of the Namaaquas from thence, that they might, the next day, convey the women and children to a place of security. Some other of our people were employed in a complete repair of the waggon, and others dug a grave to bury the corpse. This, though dead only a few hours, from the strong and dreadful nature of the poison, was already in a state of total corruption; the large wounds in the back, in the belly, and in the thigh, were immoderately swelled, and were surrounded with a greenish blue circle. The smell which proceeded from them was far worse than what proceeds from an ordinary putrid corpse. The grave was made very deep, and the earth pressed hard down upon it with stones, to keep it from the beasts of prey.

I, for my share, occupied myself with attending to the wounded children: I washed their wounds with wine, while the cook made some strong broth for them to take. Happily, scarcely any of the wounds were more than skin deep, the miscreants having fired at too great a distance to do any essential injury; with most of them I therefore did nothing more than rub the whole body over with warm oil, which I have always found the best specific that could be used against the poison of the Bosjesmans' arrows. To the deeper wounds I applied, according to the experience I had had of its efficacy, a mercurial salve; the freshest wounds I only endeavoured to lubricate, and found them, the next morning, vastly amended, less swelled, and looking much better than the older wounds. I gave the people besides some medicines to carry with them on their journey, and, by the careful attention of the mothers to the directions they received from me, united with their extreme cleanliness, they succeeded happily in saving the lives of all; at least, none had died when we repassed the same way a month and half after, although the health of several of the sufferers was by no means entirely restored.

At day-break our three Hottentots returned, accompanied by some Namaaquas, who had shewn themselves very ready to give all possible assistance to the sufferers, and repeated to us, several times, that they considered it as a Christian duty. They would have the whole story in the snorting Hottentot language, from the women, and then first began to make preparations for their departure. We now took leave of our *protegés*, making them some presents at parting of live sheep, bread, and wine. Some of these poor creatures were stowed in the waggon; others were mounted upon riding-oxen, which the

Namaaquas had brought with them; and as we set forwards in one direction, we saw them depart in the opposite.

We found on our way abundant traces of the conflict above described. The frequent deviations of the track of the waggon wheels from the straight line shewed plainly how often the oxen had started aside, terrified with the arrows; and we found two of these poor creatures dead in the road. They were swoln to an enormous size, and were so dreadfully offensive to the smell, that even our dogs would not endure to go near them. On both sides of the waggon tracks, we found such numbers of arrows scattered at intervals, that we might with ease have collected more than a hundred. The Bosjesmans despise an arrow that has once failed of its mark; and, on the contrary, consider one that has hit as of double value. They will therefore rather make new arrows, how much time and trouble soever it may cost them, than collect those that have missed, and use them again. All that we found were newly poisoned, and most of them had fresh-sharpened iron points; the form of these points, however, differed from any that we had hitherto remarked, inasmuch as they did not describe a rectangular triangle, two sides having a degree of convexity, the third a degree of concavity, so that they formed a sort of heart, with crooked points on the sides made very sharp.

The place at which we passed the night is called John Bloom's Fountain; for here had lived about ten years before a colonist of that name, the remembrance of whom was held in abhorrence both by the Heathens and Christians of the country. He was the first of all the white men who arrived at any accurate acquaintance with the Beetjuans, but he misused the consideration which his superiority in understanding, and their ignorance of the mighty power of fire-arms, gave him over them, to plunder them of vast quantities of cattle, partly by craft, partly by main force; nay, he even carried his criminality so far, that he once set on fire a whole Beetjuan village, the inhabitants of which had fled from him and his companions. When he had made a successful expedition of plunder, he used to return to this spot, and send the stolen cattle by his Hottentots into the colony, to exchange them for powder and ball, and other things, of which he stood in need. The Beetjuans, who at first received him with the utmost confidence, were, through this disgraceful conduct, so embittered against all white people, that when, happily for them, John Bloom died, they would not permit any Christians to remain in their

neighbourhood, till the two brothers Krieger, who, the Corans assured them, were very well disposed men, by degrees removed their prejudice ; and on this disposition Kok contrived to improve so well, that he was received with the utmost confidence.

According to the indications given us, we dug up the elephants' teeth, which the Hottentots had buried in the ground, in order to lighten their waggon. Here also we found the remains of some oxen, which the women mentioned as having been killed by the poisoned arrows; notwithstanding which, they were almost devoured by the lions and hyenas. The people of the country assured us that these wild beasts have no objection to things killed by poisoned arrows, as long as they are fresh, but that they will not touch them when once the putridity, which so soon takes place, has commenced. While my companions went in pursuit of some gnus and kudus that appeared in the vicinity of this place, I occupied myself, the horizon being very clear and level, with ascertaining the inclination of the magnetic needle, and I found it to be twenty-four degrees thirty minutes north-west. According to the most accurate calculations, from former and later observations, the latitude of this place must be twenty-six degrees twenty-seven minutes.

The following night was not passed without some uneasiness, on account of the Bosjesmans. Soon after sunset a strange dog was discovered in our camp, which we knew immediately to be a Bosjesman's dog ; and we had reason to suppose that his master was not far off. The poor beast was, according to all appearance, attracted by the odour of our cookery ; for although he seemed very shy of us, and whenever any one went near him, ran away immediately, he always came back to the spot where our cookery was going forwards; and if a morsel was thrown to him, swallowed it with incredible greediness. These dogs, in their size and form, have a striking resemblance to the black-backed fox of Southern Africa, the jackal, as he is falsely called, *canis mesomelas ;* so that it seems very probable that the one is really a descendant from the other; only that the properties of the animal are, in the course of time, somewhat changed, from its having been tamed, and trained by the hand of man. The colour is nearly the same; but in the dog the black stripe down the back, which is so distinctive a characteristic of the fox, is wanting: the likeness is striking in the stiff erect ears, and the pointed snout: these features are much stronger than in any of the European breeds of what are called fox-

dogs. I had opportunities in the sequel of seeing a great many of these dogs, and found them all very much like each other; but I never saw any so well fed as Mr. Barrow met with in his journeyings. His supposition, that, for want of better food, they will feed upon locusts, I can confirm from my own experience. For the rest, it is not a little remarkable, that they are never heard to bark; but whether this be natural to them, or whether, as the colonists assert, it arises from their being trained to silence by their masters from their earliest youth, I must leave undecided. They are employed only in finding out the tracks of the game, for which they have an excellent scent, but they are never employed in the pursuit of the animals: they are cowardly, and by no means watchful in their nature.

Our own dogs, even after they had driven these guests from our camp, were more than usually uneasy, barking almost incessantly, while, as to every thing else, the most profound silence reigned on all sides. This excited in us great apprehensions with regard to the Bosjesmans, some of whom, we were afraid, must be lurking about: our dogs, we were sure, would not be so restless without a cause; and we could not suppose lions, hyenas, or jackals, to be near, since they would have betrayed themselves by their noise. At length, however, the voice of a lion, which was heard about midnight, satisfied us as to the cause that had so much disturbed our faithful guards. Hitherto we had all been very watchful in the fear of an attack; the cattle were collected together within the waggons, and a watch was placed at each waggon, who patroled diligently from the one to the other. Our fire was also extinguished, because it at once hindered us from seeing so well around, and made us conspicuous to the enemy. The kitchen fire alone was kept burning, so that nobody experienced greater terrors than our cook, whose duty chained him to this post. Scarcely, perhaps, was there ever a better creature in the world than this thick-lipped Mozambic slave. Wholly unawares that cowardice is a failing, yet well aware, from experience, that negligence in his service would be punished, he never thought of taking any pains to conceal his deficiency in courage, and strongly intimated a wish that his masters would be pleased to content themselves with a cold supper, or at least with meat not half cooked. Though in his very confined sphere of enjoyment, life might, to a philosophic mind, appear scarcely to him a moral good, the dismal stories he had heard of wounds and murders, had made such an impression

upon him, that it outweighed every other consideration, and his whole attention was divided between his boiling pot and the Bosjesmans, so that he never once observed how much amusement was afforded to others by his truly comic gestures and behaviour. The most trifling noise terrified him to such a degree, that his eyes, which sparkled like the very fire with which they were blended, and with which he stared wildly into the dark desert around, became three times as large as they were before. If a dog approached, and was driven away, he followed him eagerly with his eyes, watching, by his movements, which side he might expect the enemy to advance, and then crept awhile under a bush, till the pot boiling over, roused him, and he sprang forwards to check its fury, forgetful for the moment of danger, thinking only of the consequences attending a neglect of duty.

At the return of day, from many indications, we saw plainly that five or six of the Bosjesmans must have been lurking about in the vicinity of our camp at night: in some places it was clear that they had been lying flat on the ground, within a few paces of our waggons. On this and other occasions we had to regret the neglect of an article in our equipment, which I had earnestly recommended as of essential importance, and which was only omitted through the inattention of the man to whom the care of providing every thing in the list given him was confided: this was rockets and other fire-works. From the total unacquaintance of the savages with these fires in the air, they would have inspired, particularly those that make a great explosion, greater terror than the fire-arms themselves. They are, moreover, partly from being more harmless, partly from keeping alight for a longer time, exceedingly to be preferred as objects to inspire terror. I think I may strongly recommend to any future travellers through this country a particular attention to this hint; the rather, since the fireworks may not only be made of the greatest use under this point of view, in case of a hostile disposition among the savages, but if friendly relations be established, they might be rendered a high source of amusement and enjoyment to them.

CHAP. XLVIII.

The Caves of Sibihlong.—A Buffalo shot.—Stompjesfontein.—Batavian Deserters.—Hunting the Giraffe.—Extraordinary Manner in which this Creature moves.—A young one shot.—Maputi.—Rissipien.—The Valley of Koossi.—More hunting of Giraffes, and Danger encountered by the Author in consequence.—Arrival of the Party in the Country of the Beetjuans.

A CONSIDERABLE hill, with a high conical summit, was the first object worthy of remark that presented itself, as we proceeded on our way. It was composed of brown iron stone, and on the east side was a cavern with a broad entrance, rugged, and running deep into a vast stratum of ochraceous iron. The whole base on this side consisted of an iron clay, sometimes of a more or less deep rose colour, sometimes of an ochre yellow, sometimes of a brownish iron clay, mingled abundantly with crystals of mica, very brittle, and of a lead colour. This substance, rubbed to powder, and mixed with fat, is much used by the Beetjuans to smear their skin and hair; and for that purpose large quantities of it are brought by them from this spot. The cave bears the name of Sibihlong, and it is the most southern point to which the wanderings of the Beetjuan people extend. The colonists call the mountain Blinklip *(glittering rock)*, and formerly used to relate stories concerning it of extravagance beyond all bounds.

We went into the cavern, carrying lighted lanthorns in our hands; and when we had descended about thirty paces, came to an archway not more than a foot and a half in height. Through this we were obliged to crawl, when we entered a sort of passage, running in a horizontal direction, by which we soon arrived at a spacious lofty-arched room, whence issued six or eight other caverns. All about the arched sides and roof, the chrystals sparkled with the reflection of our lights, and our hands and cloaths had acquired, from the soft and greasy nature of the stone, quite a shining brown appearance. Large pieces of the stone were broke off with a little exertion, and great masses about the roof seemed ready to be shaken down with any convulsion.

A few weeks before, as Kok told us, three Beetjuans, having broke off a piece of the stone incautiously, or perhaps, in order to see the better, having made too large a fire, occasioned a violent shock; and when search was made for them, it was found that they had fallen into a large cavern in the interior of the mountain. Although there was nothing disagreeable in our situation, as far as damp or cold were concerned, yet the idea of so dreadful an example made us soon retrace our steps, and quit the cavern: two of the company still endeavoured to explore a steep passage to the left, just at the entrance. They, however, returned almost immediately, having found the fresh dung of a lion: this seemed to indicate that it was not safe to venture farther.

After we had examined two other small cavities on the opposite side of the mountain, and given our cattle food and water, with the latter of which they were furnished from a stream that flowed at the foot of the mountain, we proceeded on our way, and came to a tolerably extensive plain, lying on a regular even slope, which had scarcely any soil: the surface consisted almost entirely of a grey quartz, whence shot out, in some places, single hard crystals, capable of resisting, for a long time, the impression of the air. From the refts in this slopy surface a few small succulent plants sprung up, particularly of the *stopelium* and *mesembryanthemum* tribe: of the latter, were several wholly new to me: these were not a little annoying to our horses and oxen, into whose hoofs they frequently stuck. On this plain we espied a considerable herd of buffaloes, to which we immediately gave chase, and a large bull was shot. He was still alive when we came up to him, and so enraged, tearing the ground with his horns, notwithstanding that a large quantity of blood had already flowed from the great artery of the neck, which was shot through, that nobody dared to go near so powerful a creature, struggling with the agonies of death, till the conflict was ended. He was then cut up, and one of the waggons was freighted with some of the best pieces of his flesh. While we were performing this business, I was struck with a peculiarity in the structure of this animal, which has been overlooked by Sparrman and other accurate observers: this is the extraordinary breadth of the rib-bones; they almost unite the one with the other, so that on the outer side nothing at all is to be seen of the intercostal muscles.

At a little spring, which is called the Stompjesfontein, our people found some tin buttons with the number nine upon them, which we immediately

recognized as buttons belonging to the uniform of the ninth battalion of Batavian jägers ; probably, some deserter from that corps had here ended his life. Another unhappy being of the same description, a German, was mentioned to us by Kok, who described, in an affecting manner, the questionable mode of his appearance, the solitary unsteady life that he led, without arms, and almost without clothes, wandering about these widely-extended deserts, with no other companions than wild beasts and wild men. Kok had promised to carry him back into the colony, and recommend him to a person of his acquaintance ; but our arrival had terrified him with the idea that he would be taken and delivered up to us. He had, for this reason, disappeared, nor was he ever after heard of.

Our hunters expected to find a great deal of the larger sorts of game in the country we were now to traverse, and therefore rode on before, since the noise of our whole convoy together would probably frighten them. The horse that I brought with me from the Cape-Town being almost exhausted with hardships, and the want of proper food, I was obliged to forego the pleasure of accompanying them, and to content myself with insect-hunting near the waggons. We had scarcely travelled an hour, when the Hottentots called our attention to some object on a hill not far off on the left hand, which seemed to move. The head of something appeared almost immediately after, feeding on the other side of the hill; and it was concluded that it must be that of a very large animal: this was confirmed, when, after going scarcely a hundred steps farther, two tall swan-necked giraffes stood almost directly before us. Our transports were indescribable, particularly as the creatures themselves did not perceive us, and therefore gave us full time to examine them, and to prepare for an earnest and serious chace. The one was smaller, and of a paler colour than the other, which Vischer immediately pronounced to be a colt, the child of the larger. Our horses were saddled, and our guns loaded in an instant, when the chace commenced. Since all the wild animals of Africa run against the wind, so that we were pretty well assured which way the course of these objects of our ardent wishes would be directed, Vischer, as the most experienced hunter, separated himself from us, and, by a circuit, took the animals in front, that he might stop their way, while I was to attack them in the rear. I had almost got within shot of them, when they perceived me, and began to fly in the direction we expected. But their flight was so beyond all idea extraordinary, that between laughter, asto-

nishment, and delight, I almost forgot my designs upon the harmless creatures' lives. From the extravagant disproportion between the height of the fore to that of the hinder parts, and of the height to the length of the animal, great obstacles are presented to its moving with any degree of swiftness. When Le Vaillant asserts that he has seen the giraffe trot, he spares me any farther trouble in proving that this animal never presented itself alive before him. How in the world should an animal, so disproportioned in height, before and behind, trot? The giraffe can only gallop, as I can affirm from my own experience, having seen between forty and fifty at different times, both in their slow and hasty movement, for they only step when they are feeding quietly. But this gallop is so heavy and unwieldly, and seems performed with so much labour, that in a distance of more than a hundred paces, comparing the ground cleared, with the size of the animal, and of the surrounding objects, it might almost be said that a man goes faster on foot. The heaviness of the movement is only compensated by the length of the steps, each one of which clears on a moderate computation from twelve to sixteen feet. On account of the size and weight of the fore-parts, the giraffe cannot move forwards through the power of the muscles alone; he must bend back his long neck, by which the centre of gravity is thrown somewhat more behind, so as to assist his march; then alone is it possible for him to raise his fore-legs from the ground. The neck is however thrown back without being itself bent, it remains stiff and erect, and moves in this erect form slowly backwards and forwards with the motion of the legs, almost like the mast of a ship dancing upon the waves, or, according to the phrase used by the sailors, a *reeling-ship*.* It is not difficult to overtake the giraffe with a tolerably good horse, especially if the ground be advantageous, and somewhat on the rise; for it will be easily comprehended that it must be extremely difficult for a creature of such a structure to move upon the ascent.

The extraordinary motion of this animal, the fatigue he seemed to experience in heaving up his fore-legs, and the stiff manner in which they

---

* It has been said that the movement of the *knight* at chess was borrowed from that of the giraffe. If there be any truth in this notion, it can refer only to the springing over every thing; not to its oblique motion, which is wholly foreign to that of the giraffe.

came to the ground, so rivetted my attention, that my ardour in the pursuit of him was for a moment checked, and recollection was wholly lost in observation. I soon however set my horse again into a gallop, and sprang towards this wonderful figure, while he, probably never before interrupted by a human being, and perfectly unsuspicious of our evil designs, stood there, looking with an eye of curiosity towards me, without seeming to be aware of my companion. That companion had already approached the animal in front, but unluckily he had not patience to wait a few moments longer before he fired, and taking his aim at too great a distance, the shot failed. Alarmed, the creatures now ran with redoubled swiftness; besides which, a minute was necessarily lost in re-loading and cocking the gun, in which they got the start of us very considerably. Our horses, though already out of breath, were again spurred on; but we should never have come up with the giraffes, if they had not suddenly turned round, having probably seen some of our companions, who had gone on before, or had the idea of some other danger, and come directly towards us. By this means they were soon within our reach, when Vischer, hastily dismounting from his horse, fired, and the young one fell. The old one immediately renewed her flight more eagerly than before, and was hit by my fire, but not in a mortal part. I followed her still awhile by the track of the blood, but she quickly got the start of me very much, and my horse was so completely wearied, that I was forced to give the thing up. I then returned to my companion, whom I found sitting upon the neck of our fallen prey. He called to me not to approach incautiously, since the animal, though wounded in the spine, had yet a great deal of strength remaining, and had made several efforts to spring up again, which he was seeking to prevent by keeping the neck down. As our companions soon after re-joined us, we released the poor giraffe from his confinement: this was no sooner done, than, though almost at the last gasp, it endeavoured by a powerful spring of its long neck to raise itself up, and remained for some instants with its body half raised from the ground. It then fell again, from weakness; but in falling, the left horn struck against a stone, which considerably injured the beauty of the skull.

As night was coming on, we all united with the utmost diligence in cutting up our prize, the skin of which, with the most important parts of

the skeleton, and some pieces for the kitchen, were carried away. After the head was separated from the neck, and the whole fore-part was laid open, we began four of us to work at stripping the thighs, when a last convulsive palpitation of the whole tendon muscles scattered us on all sides, not in a very gentle manner. Two Hottentots who were at work on the hinder hoofs were struck with such force as to be thrown to the distance of three or four paces, and I myself received a blow on the head from the front hoof which I felt pretty severely for several days. In all the larger quadrupeds, particularly the buffalo, I have observed an extraordinary irritability in the muscular fibres, which probably arises principally from the vital warmth remaining so much longer in so large a mass before it can be wholly expended. The muscles in the thighs, for example, I have known not unfrequently tremble at being touched with the knife even an hour after they were separated from the body.

Very reluctantly did we leave the rest of our prize a prey to the Bosjesmans, whose fires were already to be seen on the neighbouring hills. We passed the night without being molested by them, taking up our quarters at the foot of a pretty high hill, from a wild wooded dell in which flowed a plentiful stream, called by the colonists Klipfontein, but by the natives *Maputi*. We remained here half the following day, that we might pack and arrange our booty with the utmost possible care. The skin of the giraffe was well cleaned, and rubbed over with various sorts of spices and other preservatives; but though every possible precaution was taken, such was its thickness, that we could not wholly preserve it from injury: in several places the outer skin had decayed and fallen off with the hair. When well cleaned and spiced, it was spread upon the tilt of the waggon to be dried, and almost covered it, the long neck reaching to the middle of the shaft, and the feet almost touching the ground. The height of this young animal in front, from the point of the horns to the end of the toes, was thirteen feet four inches; the neck was somewhat more than five feet in length, the leg from the tip of the shoulder-blade to the toe was nearly eight feet; the hinder legs were six feet and a half; the length of the body to the beginning of the tail seven feet. At dinner we had a most luxurious repast from the produce of our hunting parties, and our cook exerted all his art to make us excellent buffalo-soup, ragout of steinbock, fricassee

of pintados, and roasted giraffe. The latter in particular was uncommonly tender, and no less well-flavoured, extremely white, and strongly resembling veal. It was the unanimous opinion of the whole party, that among all the wild animals of Southern Africa, none was in flavour equal to the giraffe.

We had scarcely travelled an hour farther in the afternoon, when we discovered, not more than a hundred paces from the road side, the place where the unfortunate Hottentots had buried the father and daughter who first fell by the hands of the Bosjesmans. They had described the spot to us very accurately, and begged that we would examine whether the bodies were untouched. We found the grave not only disturbed, but both bodies dragged out of the ground, and mangled in a horrible manner; they were however little corrupted, the victims having been stuck through with hassagais, not shot with poisoned arrows. We stopped to bury them in deeper graves, and, according to the Hottentot custom, pressed down the earth upon them with large stones. As it began to grow dark, we stopped upon a very barren spot, destitute of water, so that we were obliged to give our cattle the water we had brought with us in two large wine casks. At our arrival in this place, we met a considerable flock of gnus, and after dark a numerous troop of quaggas passed our camp at full gallop.

We spent this night again without sleep, the whole party being under the greatest anxiety lest a serious attack should be made upon us by the Bosjesmans. Our dogs barked incessantly on all sides, and some of the most courageous among us, who, favoured by the darkness, had crept upon all-fours under the low bushes at a little distance from the camp, returned with the information that not far off there were a considerable number of men assembled. Our precautionary measures were therefore doubled, and we all remained the whole night under arms. This watchfulness probably saved us from some mischance, for the next morning, when we examined the environs, we discovered in a circle of about two hundred paces round our camp abundant footsteps of the Bosjesmans. Our experienced hunters pronounced, from the marks left, that there must have been at least fifty prowling about.

We now hastened forwards in search of water for our thirsty cattle, and after travelling more than three hours, came to a half-dried lake, overgrown with reeds, called by the Beetjuans, Rissipien: here were abundance of

wild-ducks and water-hens. Among the mimosa bushes around the lake traces were visible of its having been very recently the abode of a considerable horde of Bosjesmans. The boughs were in a great many places bent down to the ground, some were even fastened into it with small pins, after the usual fashion of these people: there were also many loose and broken arrows scattered about. As we proceeded forwards, towards evening, some of our hunters, who had rode on, came back with the agreeable information that about two hours distant they had killed a very large male giraffe, entirely of a dark brown colour, which they had covered over well with bushes, hanging a pocket-handkerchief upon a staff as a flag, to secure it from the wild beasts, and they had no doubt of finding it safe in the morning. Kok assured us that he had never seen a larger and handsomer animal: he thought that it could not be less than twenty feet in height.

We stopped for the night in a pleasant valley, which was indeed almost an entire meadow: through it meandered a small stream, every part of which contained water, though not in great abundance; this spot is called by the Beetjuans *Koossi*, that is, *the rich*. On the north side stretches a long hill, flattened at the top, and, towards the plain, richly overgrown with trees and shrubs. We found our situation here so much the more agreeable, since our camp stood in an entirely open place, so that no Bosjesman could approach it undiscovered. Although our Hottentots had scarcely had any rest for several days, they passed half the night in sports round the fire, which enlivened and amused us scarcely less as spectators than them as actors. At day-break we set forwards in search of the giraffe, which our friends supposed they had left in perfect security; but, alas! when we arrived at the spot, we found nothing of the animal remaining except the entrails; the rest had been carried away by the Bosjesmans. To our astonishment, we could only trace the footsteps of four men, who must therefore in that short portion of time have conveyed away a weight of at least a thousand pounds. I have always been assured that the Bosjesmans, notwithstanding their diminutive size, and apparent slightness of structure, are capable of supporting almost incredible burthens, and they can carry away a large quantity of flesh so much the more readily, since they never stop to flay the animal, but cut flesh, skin, and hair off all together. How gladly would we have spared them all the flesh, provided they would have left us the skin and the bones.

In our return to the camp, we met a large flock of antelopes, of a species quite new to me, and little known in the colony: they are only to be found north of the Orange river, and are called by the hunters bastard-elands. They approach in size pretty near to the genuine elands, but differ from them in being a darker colour, and in having horns that bend backwards. They are considered as the most mischievous of all the antelope species, and instances have been known among the savages, not only of their turning and running at their pursuers with their pointed horns, but even of their wounding them mortally. I never but once besides saw a flock of these animals; and that was in our return: but in both instances they were at a considerable distance from me.

While we were thus vainly seeking the slaughtered giraffe, our companions had not been idle; they had not only killed some quaggas, two large troops of which had in the night passed by our camp to the river, but had also shot a great number of pintados and partridges. These birds were in such abundance here, that not less than fifteen or twenty partridges sometimes fell at a shot. The pintados, of which there were commonly some hundreds together, ran with incredible swiftness among the bushes, and we were forced to send our dogs to hunt them out again. We afterwards learnt a better manner of pursuing them, and shot them in great numbers at the closing in of night, as they were perching upon the trees about. But as their flesh is somewhat hard, and not very well-flavoured, we in the sequel did not much concern ourselves about them, but rather confined ourselves to their eggs, which are particularly good, and of which we collected very large quantities. On our return we took some of the young ones alive, which soon became so tame, that when we stopped for the night, we suffered them to run about unrestrained and perch upon the trees, whence they always returned to us in the morning very punctually to be fed, and were then put into their cages to proceed on the journey with us.

On the following day, at noon, after having maintained a constant hunt of antelopes and quaggas for several miles, we met at length with four giraffes, to which immediate chase was given on all sides. When we had pursued them some time, a troop of ten of the same creatures appeared from another quarter, and uniting with the first, they all took a direction favourable for us, up the declivity of a long hill. The hope of being able

here to come near enough to get a fair shot at them was doubly disappointed by my falling from my horse, and by the gun of another of the company going off unintentionally, from the owner carrying it in a careless manner. The report of it frightened the animals, and they fled with much greater speed than before. A third of the company did indeed afterwards wound one of them, but at the same moment, when we had got so near as to have been able to fire with effect, we were all unfortunately destitute of weapons. My piece had been injured in the lock by my fall, and while I was trying to repair it, the objects of my aim were soon out of my reach. We would not however wholly abandon the pursuit, since we observed that the animal who had been shot lost blood very much; and as our horses were extremely wearied, we followed them awhile on foot, having seen them halt upon the plain. On drawing near them, they however again took to flight, so that we were ultimately constrained to desist, and to think of returning, as the pursuit had carried us southwards; the sun was besides already declining pretty fast.

Large troops of quaggas, hartebeests, and ostriches, now passed us, without our thinking of molesting them: it was more difficult to resist ten or twelve gnus who came towards us, and who, by their boldness, and the wonderful springs they made, seemed to court us to the attack: we shot one, which proved to be a female. As we had not yet obtained an entire skin or skull of this animal, we carried away both, as well as a fœtus which we found within. So much time was spent in this, that it was almost dark when we once more set forwards. It now appeared, to our no small chagrin, that our horses were absolutely exhausted; that two of them, even, from the pitiless manner in which they had been treated, could not easily be made to move from the spot. I resolved therefore to dispatch Mong, who was our best rider, to the camp, with a commission to procure fresh horses to be sent to us, while I and Van-der-Westhuizen followed slowly. We still awhile led our horses on, but at length I was compelled to abandon mine entirely to his fate, as he was too much fatigued even to proceed at a foot's-pace. After some hours, we came to a low spot overgrown with bushes, which gave us some uneasiness, as it was very likely to be a haunt of the Bosjesmans; but we soon found that they were not the only enemies to be feared. We had scarcely gone a hundred steps, when our ears were saluted with the

roaring of a lion. I suggested that we should not attempt to go any farther, but make a fire, and wait the arrival of the fresh horses. This my companion opposed, assuring me that our death was inevitable if the light of the fire should betray us to the Bosjesmans, and they should see that we were only two. To go farther, however, seemed equally unadviseable, on account of the lion; since, if we proceeded, as we should get at length to the windward of him, he might find prey to be at hand, and might chuse to make a meal of us. To complete our disaster, we were nearly destitute of arms: my gun was rendered useless by its accident; Van-der-Westhuizen's was, indeed, loaded, but he had no more balls, and some that I had were of too small calibre for his piece. We returned back to the height, and by the feeble remains of light afforded us for the next quarter of an hour, we thought we discovered that the upper part of the valley was not bushy, and that by taking a circuit we might avoid the thicket and the lion.

This circuit we made, and came directly under a hill through a deep rocky valley, along which we were often obliged to climb our way with our hands and feet. Scarcely were we again on even ground, when our horse, who smelt the lion, or some other beast of prey, suddenly sprung from us, and, notwithstanding his weariness, galloped away at full speed. It was not without great trouble that we caught him again, but with the loss of our whole day's booty, for the skin and skull of the gnu, with which he was loaded, were gone. The moon, which had hitherto favoured us, was now set; the night was completely dark; and the track of our waggons was entirely lost, owing to the circuit we had been obliged to take. Seeking our way with our hands and feet, we kept along the edge of the thicket, and after groping for a considerable time, felt at length, as we thought, very decidedly the tracks of wheels.

We now hoped to find our companions at the foot of a hill which lay before us; and by the exertion of our last strength, which was nearly exhausted, as we had not eaten any thing for four-and-twenty hours, we at length reached it. How great however was our disappointment not to find any traces of them! how much greater, when ascending a little way, we looked around in hopes of seeing a fire, which might indicate to us where they were, but could not discern any thing like one! all was involved in continued darkness. In the valley below we heard the noise of numberless

Jackals, the usual companions of the lions ; and the idea of this new danger brought the courage of my companion, which hitherto I had supported tolerably well by my consolations and exhortations, once more into question. He could no longer restrain his murmurs and repinings : first he cursed the giraffes, then the landdrost and me, who had inveigled him into taking this journey, through which he should now at this early age come to such a miserable end. It was clear, that whether we should stop or proceed, the danger was equal; probably Mong himself had not reached the camp. Our strength was wholly exhausted, and as we must not venture to make a fire, the cold would deprive us wholly of our senses, and leave us a certain prey to the wild beasts.

Although I was not myself in the most courageous humour possible, and in my heart was disposed to be extremely angry with our careless companions, I rallied my young man very much upon his cowardice, and endeavoured even to render it laughable to himself. In any case, I observed it was expedient that we should endeavour to defend our lives; and in order to do so the more effectually, alike against the cowardly Bosjesmans, and the fierce beasts of prey, it was essential to make a fire, that we might at least have one enemy the less in the cold. I proposed, therefore, that each should watch alternately, while the other was taking rest, having with him the gun, with our last remaining charge ; and standing at a little distance from the fire, the better to espy any danger that might approach. Without waiting for his consent, I proceeded to execute my plan ; and taking the gun upon my shoulder, went out upon the watch, leaving him to rest and warm himself by the fire. I had not been long at my post before I heard a shot, the joyful signal that our companion Mong was not far off, and I immediately answered by firing my piece. His joy at finding us was scarcely less than our own, for he had experienced no small uneasiness on our account. The company had been obliged to proceed on a long way, in order to obtain water, and Mong, from his horse being so extremely fatigued, was very late before he arrived in the camp. He brought horses with him, on which we immediately mounted, and soon after midnight rejoined the rest of the party. Here we were refreshed with a warm drink of wine and ginger, which revived us exceedingly, and in the evening of the next day our horses were brought back to us by some Hottentots whom we sent in search of them.

We were now upon the very verge of the Beetjuan country: a little hill alone separated it from us. This we ascended early the next morning, and on quitting an opening like a gateway in the last row of hills, a wide extended plain, scattered over with single large trees, was spread out before us. Kok now welcomed our arrival in the promised land, and made us observe that all things here wore a very different and much more pleasing aspect than what we had been accustomed to see of late. The country was every where green with excellent grass, and decorated with trees and shrubs; the sight of it filled our hearts with joy, and expectation was strongly awakened with respect to the many new and remarkable objects with which we were to be presented.

THE END OF PART VI.

PART VII.

STAY WITH THE BEETJUAN TRIBE OF MAATJAPING BY THE RIVER KURUHMAN, RETURN TO THE CAPE TOWN, AND VOYAGE TO EUROPE.

CHAP. XLIX.

First Interview with some Beetjuan Herdsmen—Arrival at the Residence of the King Mulihawang.—Visit of the King to the Travellers.—Friendly Intercourse with the Savages.—Solemn Audience given by the King.—Description of the Town.—A House described.—Visit to the High-priest.—Names of Individuals.

Under the shade of a tall and wide spreading giraffe tree, the *acacia giraffæ* of Wildenow, were lying the first men whom we saw after we entered the celebrated district, by which our curiosity was so much excited. They were herdsmen watching their numerous herds of cattle, that were grazing in the meadows around. They seemed struck at the sight of our cavalcade, and observed it awhile as if irresolute and undecided what they were to think of it, but at length approached, after repeating the word *Morra*, meaning *good morning*, which they had learnt from the missionaries. When they perceived Kok among us, they evinced the utmost astonishment and delight, by clapping their hands, and by repeated bursts of laughter. They begged some tobacco of us, and then, according to their duty, returned back to their posts.

Although, to judge from the first friendly reception, there seemed no occasion to have any apprehensions of what was to follow, I nevertheless resolved to advance first with Kok and M. Winterbach, to investigate the dispositions of the people, and particularly that of the king, before we ventured too far. We soon came to a little village of about thirty flat spherical huts, from which a number of women and children and some men came out, observing us with eager curiosity, but with perfect confidence. Here we stopped till our waggons came up; and here also we found Kok universally known, and, as it appeared, highly beloved. The children pressed around him, kissing and caressing him, while the grown people asked him a thousand questions con-

cerning his unexpected return, expressing great astonishment at it; they enquired also of every thing that had happened to him among his own people. Nothing seemed to excite their interest so much as the unhappy fate of the Hottentots David and Jantje. Kok seated himself upon the front bench of a waggon, and related to them in their own language all the particulars of this catastrophe, to which they listened with downcast looks, yet eager not to lose a word that fell from his lips, now and then repeating something after him, as a mark of their attention: at the end of every period they said, *Eh, Eh, (yes, yes)* to shew that they understood him perfectly. When he had concluded, they broke into lamentations for the death of their two friends, assuring Kok that they had given them the most earnest warnings not to undertake the journey. The lengthened tone with which they repeated the words of exhortation they had used *tiba Jantje, tihba, tiihba* (stay Jantje, stay, do stay) had something in it so truly impressive and affecting, that even the most rugged among our company were struck, and seemed to feel it deeply. For the rest, they had already some knowledge of the affair from the neighbouring Bosjesmans themselves. From them they had also heard at the same time, when we could scarcely have left the last village of the Bastard Hottentots, that a train of four waggons was upon the road towards their country, so that our arrival was not wholly unexpected. They assured us, that the Bosjesmans have such an uninterrupted communication with each other through their signals by fire, that they know every thing that is going forwards in the country much earlier and more accurately than any other nation. Individuals of these people, they said, sometimes came to their herdsmen alone and unarmed to beg food of them, and in return would communicate any news of which they were possessed.

They now in a courteous and friendly, but somewhat pressing manner, asked us for tobacco, and no sooner was any given to one than all came forwards, stretching out their hands, in hopes that they also might be equally favoured. We made Kok tell them that we were unwilling to diminish our stock by mere presents, that we wished to give it in exchange for articles of their cloathing or ornaments. To this they answered with great simplicity, that they were too poor to have any thing worth offering to us, since they were only herdsmen; we must make these proposals when we should reach the river Kuruhman, where lived the rich people of the country, to whom

these herds belonged. As each received a little of the tobacco they grew much more talkative, and gabbled so fast to each other that it was scarcely possible to distinguish one word from another; I could only make out the words *manati*, good, and *makua*, white person, which they frequently repeated as they rubbed the tobacco, and rammed it down into their bone pipes: this seemed done to make us understand that we were welcome into the country.

As we had been taught to believe that the Beetjuans were very distrustful, and that there was great reason to be anxious about our own lives while in their power, such decided proofs of their confidence rejoiced us very much, and disposed us to be equally confiding. While we took our cold dinner, as usual, upon a mat spread on the ground, they all seated themselves round us, at first without asking for any thing, though very much pleased to receive whatever was given them, for we every now and then offered some of them a piece of our meat. By degrees they drew nearer and nearer, and at length came and seated themselves between us upon the mat, and did not wait to be invited before they helped themselves. In this the female part of the company were much more forward than the men, exactly as if they presumed that we should expect some favours from them in return. A little lively woman in particular, who did not appear more than fourteen or fifteen years of age, and who had laid her sucking child down upon the ground a few paces from us, seemed to have such confidence in the power of her roguish eyes, that, without any scruple or hesitation, she took the best bits from the dishes, and even from our hands. As we examined with great attention her clothes, her earrings, her necklace, and other ornaments, she seemed extremely delighted; she even took off some of the ornaments, and gave them into our hands to examine, reaching out her hair, richly smeared over with fat and mica, for us to feel it: nay, she did not even evince the least distrust when we took in our hands the weapons which the people had brought with them.

Extremely satisfied with this first reception, I proceeded on my way with Kok and Winterbach, while the waggons followed slowly; after awhile they stopped entirely at a place indicated, where they were to wait our return. We soon came to the banks of the river Kuruhman, towards which we had descended for some hours, and arrived at the spot Kok had inhabited, and where his hut was now standing. From hence there was only a half

hour's ride to the principal place, the residence of the king Mulihawang. A pleasant way through a not very thick wood of tall thorns carried us thither. A short time before we arrived at the place, we passed through an open field, where a number of men were employed in business, others seemed only taking a walk in the evening sun. On the opposite side of this field was again a little thicket of mimosas; beyond which, rose one pointed roof after another, as far as our eyes could reach. Three large giraffe-trees stood at equal distances among them, dividing the site symmetrically, for the center one was the largest; this, as Kok told us, was the king's favourite tree, under which he sat very often. We were no sooner espied than the whole population of the place swarmed out upon us, so as almost to obstruct our way. All greeted Kok in the most friendly manner, while he on his side, to free himself in some sort from their importunities, eagerly inquired after the king; on this they made way, and pointed to the spot, where Mulihawang himself was coming slowly and solemnly towards us.

A tall figure was now presented to our view, having very marked features, and appearing about sixty years of age; he was clothed in a large mantle, and wore on his head a rough high pointed cap. He was followed by four other men in a row, all clad in the same manner, and appearing nearly of his own age: a number of people pressed about him on all sides. We dismounted, and while we were still embarrassed how to salute him, he reached out his right-hand in silence to touch our's; then turning to Kok, who, as an old acquaintance, he greeted more heartily, he took both his hands, pressing them eagerly. Here again some time was passed in the necessary explanations of Kok's speedy return, and the occasion of our visit. To my great joy I discovered, that through my diligence in learning the Beetjuan language, I could even now make out the general sense of what passed; indeed, I understood almost every word said by my instructor Kok, who himself spoke the language with a Dutch accent and construction. The king expressed himself as extremely pleased with our visit, and promised to bid us welcome that very day in our own camp. Then followed again the history of the two Hottentots, which I begged to abridge, that we might not be kept too late before we returned to our companions, and that the curious populace might not get there sooner than ourselves, which would very much have impeded the formation of our camp. We soon therefore took our leave, and hastened

back, when we found our company at the river, close to Kok's habitation, busied in making the proper arrangements for our longer stay; they were exceedingly rejoiced at hearing of the good reception we had experienced.

The precautions necessary for securing our property against the little thefts to be apprehended from so numerous a train of visitors, and to keep out of sight things which might have drawn upon us troublesome importunities, were scarcely completed, when the *corps d'avance* appeared; they were followed almost immediately by the king himself. We went towards him, and when he had saluted my colleagues by touching their hands, we led him to our tent, where he was informed, standing (for he seemed to despise the seat offered him) of the objects of our visit. The principal object Kok represented to be the wish of the Dutch government to enter upon an intercourse of traffick with his country, and to live in friendship with him and his people: we were sent, he said, to bring him assurances of good-will on the part of our government, and, as a proof of it, to make him some little presents. He answered, not without dignity, and as if the presents were a matter of perfect indifference to him, that he had not the least objection to strangers visiting his country, provided they came with pacific views; in particular, any one would be welcome who was brought by his friend Kok, whom he was not a little rejoiced to see again. He had suspected Kok, he said, to have some secret reason for leaving the country, and that he never intended to return, so that his re-appearance gave him the greater pleasure, since it afforded a new proof of his good disposition—his *white heart*, as the king expressed himself. We now learnt, that the four old men, who immediately followed him, were his counsellors, and that two younger men of his train were his sons. One of them, who was heir to the throne, Methībe by name, appeared about thirty years old: he had a very pleasing countenance, with much intelligence in his features: the other, by name Molīmo, was third son to the king: he was tall in stature, large boned, and with an ugly but good-humoured physiognomy. Both of them, like all the other young men, were bare-headed, having their hair drawn into short tufts, and rubbed over with the shining metallic ointment. During the conversation, the king threw open his mantle, and displayed a profusion of ivory rings upon his arms; both above and below the elbow: he had, besides, necklaces of several sorts, from which hung amulets of various descriptions, made of the

bones of animals, and other materials. All the men wore a short garment, closed round from the middle of the body, half way down the thigh: it was made of a sort of shining tanned leather: they had sandals of thick leather on their feet, and round their legs, instead of stockings, leather thongs were twined: the knees, the body, and the breast, were entirely naked.

While the king was speaking, all the rest of the company observed a profound silence; but when he had concluded, those who were at some distance began to beg tobacco of our people. This reminded us that it would be proper to offer the king a pipe; we therefore presented him and both the princes with clay pipes filled with tobacco, which they immediately lighted, and began to smoak with great solemnity, squatted upon the ground, according to the custom of all the savages in Southern Africa: they drew in very large draughts, great part of which they swallowed, Mulihawang himself performing the greatest feats in this way. When he was satisfied, he reached the pipe over his shoulder to his minister, who drew in ten or a dozen strokes, and then, with deep sighs, which brought the water into his eyes, nose, and mouth, gave it to his next neighbour. In like manner, the pipes of the princes were handed to their train, and travelled for some time from mouth to mouth, till at length they returned to them again. A little comical fellow, who was very busy about the king, and more familiar with him than the rest, who we afterwards learnt was his *valet-de-chambre* and *principal fool*, would not be easy till the king had ordered one of the people to hand him the pipe. When he had got it, he drew in the smoak so eagerly, that in a few minutes he was entirely stupefied. Some of the other attendants laid him on the ground, and trampled gently with their feet upon his body, which drove out again the smoak he had swallowed, and he soon recovered.

As the evening was coming on, the king began to prepare for his return home, At taking leave, he said he was sorry that we had established our camp so far from his habitation, since it would prevent his seeing as much of us as he wished, moving about not being very easy to him. As we were, however, fully convinced how necessary it must be to avoid too great an intimacy and community at first with this numerous tribe of savages, we excused ourselves from changing our quarters, saying, that the present situation of our camp was more convenient to us, on account of the good feed and water it afforded for our cattle, who were in great need of being recruited.

We promised his majesty, however, that our frequent visits should spare him the inconvenience of coming to us. At the same time we begged permission to wait upon him the next morning, to have some farther conversation on the objects of our mission, and to see the town. Kok accompanied him a part of his way home, and at his return told us that the king had communicated to him secretly his wish that only the presents destined for him as king should be given him in public; that any ornaments or delicacies for eating, should be presented in private, since, if his people should know of his possessing them, he should have no rest; they would be continually begging, and he should not be able to avoid sharing even the smallest trifle with them.

Scarcely was the king's back turned, when the people who remained became much more importunate, asking for tobacco, brandy, and other presents. As Kok was gone with the king, we were afraid lest our hesitation should give occasion to misunderstandings and discontents, and I therefore endeavoured to put forth all my treasure of knowledge in the Beetjuan language, to make them understand that the traffick should be opened the next day, but that they could not have what they wanted at that moment, at least, as presents. Instead of murmuring at this, they remained with the same confidence as before: their whole attention seemed absorbed by my addressing them in their own language. *Muhnto-si bua Beetjuana*, the man speaks Beetjuan, they repeated to each other a hundred times, forgetting every thing that they had asked for before; and all began talking to me with such rapidity and vivacity, that I could not understand a word. I was obliged therefore to break off the conversation, somewhat ashamed of myself, that I had been so forward in putting forth my knowledge.

To our astonishment, not a single woman appeared among this party. By the intervention of a Hottentot who could speak the Coran language, which is understood by many of the Beetjuans, and spoken by them with considerable fluency, we asked the reason of this, when we were answered that they were at home, and must work. Very few among them had brought arms of any kind; a fresh proof that they entertained no injurious suspicions of us. The thing which gave us the most pleasure during this conversation, was to learn that the war with Muruhlong, of which the fugitive missionaries seemed to be in such extreme terror, had never absolutely broke out. Mulihawang had expected support in the attack he meditated, from the Corans of the Vaal-

river, and sent his son Mathībe to them with this view. But this prince had returned three days before, not having been able to prevail upon them to take any part in the attack, and Mulihawang did not think himself sufficiently strong to undertake it without assistance. By degrees all our guests departed, except a few of the poor, as they stiled themselves, who remained, and slept quietly at night near our waggons.

The next morning some of our acquaintance were very early at our camp, when we remarked that they were dressed as if it was a holiday. Some wore handsomer cloaks of the skins of jackals or genet-cats, and all were fresh rubbed over with the shining ointment; the hair being particularly thick and glittering with it. As they had walked fast, and were in a great heat, big drops of dew stood on their countenances, which, mixed with this shining material, looked like beads of quicksilver. A young man soon appeared, with a really noble aspect, and dressed more sumptuously than the rest, having a number of ivory rings round his left arm: he was announced to us as a messenger from the king, and he came to say that he was appointed by his majesty to be our guide and protector for the day (a sort of guard of honour), and was ordered to conduct us to the town. We followed him through the thicket of mimosas by a nearer foot-path, and soon came to a very pretty well-shaded spot. About halfway we saw some women employed in cutting down wood, who immediately came up to us, repeating very earnestly the word *Montjuko*, tobacco. As we were going to give them some, our protector withheld us, and scolded the women exceedingly, bidding them go back to their business, and threatening to strike them with his *sjambok* if they did not obey instantly. They, however, far from minding him, grumbled exceedingly, and disregarding his menaces, renewed their importunities. We therefore at length gave them a little, but this was taken very much amiss by our protector; he complained to Kok, and said it was not right that tobacco should be given to these ordinary women, which had been refused the day before to men of distinction, and he desired the missionary to hint to us that we must never offend again in the like manner.

When we arrived at the plain where stands the town, a great number of people came out to meet us, women and children, as well as men. These our protector put aside, ordering them to make way for our train; those who were the most troublesome, he drove away with his *sjambok*. On entering

the town,* we came immediately into a pretty wide street, running part between houses, partly between the hedges that surrounded the kraals for the cattle. The houses were all of a circular form, with the roof running up to a point; the roof rests upon a circle of posts, which are united together below by thin walls of loam; above, for a little way below the roof, they are left open to admit light and air. At the doors, which are almost all to the street, sat a great many women and children, who looked at us very quietly as we passed by. Farther on, we came to some places where there were neither shrubs nor grass, and then again to several little crooked streets, of unequal breadth. As the circular houses, and the quadrangular kraals between them, are placed in all directions, with regard to the neighbouring houses, the streets are, properly speaking, little else than open spaces, having no regularity, either in their direction or their breadth.

The tall giraffe-tree reminded us that we were approaching the habitation of the king. We entered a large quadrangular space, well-fenced round, in the middle of which this tree, having three stems, rose. The place was now empty; only Mulihawang with his counsellors lay upon the ground at the entrance, basking in the sun. He no sooner saw us than he rose up, received us very cordially, and while he gave his right hand by turns to us all, with his left he pointed to the tree, as if inviting us to accompany him under its shade. He went slowly and silently before us, till we were directly under the tree, then turned round, and seemed waiting to know our pleasure. At the same time he made up a very solemn mien; and throwing all possible dignity into his somewhat melancholy countenance, in which there were many venerable wrinkles, he gave us to understand that here, between the stems of this tree, he was, as it were, upon his throne in full majesty.

Kok was now desired by us to repeat the assurances of friendship from the Dutch government at the Cape, and to represent us as ambassadors from the governor. The king, having no conception of the nature of the establishment in the colony, could not easily be made to understand our relation with the government. At first, he took the landdrost for the governor himself, and could not be reconciled to the idea of an inferior magistrate. As I had heard

---

* I call this place a *town*, though it has neither walls nor gates, for an assemblage of six hundred houses, and five thousand inhabitants, seems too large to be denominated a village.

that among these people, the king's sons alone were sent on embassies, I advised our calling ourselves the sons of the governor, and then the king seemed thoroughly satisfied upon the subject. We now produced the presents. They consisted of a thick stick five feet in length, with a large metal head, on which was engraved the letters B. R. the cypher of the Batavian republic, with the name of Mulihawang, and the date of the year, of a roll containing about ten pounds of tobacco, some pounds of glass beads of all colours, some dozens of large smooth steel buttons, some knives, some brass-wire, &c. &c. This was only a part of the presents destined for him: according to his desire, Kok carried him the rest in the evening secretly: in them was included a small quantity of our dried European pulse, and some new bread, which he had particularly desired. All these things seemed to please him very much: he received them with much ceremony, but avoiding any expressions of great delight. The stick he placed by him against the tree: the rest of the things were consigned to the care of his *valet-de-chambre*, Mutiri, who was in attendance near him, and who contemplated them with great eagerness and curiosity.

As we were going to enter upon the other objects of our embassy, he desired that we would not detain him too long, and answered, not with absolute indifference, but with no great interest, that as to the principal question whether he would in future ever permit white people to live in his country, he had no objection to it, provided they brought with them the means of subsistence. When asked whether he was satisfied with the missionaries who had just quitted the country, living among his people, he answered, that he knew very little of them; that he believed they were good kind of men, and he had nothing to say against their returning; but he wished, above all things, that Kok would remain there, since he was well acquainted with husbandry, and had already given them some very useful instructions in it.

During this conversation, which lasted almost an hour, a great number of people had come into the inclosed place. All crowded forwards to hear something of what passed, so that our young protector and the king's counsellors had some difficulty to keep them from pressing upon us. Mong, and some others of our party, had brought with them little papers of snuff and tobacco, with which, after the audience, they purposed to present some of the most

distinguished persons that might be present. Unluckily, they suffered these papers to appear too soon, and suddenly there burst forth such a tumult, such crying out among the people, and such a scrambling, that it was impossible for the conversation to be thought of any more. The king, who himself got a thrust in the ribs, endeavoured at first to quiet them, by crying with a loud voice *zhamaja*, *zhamaja*, go away; get you gone; and indeed all were silent who heard his voice. But those who were too remote to hear it still continued their clamour; the women in particular, stretching out their arms, cried with all their might, *lekoano montjuko*, give us tobacco, till the monarch at length losing all patience, took his large mantle under his left arm, and with his right swung his tremendous *sjambok* of rhinoceros leather, striking on all sides, till he fairly drove the whole multitude before him. This was a signal to his courtiers to do the same, so that the blows were dealt handsomely every way, and nothing was heard but the strokes of the thongs upon the leather cloaks; nay, those who did not make their retreat with sufficient speed, got a stroke or two upon their naked legs. Mutiri, who, as guardian of the presents, remained near us, justified this proceeding of his master very warmly, assuring us that it was contrary to the customs of the country for women to enter that place, and this was what made the king so exceedingly angry. In less than a minute, the court was entirely cleared, when Mulihawang, having placed a guard at the entrance, came back to us, and listened awhile longer to our interpreter, yet with constantly decreasing attention, till at length, his wholly abstaining from any answer gave us to understand that it was time we should take our leave. At parting, we invited him to dine with us the next day, which seemed to please him very much, and he gave us free permission to walk about the town, ordering some of his people to conduct us. As we were going away, he called after them, that they should use the *sjambok* if the women were again equally troublesome.

We were now carried through an absolute labyrinth of little alleys, large places, and broad streets, to the quarter in which stood the principal houses. Here we were first introduced into the inside of one; it was that of our conductor. A number of children, the greater part of whom were entirely naked, were playing in the warm sand before the door, and the rest were made to come out, that we might see every thing more commodiously. While Kok was explaining to us the structure of the house, and the uses of

the various implements and utensils which it contained, the inhabitants remained on the outside, leaving our numerous company, without the slightest appearance of distrust, quietly to take down and handle every thing; they did not even look in to see what we were doing. It is also worthy of remark, as a proof of their confidence, and as a matter of forbearance on their part, that during the whole time of our stay, not one of the people appeared armed; as if they were desirous to avoid every thing which might have in the slightest degree an inimical appearance. It was only in our visits at the houses that we saw their shields and hassagais: among the rich there were generally thirty or forty of the latter standing in some remote corner.

The commodiousness and durability of the houses was what struck us most at this first visit. As the great care and exactness with which they are built forms one of the principal features in which these people differ from the Caffre tribes of the east, and especially from the Koossas, a particular description of one seems not to be here out of its place. A Beetjuan tribe always fix their abode in the midst of a wood of mimosas, the stems of these trees, which here grow to a considerable height, being one of the most essential articles in building their houses. Twelve or fourteen of these stems are requisite to build a good house; eight or ten of these must be nine foot high, the rest three or four feet higher. The shorter are stuck upright in the ground at equal distances, forming a circle, the diameter of which is from sixteen to twenty feet; and this serves as the outer scaffolding on which the roof rests; the long stems form a small circle within, to which the roof is sloped; but the highest part of the roof is not exactly in the centre, because it rests upon one of these posts which is longer than all the rest, and thus the roof has the appearance of a not perfectly regular dome. The thatch with which it is covered is either straw or reeds, very ingeniously woven together. A wall, the height of a man, is formed of mimosa boughs interwoven between the pillars, the thorns of which are turned in so dexterously, that passers-by are in no danger of being caught by them, while at the same time not the smallest beast of prey could press through. This hedge is plaistered over within with a smooth and firm plaister, composed of argillaceous earth and ox-dung. A similar wall, but higher, is formed by the circle of posts within; and this is the principal abode of the family, the outer part being allotted to the servants. The

entrance is by a doorway between two of the posts. The inner beams and cross spars on which the roof rests, serve for hanging up the clothes and skins; a reed mat also is often stretched over these beams, on which, as in a granary, or garret, many sorts of food are spread out to be dried, and kept for store. Also for keeping the stores, a sort of pantry is often built up in the back part of the house, with twigs and clay, in a spherical form, and five or six feet high. There is never any bad smell in these houses, because of the free circulation of air: the inhabitants are entirely sheltered from rain, and in the heat of summer it affords them a cool shade.

The huts of the poor are smaller, not being above eight or ten feet in diameter; sometimes even they consist only of a conical roof, resting upon the ground, having neither light or air but through a low door: a low fence is then commonly made round, within which the smaller domestic animals, as the kids and others, are kept. The kraals for the cattle are spacious; they commonly join the house, and besides the outer hedge, which is generally the height of a man, they are often stuck round within pretty thick with palisades, at a little distance from the hedge, that the latter may not be injured by the animals themselves.

After we had examined several houses, in all of which we met with a most friendly reception, some of the inhabitants, entertaining us with slices of dried gourd, and the sweet berries of the *grewia obtusifolia*, Kok carried us to see the high-priest of the place, recommending our shewing him the utmost respect and politeness, since he had great influence with the king and the people, and was not particularly well-disposed towards strangers. We found a man advanced in years, with a sort of woeful countenance: he was sitting on the shady side of his hut, occupied with sewing jackal-skins together. The work went on very slowly, since he first bored with an iron piercer the holes through which the tendon thread was to be run. But when done, the work was particularly firm, and the surface perfectly even: the skins were indeed so well united, that no appearance of seams could be discerned on the hairy side. The old man would scarcely give himself the trouble of looking at us, but continued intent upon his work, answering in a very short manner the conversation Kok addressed to him, as well as our offers of a present of tobacco, beads, and buttons. He however accepted the present, and laid the things down by him quietly, not

appearing the more disposed to speak; we therefore soon left him. The whole business of this priest consists in circumcising the youths, which is performed every other year with much the same ceremonies as among the Koossas; in consecrating the cattle against the commencement of a war; and, in case of victory, with presiding over a festival, where some simple solemnities are performed. He is besides in possession of some medical knowledge; understands the influence of the stars; prepares charms, in the infallibility of which the people have the firmest belief; in short, every thing which relates to the popular creeds and superstitions emanates from him. These priests differ in one point essentially from the enchanters among the Koossas, that they are not merely dealers in magic, whose works may be deceitful, but they are distinguished by various kinds of knowledge, being educated, during their whole lives, as men destined to the priesthood.

The remainder of our time was employed in a walk to the western side of the town, towards the foot of a high hill, from which point we could see all over this Bectjuan capital. At a rough guess, we estimated the number of houses at between five and six hundred. Kok, who had in the latter years of his residence here travelled northwards, and visited the tribes of Muruhlong and Matsaraqua, assured us that their principal towns were much larger; so extensive, that the whole could scarcely be included in one glance of the eye. The tribe of Maatjaping, where we were, was, five or six years before, much more numerous: it was at that time united with the tribe of Muruhlong, under a chief by name Makrakki. It was in this situation when the English commissaries, Trüter and Somerville, visited the country in 1801, on which occasion these gentlemen estimated the population at fifteen thousand. This estimate was confirmed by Kok, who said that when about a year after Mulihawang and Makrakki agreed upon an amicable separation, two-thirds at least followed the latter, so that not more than five thousand subjects remained to the king of Maatjaping. At that time they lived commonly at the spring of Takuna, three days' journey farther to the north-east; and from this name those travellers derived that of Litakoo, by which they called the place. Never has the town, however, any proper name of its own: it always bears that of the chief, and nearest natural station: here, for instance, the

name of the river Kuruhman equally serves as the name of the capital of Maatjaping.

In the sandstone, of which the base of this mountain is composed, we saw all about a number of figures symmetrically carved, the meaning of which we enquired both of Kok, and of our Beetjuan guide. They both assured us that they had no particular meaning, that they were done by the herdsmen as an amusement to pass away the time while they were attending upon their herds. Similar figures are to be seen burnt in the wooden working tools here: this evinces a pleasure in regular forms, and must be considered as a preliminary step in the art of design.

We now took leave of the guide appointed by the king, making him some little presents, and returned back to our camp. On our route, however, we got a little out of the regular path, and were obliged to enquire of a herdsman the right way through the wood. He conducted us himself, and was exceedingly unembarrassed and talkative all the time he remained with us. I asked him his name, and he told me it was Manong. I had already learnt that this word signifies a falcon; and as I expressed my wonder that he should bear the name of such an animal, he told me that it was a very general custom; one of his brothers, he said, was known by the name of *Tjoni*, ape, and his uncle was called *P'hnkuhje*, jackal. Kok, however, assured us, that this custom prevailed only among the common people; that princes and people of distinction had all of them names, the sense and connexion of which, with other words, was not known.* These names were, moreover, often changed upon particular occasions, or else the people acquired surnames derived from some important occurrence in their lives, or some memorable act performed by them. It was indeed by no means uncommon for a very distinguished person to have more than one such name.

---

* That most of the names of distinguished persons, and even those of the tribes themselves, are derived originally from the Arabic, I have demonstrated in my essay, which I have often mentioned before, upon the languages of the savage tribes in Southern Africa, in *Bertuch's and Vater's Ethnographical Archives*. If traces of Arabic derivation are to be found in the languages, it is very probable that they may be discovered, in the first instances, in the names of princes and persons of distinction.

Mulihawang alone, for instance, had four. We might be assured, he said, that every one of us strangers had already some name given us by which we were designated among these people; indeed, I soon learnt that I was called *T'hammakuhna*, red-neck, because I had a red cape to my uniform. When we questioned them about the English commissaries, they always called Mr. Trüter, *Angokorra*, ugly-face, because he had a sort of gloomy look with his eyes, and thick dark eye-brows.

CHAP. L.

Dinner given to the King of the Beetjuans at the Camp.—Conversation with the three Princes.—Their Confidence in the Europeans.—Traffick with the Natives.—Visits from the Women.—The King's Wives.—The Traffic continued.—Slaves offered for Sale.—A Dance.—Embarrassing Proposal made by the King.—Motives for a hasty Departure from the Country.

We found at the camp a number of visitors, who were very much in the way of our preparations for dinner; we put them aside however more courageously than we had ventured to do the day before, without their appearing the least offended at it. As our tent was too small to entertain so large a company, we had two waggons fastened together, the linen tilts to which served as a shade against the sun and weather: at the end was placed a guard of honour. About noon the king appeared, accompanied by the two princes, without any other train. We invited him to sit down before our tent, till the dinner was ready, to smoak a pipe, and, according to the custom of the Cape, to drink a glass of wine before he began to eat. He declined both, but sat down upon one of our camp stools, which by chance was somewhat high, and did not stand very firm in the sand. It was obvious how entirely he was unaccustomed to this manner of sitting, and how much he was afraid of falling, for every movement he made was with the greatest attention to preserving the equilibrium very exactly. He, however, took great pains to avoid betraying any symptoms of fear, and did not quit his seat till we rose from ours. To entertain him, several European works of art were brought and exhibited, as a gun, a watch, a compass, &c. &c. Nothing pleased him, however, so much as our phosphoric matches, and a burning-glass. As some paper was set on fire by the latter, he exclaimed eagerly, several times successively, *Mutelo Leetshaatsi*, fire from the sun. Prince Molimo shewed quite a childish delight at the smart occasioned by putting the finger too near the focus of the sun's rays. He begged to have the glass for a few minutes, and stealing behind a number of the people, he burnt the nearest to him directly in the back; a joke which pleased the rest exceedingly, and

which was repeated several times to the very great entertainment of his highness and all his countrymen.

We now conducted our guests to the table, seating the king in the uppermost place; and, that he might no longer be embarrassed by the stool, a heavy chest was placed for him to sit upon. The Landdrost and myself took our seats on each side of him, and the princes were mingled with our party. The conversation at table, as will easily be comprehended, could not be very animated, since it was necessarily carried on almost entirely by means of interpreters; besides which, the pressing and noise of the crowd assembled round was so great as almost to drown the voices. The king seemed somewhat more at his ease than in the morning, now and then addressing some words to the bye-standers, and handing them, at intervals, something from his own plate, or sending his bounty by Mutiri, who was always in waiting at his side. When this was the case, however, the valet was not always faithful to his trust; the best pieces never reached their ultimate destination, they stopped by the way in his own mouth: heavy complaints and clamours were raised against this breach of confidence, but the king did not condescend to turn round and pay them any attention.

His majesty now remarked, among the company standing about, his fourth son, Molala, a beautiful youth of about sixteen: he immediately called to him to come and eat with him. As there was no place left at the table, and as our people had not politeness and respect enough to make room for him, he sat down upon a chest which was standing close by his father. A tin plate with soup was handed to him, which he took upon his knee, but that being naked, it was soon burned by the hot metal, which made him start, and the greater part was poured down his legs. The king took great pains to learn the use of the knife and fork, and soon managed them very tolerably, but the princes took out their own double-bladed knives, and, in their usual way, putting the meat into their mouths, cut the bit off very dexterously close to the lip. Among all the dishes served, the vegetables pleased the king the most, particularly the cooked rice, and the dried fruit and bread; he also relished the buffalo's flesh very much. He was exceedingly surprised at our liking small roasted birds, and made himself very merry at seeing us enjoy what, as he observed, was almost all bones. Such things as were unknown to him he would not taste, till he had enquired of Kok *whether they also were*

good. He drank three glasses of wine, but when a fourth was offered, he declined it with thanks, saying that he was not accustomed to such liquor, and was afraid of being intoxicated. Indeed, with what he had drank already, he was become much more animated and talkative, and asked so many questions, with such rapidity, that Kok, as interpreter, could scarcely get in answers to them all.

In the first place, he gave us to understand that the people whom we had seen scarcely constituted a sixth part of his subjects. A great number of the men, capable of bearing arms, were out in different hunting parties; another party, under the conduct of his second son, Tellekella, were gone to the *'t Garieb*, the Orange river, to make a treaty of alliance there; and still another troop were on an excursion to the Corans. He was very sorry, he added, that the country was in so weak a state at that moment, since otherwise he should have proposed to us to unite in an expedition against the Bosjesmans, and revenge the murder of David and Jantje. He then descanted on the perfidious conduct of his former associate Makrakki, who, he said, had driven away the herds belonging to himself and his people, for which he hoped to make him pay very heavily. We begged Kok to break off the conversation upon this subject, as we did not wish to be invited to take any part in his punishment; and to enquire on our behalf after the monarch's wives, not one of whom we had as yet seen. The king replied that they would be very glad to visit us, and to ask us for presents; and then proceeded to enquire whether we, like Kok, had only one wife each. What was his surprise when he heard not only that none of us had more than one, but that most of us had none; this he thought almost incredible. As in this country a number of wives forms part of a man's riches, and he concluded us to be all very rich, he could scarcely conceive that we were speaking the truth, when we talked of having no wife at all. When we explained to him, that, by the laws of our country, people could not marry till they were of a mature age, and then could never have more than one wife, he said it was perfectly incomprehensible to him how a whole nation could submit voluntarily to such extraordinary laws. He had five wives, he said, and children by them all, and his relation Masjouw, king of the distant tribe of Muruhlong, eight years before had ten wives, and it was very probable that he had now several more.

When we rose from table, the king sought out a retired and quiet spot, where he laid himself down on the grass, first smoked a little tobacco, and then slept a short time, his counsellors sitting in a circle round him, and Mutiri waving a long bunch of ostrich feathers backwards and forwards, to keep the flies off. The Landdrost also withdrew, as did the rest of the company, so that at length I was left alone with the three princes, when they all began to make me the confidant of their wishes. The friendly eagerness of Methībe, in particular, made a strong impression upon me. I was much delighted with the *naïvete* of his gestures, as he repeatedly said *Ke ratan jehna—I will thee*, which I afterwards learnt from Kok is an expression, meaning *I will do thee all the good I can*. As our conversation was carried on with difficulty, Kok not being present, we were obliged to assist it as well as we could by signs. I gave them to understand that I would make each of them a present as a remembrance of me, and that they should chuse what they would have. For this purpose I ordered my chest of clothes to be brought, from which I took a variety of trifles and laid before them. Methībe chose a razor, Molimo a dozen of plain buttons, and Molala a silk handkerchief. A looking-glass, some small buckles, some ribband, some stockings, and some linen cloth, they set entirely aside. Molimo expressed a very great longing for my helmet-hat, in which he admired himself very much, but, as a part of my uniform, it could not be disposed of, though at length he offered six oxen in exchange for it.

Methībe reproved his brother for his importunity, and reproached him with offering so high a price for an useless ornament; but, he said, the razor was of great value to him, for his beard had become very inconvenient, and since the war with Muruhlong was not likely to take place (for the Beetjuans only let their beards grow in time of war, or upon a journey), he wished very much to be shaved immediately. At the same time he pointed out to me how badly this operation must be performed with their own short knives, since every single hair must be plucked up which occasioned great smart. Although I took particular pains to make him understand the manner in which the razor must be used, he cut his cheek in the very first attempt. Without asking any more questions, he seized my hand, and led me to the stump of a tree, on which he made me sit down, when he put the open razor into my hand, and seating himself upon the ground between my

legs, rested his head upon my knee, as a sign that I must shave him. So quickly had we gained the confidence of these people, that in less than four-and-twenty hours after our arrival, a prince trusted his head without the least hesitation to my hands thus armed. This proof of confidence delighted me the more, from being unsought on my part, and from my having no idea that I was giving him so much pleasure. I ordered soap and water to be brought, and having first washed off the ointment which was rubbed pretty thick upon the beard, began my operation. Not, however, being very much accustomed to perform it, and the razor being somewhat blunt, as I had been careful not to present his royal highness with my best, I was very tedious, and occasioned so much smart to the operatee, that the tears rolled down his princely cheeks. He, however, remained perfectly still, contemplating himself from time to time with great complacency in a small looking-glass. The spectators around stood mute with admiration during the whole performance, gazing with the utmost eagerness in their countenances, and bursting at length into a general peal of laughter—this being their customary mode of expressing delight, astonishment, admiration, nay, even embarrassment and fear. Every one now who had any trace of beard on his chin wanted to be shaved by me; I, however, begged, rather unpolitely, to decline the honour, and, indeed, the prince would not allow his razor to be used any more. The people afterwards said that they liked our beards much better than the smooth effeminate faces of the two young missionaries, though they were not sorry to learn that in a quiet domestic way of life it was customary among us to part with them.

The time seemed now arrived for producing our stock of tobacco, and other objects of barter, of which every one was to have a portion in exchange for trifles of their own workmanship. A formal market was therefore opened, and one of the enclosed waggons was allotted as the place of traffic. Mong was appointed the head shopman, and two assistants were given him, one of whom was to take care of the things purchased, and place them in security, the other was to attend to the objects of barter. Scarcely had a few copper rings been purchased at the price of a small roll of tobacco, about as long as the finger, when crowds pressed around the waggon with their hands full of rings, necklaces, earrings, and other objects, all offering them in exchange for this favourite commodity. Others ran to their houses

and brought hassagais, spoons, knives, and a variety of household implements, which they offered in abundance, for a couple of inches of African roll tobacco. The purchaser could scarcely repel their earnest entreaties, and while he was making a bargain with one, another pressed in between, assuring him that his wares were infinitely superior, and might be had much cheaper, shewing with the finger how short a piece of roll tobacco would be taken for them. All appeared afraid lest our merchandize should be exhausted before they could make their bargain. It was soon obvious that they had no idea of the ordinary usages of barter, for when they had agreed for so much tobacco for a ring, they were afterwards not satisfied and wanted more, which, if granted, more still was required. Many, after taking the payment, went away with their wares, so that the purchaser was at length constrained to hold his purchase-money fast, and not let it go till the equivalent was delivered.

A general spirit of trade was now so much roused, that while this commerce in trifles was carried on in the waggon, some of our colonists commenced a traffic for cattle, which they could not, however, obtain but at very high prices: the owners would not part with them for tobacco; they required bar-iron, nails, silk, or linen cloth, European clothes, and other articles of equal consequence. On this occasion a saw was perceived among our stock of iron tools, and these people having learnt the use of it from Kok, very high offers were made to obtain it. Unfortunately we had only this one. In our equipment we had not sufficiently recollected that we were to deal with a nation not wholly destitute of civilization. Future travellers will find it very expedient to carry a stock of tools for mechanical works with them to this country, particularly articles of steel, since the Beetjuans have not any idea of hardening iron. They were not less delighted with a file, a thing which they had never seen before, and in the use of which they were now first instructed: for this they would have given a price out of all proportion. Next to their cattle there was nothing on which they set so high a value as their larger objects of clothing, and it was not without great difficulty that I could make a bargain for a cloak, very neatly sewed together, on which I had fixed my mind strongly. I offered beads, nails, and cloth, but all in vain; such a cloak, they said, was never given but for live cattle. I therefore commissioned one of our

Hottentots to purchase two oxen for me, with which I afterwards purchased the cloak, and thus obtained it at a lower price than I had before offered for it: it belonged to one of the king's old counsellors. Elephants' teeth were to be procured at a much cheaper rate, and I got a part of one that might weigh from twelve to sixteen pounds for a piece of roll tobacco of only the same length.

A great many women were among the company on this occasion; indeed, their numbers kept constantly increasing, till in time they far outnumbered the men. They brought a profusion of trifles to exchange for tobacco, for they, like the men, roasted it a little, then rubbed it in their hands, stuffed it into their bone pipes, and inhaled the fumes with the utmost avidity. Some mixed the tobacco when it was rubbed small with wood ashes, then ground both together between two stones to a fine powder, and drew it up through a reed into their nostrils; this, as well as smoaking, they called *chocha*, which signifies properly, *sucking*.*

Although these women behaved to us with the same confidence, and with as little embarrassment as the men, they all shewed great modesty and reserve. The least disposition to improper freedom shewn by any of our party was repelled with anger, but they seemed to like our company extremely when proper respect was shewn them; and Kok assured us that their esteem was only to be obtained by treating them in such an honourable way. Among them, however, as among the Koossas, the ideas of maiden reserve are not so strict: the same may indeed generally be said with respect to the women here as is related in the first part of my work, respecting one of the much longer and better known Caffre tribes.†

It was almost evening when the king, who, during all these tumultuary transactions, had been little thought of, returned among us. His presence

---

* It is remarkable that the custom of smoaking and snuffing up certain pungent narcotic plants prevailed here long before any intercourse ever took place between these people and the Europeans: this I can assert from the strictest investigation. It is very probable that the practice may have been carried to the West-Indies by slaves of African descent, from whence we have derived it; thus it is by no means unlikely that the Beetjuans are our oldest instructors in a custom which has now for some centuries prevailed all over Europe.

† See the English translation, Vol. I. p. 264, and following.

in some degree, quieted the outrageous noise; at least nobody who was near him ventured to talk and gabble so loud as before. He brought two of his wives with him, who came on purpose to see our camp: he addressed a few words to them, and then left them, together with the men of his train, to amuse themselves, while he retired where he could be quiet. Kok, who was now summoned again to take upon himself the office of interpreter, introduced us in all due form to the ladies. The one was the king's third wife, Makaitschoäh, about two-and-twenty: she had regular features, a fine form, and was very pleasing in her whole appearance. The other was the youngest of all the queens, scarcely fifteen years old, with brisk animated eyes, but somewhat of a negro countenance: her name was Marani. The high rank of both might be presumed at first sight from their cloathing: they wore cloaks striped alternately with the skins of the gerboa, and of genet cats, and the eldest had a bunch of grey cats tails fastened to her left shoulder, which hung very ornamentally over the cloak, both before and behind. Over the breast of both was a piece of leather finely tanned, which was fastened with straps over the shoulders, as well as round the body: they had both a profusion of necklaces, made of glass beads, of pieces of cut bone, and little plates of copper: a small part of the body was bare, but from the hips, some way below the knee, hung leather aprons both before and behind, which only, occasionally in walking, allowed the knee to be seen; the legs were wound round with leather, and on the feet were sandals fastened with several leather straps crossed over each other. The lower part of the arm was ornamented with a number of rings, made of giraffe's hair, twined round brass wire. Makaitschoäh wore on her left arm, as a token of her rank, no less than seventy-two of these rings, which must have weighed some pounds, and was exceedingly pleased with our taking notice of them and counting them. Her hair was dressed with great care; it was divided into small bunches, which were well rubbed over with the shining ointment, and hung down from the crown of the head, looking like a profusion of silver thread or cord. She invited us to examine it more accurately, and informed us that the hair of the young girls was always kept cut very closely round the face, that it might grow more profusely upon the crown of the head, and that the bunches might fall more gracefully about, than could be the case if the whole hair were suffered to grow.

We had tea prepared in the tent, and invited our royal visitors to come in and drink some: the invitation was accepted, and they sat down upon a chest, but our beverage was not to their taste: they appeared, however, exceedingly delighted when we gave them wine: perhaps brandy would have pleased them still better. In our conversation, which began upon their children and their household affairs, but which was afterwards turned to the situation of the female sex in European countries, Makaitschoäh shewed a great deal of good sense and sound judgment; she often comprehended our interpreter fully, before he had done speaking. Among other things, she remarked very judiciously, that laws such as ours would not suit the Beetjuans, because there were so great a number of women, and the male population suffered such diminutions from the wars. At seeing European works of art, till then unknown to them, both the ladies, particularly the youngest, evinced their delight by repeated loud bursts of laughter. The countenance of the elder gained exceedingly, by being thus enlivened, particularly as she did not laugh so unreasonably; a generally sweet expression about her mouth, and the uncommonly beautiful teeth which she displayed, obliged us to confess that the taste of the old king was abundantly justified; for he had raised this woman from a low station to her present exalted rank, on account of her beauty and discretion. Marani, on the contrary, was daughter to the prince of a neighbouring tribe, that of Chojaa.

Our wine, and the pains we took to amuse the ladies, by shewing them a variety of things, to them objects of novelty and curiosity, detained them longer than they had probably intended. We at length found their company somewhat tedious, and were not very sorry, when evening coming on reminded them that it was time to think of returning; this they did under the care of Kok, who had received from the king a secret commission to that effect. A hint was given us by these royal visitors themselves that some presents must be made them at their departure, which we attended to very punctually, and they in return left us some of their necklaces and arm-rings. By degrees the company in general now took their leave; a few of the men only, among others the herdsman, Manong, remained at our camp all night.

The next morning early, to our no small satisfaction, we received from the king a present of two beautiful black-spotted oxen, and a very fine cow, with a bull calf. We afterwards purchased four more oxen exactly the same, and

carried the whole team to General Janssens, as a specimen of the beauty of the Beetjuan cattle. After the necessary business of the camp was completed, I went, under the guidance of Kok, again to the town, to visit the king and the princes in their houses. As I passed along among the numerous inhabitants of this populous town, and met frequently a face that I knew, my heart felt a secret delight that fate had appointed me, in preference to so many others, to visit a nation so well worthy of attention; whose existence as a half civilized race had long been utterly unknown, and whom I found every hour more reason to love and esteem. What I had seen and heard within the last few days sometimes appeared to me wholly like a dream; and the conviction of the reality of every object by which I was surrounded gave me inconceivable delight.

I found the king (who has, properly speaking, no house of his own, but who lives alternately among his wives) with his oldest wife, the mother of Methībe, whose name I forgot to note down: to judge by appearance, she must be older than Mulihawang. She received our visit with perfect indifference: the work in which she was engaged, cutting a sort of beaker out of a piece of mimosa wood, seemed wholly to absorb her attention. According to Kok's account, the king had a very high value for this woman, and Methībe had the most profound love and respect for her. I did not perceive any thing very distinguished in the house, except a large quantity of leopard skins, with one of which, to my no small satisfaction, the king presented me.* He then carried me to one of his cattle kraals, where we found the cattle all very lean: this the king said was owing to the treacherous conduct of Makkraki, which constrained him to keep them in the neighbourhood, lest they should all be stolen; the consequence was, that all the fields near were eaten quite bare, and scarcely any means of subsistence now remained for the cattle. We next visited Makaitschoäh, who we found surrounded by four children; the whole head, the ridge of the nose, and a circle round the eyes, in each of the two eldest, were dyed with a very deep yellow ochre, a kind of ornament which I had before observed in many of the children about the streets. We gave the beautiful princess a little packet of snuff, which she had begged the day before; of this she not only immediately took a large

* It was of that sort of leopard so rare in the neighbourhood of the Cape-Town, *felis-jubata*.

pinch herself, but gave some to her children, even to the youngest, who was at the breast, without the infant's making the least wry face at it, or, which appeared to me still more extraordinary, being excited to sneeze. The usual manner of taking snuff here, is to lay a quantity upon the upper lip, and throw it up with that into the nostrils.

From this, and some other transient visits, in which we saw mothers with their children, an attention to cleanliness struck me more forcibly than ever, as one of the most commendable of all features in the female character. The infinite trouble which it costs these women to clean and nurse their children, half naked as they are, and with nothing but leather to wrap about them, must be seen, to make the value of linen, and the importance of it to arriving at a state of high cultivation, justly understood and appreciated. At our visit to the heir-apparent, we also saw two of his wives, who, as well as his whole household, bore marks of distinction which I little expected to find. Here I saw a Bosjesman's bow, and quiver full of arrows, which I suppose were kept as trophies of some victory. The prince, however, said that they found it necessary to employ against these depredators the weapons which they themselves used, for that in any conflict with them, if their people were only armed with hassagais, they always came off with the worst; they now, therefore, kept the arms of such as were slain, though formerly, from their horror of such destructive weapons, it was a law among them that they were to be burnt.

Kok had talked to me so much of Pollachani's (the high-priest) knowledge of the planets, and of their courses, for every one of which he had his own peculiar name, that, notwithstanding the uncourteous reception we met with the day before, I was very desirous of repeating my visit. We found him in his cattle kraal, occupied in doing some repairs to the palisade. Over the entrance hung the hinder half of a scaley lizard, an animal not the least trace of which I had seen before in Southern Africa;* and in the midst of the space lay an enormous bulb, which must have measured nearly a foot in diameter, probably of the *hæmanthus* or *ornithogalum* species. I would gladly, almost

* *Manis gigantea*, or the *quogelo* of Desmarchais's Travels, now considered as a variety of the *manis brachyura* or *pentadactyla*, the true *pangolin* of Southern Asia. Hitherto this species was only known to us from the Coast of Guinea; it has never been brought from the Cape.

at the risk of my life, have carried off both, but Kok earnestly intreated me not to attempt it: they were charms, he said, by which the cattle were preserved from enchanters, and would not be parted with by the possessor at any price; he might perhaps even be offended with the mere proposal to traffic for them. We were in no way better received than the day before, and were obliged to wait a long time before the indifferent questions with which we began the conversation could obtain even a monosyllable answer. But when we began to ask about the stars, he observed the strictest silence, and gave us moreover to understand that our company was by no means agreeable to him.

From hence Kok carried me to another old man, who had equally the reputation of having great knowledge and experience, and whom I had already seen in the king's train. This man, in his early years, had taken repeated journeys to most of the other Beetjuan tribes, and furnished me with much information relative to the situation and distance of these people, the most important parts of which shall be given in their proper place. He gave the population of each tribe in comparison with that of Maatjaping, only when he spoke of the *Macquini*, the most remote of all, he dropped this medium; and to show that they were innumerable, took up a handful of sand, and let it run slowly through his fingers, repeating frequently, till his hand was emptied, *itzintzi*—much. The names of the tribes on the eastern coast, Koossa, Mathimba, Immbo, &c. were wholly unknown to him; and he was much surprised to hear that in manners and customs they were so much like the Beetjuans, yet were not called by their name.

On our return to the camp, we came to a house, the building of which was not yet completed: from this we could understand the manner in which they were put together much more clearly. None but women were employed in the building, for almost all the hard work is put upon them. Six of them will complete the building a house of the usual size in a week. The roof was very ingeniously woven together with reeds and rushes, without any other materials to bind them; the cross-beams were, however, fastened to the main posts with leather thongs, and string made from the fibres within the bark of the trees.

Among the many persons who were attracted to the camp by the spirit of traffic, was a man who brought two boys of eight and ten years old to sell as

slaves. They had fallen into his power, as infants, in a war some years before with the tribe of Chojaa, and as lawful booty were his slaves for ever; he had even full power over their lives. He demanded a live sheep for each, and added, that he wished very much to dispose of them, since he had nothing for them to eat, and he was afraid they would die with hunger. Very much surprised at this offer, and at hearing that all the servants of the rich were in like manner the property of their masters, being prisoners taken in battle, or their descendants, we shewed very plainly how revolting to us was the idea of such a traffic, and positively rejected the offer.*

In the afternoon the throng increased exceedingly, yet the traffic went on much more heavily, for on the one hand our stock of tobacco was very much diminished, so that we were less willing to part with what remained;

---

* In the description of the Beetjuans, which I published in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides*, for the year 1807, I mentioned this propensity to traffic in slaves, as a consequence of the institutions of these people, and controverted Mr. Barrow's too hasty representation of their love of freedom, not a word of which is to be found in the original from the pen of Mr. Trüter. My opinion has since been confirmed, in the description given by the Englishman, Mr. William White, of the Caffre tribes in the neighbourhood of Da Lagoa Bay. He mentions, with much sympathy, the situation of those among these people who are the property of others, and adds:—"Though no advocate for the slave trade, yet I am sure that it would have been a christian-like act to have purchased some of the slaves offered to us for the immense price of a bottle of rum, or arrack. They were perfectly destitute of every sort of clothing, and had no food given them. I enquired how they could possibly subsist. *Same as bullock*, was the answer given me by one of the natives: he added, that in time of scarcity they themselves were obliged to eat grass." Probably the slave trade owed its origin in the first instance as much to the hard situation of those who traded in the slaves, as to the cupidity of the European purchasers; and I do not hesitate to assert, that a very accurate knowledge of the institutions of the people in the interior of Southern Africa is requisite, before the question can be decided whether the sudden abolition of this traffic is desirable even for the poor slaves themselves: were it abolished, the lives of the prisoners taken in battle would not be spared as they are now. For the rest, I am very far from denying, that this traffic is a disgrace both to the buyer and seller; and I am perfectly of opinion that the ill usage experienced by the slaves in their transport on board the ships is a terrible stain upon the character of every nation that can be reproached with it—a blot in the history of human nature itself. I believe, notwithstanding, that the situation of the slaves in the East Indian colonies, and at the Cape, where they are much better treated than in the West Indies, is happier than that of the servants hired from among the people of the country.

and on the other, we were now pretty amply provided with the articles for which the traffic had been commenced. Among the few things that I wished earnestly to possess was a pair of dice, if so they might be called, which one of the most distinguished among them wore fastened to a leather thong round his neck. I say, *if they might be called dice*, because, though they were employed much in the same way, the form of the objects in question was not cubical like that of a die; they had the figure of equal sided pyramids, and were cut out of the cloven foot of an antelope, being stuck upon small thin quadrangular plates of the same material. The use of these things, as I learned, was to determine, when any thing of importance was to be undertaken, whether it would terminate happily or not. But few persons, the priests only, as far as I could collect, know how to prepare them; they descend as an inheritance in families, and the more ancient they are, the greater reliance may be placed on their prophetic spirit. In order to see how they were used, I intreated the owner to tell me whether our journey would be happily ended or not. He immediately bent himself down on one knee, smoothed the ground with his hand, and then held the dice between the points of his fingers, one in each hand, and after making several movements with his hands up and down, and pronouncing some incomprehensible words, threw them on the ground. He then bent himself down, appeared to examine very carefully the situation of each, and their direction towards each other; and, in about two minutes, pronounced that we should reach home without any accident. My very great desire to possess these magical objects made me not object to the high price required for them, and, after purchasing two young oxen with some beads and knives, I gave the oxen for my dice; recollecting, as a balance against this somewhat unreasonable bargain, many other very equal ones which I had concluded.

We received also another visit this day from the king, who wanted to see some specimens of our dexterity in shooting. Accordingly, a mark being set up, some of our marksmen, with their best pieces, took their aim in his presence, and hit it very happily. He expressed very great astonishment, but begged that the experiment might not be renewed, as the noise of the gun was very disagreeable to him. The general expression of astonishment among the spectators was a short O, O, often repeated. I never heard any of them whistle, as the Koossas do, when they would express astonishment.

In order to afford us a new species of entertainment, the king ordered some men and women to dance before us: this was performed in the same way as among the Koossas, and was in like manner accompanied with a disagreeable howling kind of singing. All the men dancers wore an ornament upon their heads, which had really a good effect. It was a sort of wreath of porcupine's quills, standing erect, which, being taken from the neck of the animal, where they are the longest and the most pliant, waved backwards and forwards not ungracefully with the various movements of the head. Night coming on, put an end both to business and amusements, and in a short time all our guests quitted us.

It was somewhat extraordinary, that notwithstanding the abundant opportunities afforded for stealing, and the impossibility of keeping all our things out of the way, or watching them, that scarcely any thing was ever missed, except now and then some pieces of meat or other articles of food. A trifling piece of deceit, which I myself experienced in the course of this day, was almost the only one of which they were guilty towards us. I had given a woman a little piece of tobacco in exchange for an ivory ring, when another, who was standing by, and who had for some time been begging for a little tobacco very earnestly, and who saw two more pieces in my hand, again urged my giving them to her as a present. I, however, represented that it would be unjust, when I had required payment from the other woman, to let her have any gratuitously; but if she would give the same price I was ready to part with my tobacco. An ivory ring was immediately produced by her, which I put in my pocket, and paid her for it; this was no sooner done than a third was offered me, for which I gave my last piece of tobacco. I now withdrew from the crowd, in possession, as I supposed, of my three rings, but when I examined my pocket I found only one: it had been twice taken thence for the purpose of being resold to me.

Kok, who had accompanied the king a little way, soon returned, and told us that his majesty had been making a serious proposal, that we should enter into a solemn league with him against Makrakki, and had commissioned him to inquire upon what conditions we would be willing to support him with horses and fire-arms in an attack upon his enemy. This proposal occasioned us to hold a very earnest consultation whether it would be expedient to make a longer stay in this place, and what plans should be pursued for the remainder of our journey. I was very eager for proceeding farther to the north, and

proposed to leave the tribes to the west, who were likely to be involved in war, wholly out of the question, and direct our course northwards to Chojaa and Thamacha. From thence we might return through the yet untracked country of the Corans, crossing the Orange river in some other part, passing over the Snow-Mountains, and through Graaff-Reynett again to the Cape-Town. This plan, however, was controverted by my otherwise adventurous colleague, the Landdrost, who gave reasons for his opinion, to the importance of which I found myself, alas! compelled to yield. Our cattle were exhausted and enfeebled to a very great degree, particularly the horses, most of which we must leave behind us: there was little reason to hope that we should find better food for them farther northwards; indeed, all the best information we had been able to obtain, gave us reason to expect directly the contrary. Farther, our stock of powder, as well as provisions, wine, brandy, and vinegar, were all so diminished, that at the utmost the remainder could not last more than three weeks: our waggons were, moreover, exceedingly out of repair, and our people for a considerable time had been weary, and longing to measure back their steps. The principal objects of our journey, he farther urged, were already attained, and the views of our government would perhaps be better promoted by communicating with the utmost possible expedition the information already procured, than by setting our lives farther to the hazard. Had our stock of powder and other necessaries been greater, and the strength of some of the horses been more restored, I should perhaps have continued my researches, accompanied by some Hottentots, or, I might even have trusted to the aid of the Beetjuans alone, leaving the Landdrost and the rest of the company to return without me; but the reasons against any of us proceeding farther were too weighty to be resisted. Had I not yielded, the political occurrences which soon after took place at the Cape, might, perhaps, have made me grievously repent my obstinacy.

CHAP. LI.

Departure from the Beetjuan Country.—The Fountain of Klaborugani.—Information concerning the Beetjuan Tribes.—Their Modes of Life, Cloathing, and Ornaments.—Their Institutions, their Manner of making War, and various other Particulars.

Our return being resolved on, it was thought expedient that it should take place as soon as possible, before the good understanding hitherto so fortunately maintained with these people should have time to receive interruption. On the following morning, therefore, the preparations for our departure were commenced; in particular, the repairs to our waggons, which had gone on very slowly, were hastened by every means in our power. In this the Beetjuans, who are, many of them, very expert smiths, were of great assistance to us. Two of these people were hired, for wages agreed upon, and performed their work with a celerity which appeared scarcely credible to our people, considering the imperfect nature of their tools. The most essential part of their work was to shorten the iron bands of the wheels, which from the drying of the wood had become too large, and were very loose. For this purpose they made a sort of pile of wood embers, and to keep them alive used bellows made of a couple of goat-skins, very similar to those already described as used by the Koossas: they had heavy iron hammers, which had a sharpened side that served as an axe; instead of tongs, they had only two thick pieces of stick, with which they took up the hot iron, and for an anvil they used a large block of stone. Notwithstanding so many impediments, the work was finished before evening.

The day was passed amid a variety of business, in making many visits, and in collecting and noting down all the information that could be procured relative to the situation, manners, and customs, of these people. Towards evening I visited the king, accompanied by Kok, to intimate to him that it was impossible for us to comply with his wishes, the want of many necessaries, and the strict injunctions of our government, requiring our speedy return. He appeared more struck with this than with our declining the support he had requested, and gave us very clearly to understand that he

suspected there were other motives for our departure besides those we had acknowledged. He should have been very happy, he said, in our longer stay, that he might have formed a closer connexion with us, even if we would not have taken any part in the war—it was scarcely worth having travelled so far, if we would not stay some weeks with him—it was mortifying that we should depart before he had time to know us well, and enter into a strict friendship with us. Although in my heart I was very much of his opinion, to please my impatient companions I was obliged to urge the necessity of our departure, and endeavour by all sorts of pretences to make it comprehensible to him, and prepare him for our somewhat sudden disappearance. This at least seemed to me more adviseable than wholly to conceal our intentions, which perhaps would have created in his mind injurious suspicions with respect to our real views, and would consequently have been very prejudicial to any future travellers who should happen to visit the country. My companions, however, were much displeased with me, and said that we must set off the next morning by break of day, else it was very probable that the king would detain us by force. I did, notwithstanding, prevail so far as that Kok was sent early in the morning to announce that we were actually going.

In the mean time all our preparations were made, so that we were ready to decamp the moment Kok returned from his mission; but, to our shame be it spoken, we were, on this occasion, outdone in politeness by the savages, for with Kok came the princes Methibe and Molimo to take leave of us, and make apologies from their father that he could not visit us himself. He would gladly, they said, have come to our camp to see us once more, with many of his people, who were all extremely surprised and concerned at our hasty departure. The princes got into one of our waggons to accompany us a little way, as they should like, they said, to go in such a house. They then took a most cordial leave of us, reminding Kok that he was expected to return speedily, and stay in the country.

About noon we reached the place, where, at our entrance, we had seen the first Beetjuans, and learned that it was called Segonjana, from a little stream that flows through it. As the source of the Kuruhman, a very copious spring which bursts out in the open field, was not far from hence, we now went to visit it. When we had followed the stream upwards for a

little way, we came to a mass of rock, twenty or five-and-twenty feet in height, below which the water rushed out as from a sluice, forming immediately a stream sufficient to bear small boats. Two free standing natural pillars, on which rests the margin of the cleft, divide the cavern into three dark chambers. Some lanterns which we had with us lighted us into the cavern, from the arch of which hung abundance of stalactites, some as much as a foot and a half in length. The farther we went, the greater was the noise and rushing of the water, and the more difficult it was to get on over the slippery stalactitic masses under our feet. We besides felt such real inconvenience from the extreme cold, that we judged it better to return, and not explore any further.

Kok told us that sometimes an enormous serpent was seen about the entrance to this cavern, at which his Hottentots had once fired, without, however, doing it any injury. It was fortunate, he said, for them that they had not killed it, since the Beetjuans consider it as a sacred animal, and assert, that in case of its death, the water of the river, on which they depend for drink for their cattle, would all be dried up. If the Hottentots had injured this aquatic deity, it is very probable that their lives might have answered the offence. This spring, which bears the name of Klaborugani, is celebrated far and near in the Beetjuan country. Kok imagines that the water rises originally in the mountains which lie at a distance in the south-east, and runs for many miles in a subterranean channel: he assured us that three days' journey down the river it loses itself under-ground, and six hours farther comes forth again in much the same way as here.

While we were stopping at this spring, some Beetjuans from Segonjana, who were holding our horses to drink, seized one of our white slaves, and wanted to have washed him by main force, as they could not be convinced that the colour of his skin was natural: they were persuaded it must be rubbed over with something. They indeed firmly believed that we were all as brown as themselves, but had dyed our bodies white. We were soon separated from these last of our friends among the Beetjuans, and pursued our way over the plain. Before we quitted it we cut down a large giraffe-tree, that we might carry a good block of this excellent wood as a present to the Governor. As night was setting in, we reached the hill which forms the boundary of the Beetjuan country. Before I proceed, however, to

a narrative of occurrences during the remainder of our journey, I must give an abstract of what I could collect during our short stay respecting the customs, manners, and institutions of the Beetjuans;—of such particulars at least as have not been given in the foregoing details.*

The observations which I have made in my first volume,† upon the universal character of the great Caffre nations, taken collectively, answer perfectly to the particular tribe now in question: what is there said of the bodily structure of the Koossas, of their colour, of the growth of their hair, &c. &c. will equally serve to describe the Beetjuans. The great differences observable between the two nations, and which are chiefly to the advantage of the latter, consist in the more durable construction of their houses, the greater art displayed in making their weapons, their clothes, and their household utensils, the higher respect in which their princes are held, and the greater permanency of their establishments. The Koossa is more rough and warlike, more fiery in his disposition and in his actions; the Beetjuan is more industrious and persevering, more disposed to a quiet life, to cultivate the peaceable arts of husbandry; in the latter indeed

* In the year 1801, the expedition of the two English commissaries, Trüter and Somerville, which has been already many times alluded to, was undertaken by order of the then government at the Cape. This was the first regular expedition ever dispatched from the Cape to the Beetjuan country; and Mr. Barrow, in the account of his travels to Cochinchina, has given many particulars with regard to it from the journal of Mr. Trüter, his father-in-law: hence the public attention was first led towards this nation. Trüter's journal was also put into my hands by the Dutch government, when I was about to undertake the present journey; and I found it of much use, as furnishing hints for my observations and inquiries. At my return to Europe, Mr. Barrow's abstract of this journal was well known in Germany: a translation of it appeared in the *Universal Geographical Ephemerides* for February and March, 1807, and in the number for May, of the same work, I published my account, in order to correct and complete the former from the hands of Mr. Barrow and Mr. Trüter. I have therefore thought it unnecessary here to refer to what has been said by these my meritorious precursors, and have confined myself to giving such other particulars as arose out of the adventures of the journey, and are connected with the description already given of the Koossa tribe. It is consequently very far from being my intention to represent the earlier work alluded to as useless and superfluous, on the contrary many things which I pass slightly over are there more amply explained, and the work may be earnestly recommended to the attention of all who take an interest in the Beetjuan nation.

† See the English translation, Vol. I. part III. chap. 18.

he is much more experienced than the Koossa. These different propensities are even distinguishable in the exterior. Among the Beetjuans, few men are to be found of so great bodily size and strength as among the Koossas; few with the same daring and determined countenances. The physiognomy of the Beetjuan has in it something mild and engaging; the women in particular are far handsomer and more interesting than the Koossa women. The nation appears milder and more gentle, or, perhaps, we should rather say, that the others, from being molested in a greater degree by enemies from without, from being less united among themselves, from inhabiting, besides, the mountainous regions of the coast, may have imbibed more rugged manners, and have fallen behind them some steps in civilization. That they have the same origin, appears in nothing more clearly than in the striking conformity between all the principal radical words of both languages. This is so striking, that I cannot suppose, but that a Koossa and a Beetjuan, meeting by chance, must understand each other ultimately, though perhaps slowly. The experiment is perhaps not very likely to be made, since neither nation knows any thing of the other: the inhospitable nature of the country north of the Orange river has—at least such seems the probable way of accounting for their total ignorance, even of each other's existence—the nature of that country is the probable cause which has hitherto kept them strangers, and this is an impediment not likely soon, if ever, to be removed.

Under the name of *Beetjuana*, *Sihtjuana*, or *Muhtjuana*, are to be included all the tribes that inhabit the country which extends from the river Kuruhman, as its most southern boundary, thirty or forty days' journey northwards; several tribes inhabiting this latitude, extend quite to the eastern coast of Africa. To the west, the same latitude is inhabited by tribes of Hottentots, as the Namaaquas and Dammaras; while a part of the country to the Orange river is the abode of the Coran Hottentots.

The principal tribes among the Beetjuans, as far as I could learn, are:

1. That of Maatjaping, the nation which we visited, containing a population of not more than five thousand souls: to these people the following description will principally refer.

2. The tribe of Thammacha, ten days' journey to the eastward of Maatjaping, a much more numerous tribe, divided into several villages, and governed by several regularly established chiefs.

3. Chojaa, to the north-east of the former, and, like that, but little connected with Maatjaping; known, however, to be exceedingly populous.

4. Still more remote, directly to the north of Chojaa, lie the Muchuruhzi: they are governed by the bravest of all the Beetjuan kings, Sebochori.

5. The Wanketsi, three strong days' journey to the south-west of the Muchuruhzi, whose king is named Muranmuleta. This is the weakest of all the Beetjuan tribes.

6. One day's journey nearer to Maatjaping, and south-west of the Wanketsi, is one half of the tribe of Muruhlong, governed by two chiefs, Masjouw and Lessomo.

7. The other half of Muruhlong, governed by king Makrakki. Some time back, this half tribe separated itself from the former, and united with that of Maatjaping, during which, the two lived together at the well of Takuna. A few years ago, this community being dissolved, the half tribe of Muruhlong turned northwards, and settled in the country it now inhabits, upon the river Setaabi: its population is estimated at ten thousand souls.

8. To the west of them live the Matsaraquas, a peaceable tribe, whose chief is called Keissi. They inhabit a part of the banks of the Kuruhman, which is here increased from the union of many other streams.

9. The most numerous tribe of all, that is the Macquini, are quite to the north-east, beyond the Muchuruhzi. It is from these people that the other Caffre tribes receive their metals: they are reported to be dug out of a vast mountain, one side of which yields iron, the other copper. These people are equally known to the Koossas and the Beetjuans, both calling them by the same name: it is the most distant, and the most important country known to both. They procure from it hassagais, knives, needles, earrings, and arm-rings, in exchange for which they give cattle. But this is not an immediate traffic: it passes through four or five hands.

All these tribes speak the same language, and their modes of life, customs, and manners, vary little from each other, as to the most essential points. The neighbouring tribes are generally at enmity one with another: the remote, more or less known to each other, are often united against those that lie in the centre. None but the sons of the kings, particularly the heir-apparent, are employed as ambassadors, by which means the chiefs have always the most extensive knowledge of the country. Till John Bloom's

appearance, it was a generally received opinion here, that the notion of white men—and rumours that such did exist, had reached them from the east, particularly through the Macquini—the notion that such people did exist was till then treated by them as a mere fable. Makrakki, who often expressed a wish to see a white man, and was ridiculed for his credulity, triumphed not a little when one actually appeared.

The principal wealth of the country consists in the breeding of cattle. Their herds are much more numerous than those of the Koossas, and they have as great a veneration for them. One man alone will sometimes be the owner of eight or ten considerable herds, each herd being of a different colour, and differently marked from the other. The attendance upon the herds is also here exclusively the business of the men. Milk, whey, and cheese, are the favourite food of these people. The chase, besides, affords them a variety of food; nor is there any sort of wild animal wholly rejected by them; even beasts of prey, when killed, are in case of necessity eaten. They do not even abstain from the hyenas, as the Koossas do, because in that country these animals eat the dead bodies. But among the Beetjuans, this is not the case: there the dying are not exposed, and the dead are buried quietly in the cattle kraals, without the habitation being thereby rendered impure, or any necessity of quitting it being imposed on the owners. There are only certain ceremonies of mourning, which the nearest relations must observe, and which are very similar to those a ong the Koossas: when these are accomplished, they appear again in society as usual. I never heard of the chace being preceded by any solemnities, or that any particular honours are paid to the conqueror of a beast of prey. Next to their cattle, nothing is so much valued among them as the goat: they like its milk exceedingly, as well as the flesh of the young kids; but the great value of the animal consists in its skin, of which they make fine leather for the under garments and for aprons. The breed of goats is not large; the horns are small; the hair shining, and the colour in general white, with black, brown, or bluish spots. There are no sheep in the country, though the people love the flesh of this animal, which is but lately known to them, exceedingly.

They pay much more attention to agriculture than the Caffres: their fields are commonly fenced round, and they cultivate, besides the Caffre-millet, two sorts of beans, gourds, and water-melons; all, as it should seem, of new

sorts, which have never yet been described. The women alone are employed in husbandry: iron spades are used for digging the ground. The harvest is got in very carefully, and the corn is laid by, as store for the winter months. The fruits of many sorts of trees that grow wild are also collected, and dried for winter stores. Fish, and amphibious animals, are universally held in abhorrence as food, being considered as unclean. They have even a dread of meddling with them in any way; accordingly, when I visited the spring at Klaborugani, the water swarmed with fish.

The Beetjuans drink water very unwillingly, preferring much to quench their thirst with the juice of the water-melon and other fruits, or with milk and whey: the milk is brought from the fields where the cattle graze, in a sort of vessels made of goat skins. The practice which prevails among the Koossas, of extracting a sort of spirit from their corn by fermentation, is here wholly unknown: the people are, however, very fond of wine and brandy, when they come in their way. Salt, properly speaking, they have none; instead of it, they make use of natron, or the ashes of a certain salt succulent plant: their favourite mode of dressing their meat is to roast it in the ashes.

Skins of animals, tanned with great nicety, are the only materials of which their cloathing is made: the poor wear antelope-skins entire, but the rich wear cloaks of the finer skins of jackals, of gerboas, of wild cats, and others, neatly joined together, the value of which depends greatly upon their size. The hairy side is always worn inwards, but the cape, which is made of the skin from the heads of the animals sewed together, always falls back over the shoulder, and the skins of the feet are made into a border below. There are no armholes to the cloak; it is fastened over the breast with two strips of leather, so that it can be turned over either side of the body where it is most wanted, as a defence against the sun and weather. When not in motion, the cloak is often thrown quite behind, that the arms may be left the more at liberty, though very little gesticulation is used in conversation.

The nakedness which sometimes shocks so much among the Koossas is never to be complained of here: the Beetjuans are extremely modest, even among each other. It has been already mentioned, that both with men and women, the greater part of the body is covered: the women wear several aprons, one over the other; the inner one has a number of strips of leather sewed to the bottom, forming a sort of fringe, which moving about as

they walk, keeps the flies from their legs. Both sexes wear necklaces of little plates of metal, rushes, or the bones of animals, as amulets; it is also not uncommon to wear the caul of a fresh slain ox tied round the neck, and to let it remain there till it falls off of itself. The double-bladed knives, in wooden cases, which they make themselves, or their bodkins, with tortoise-shells, and little bags, containing a variety of trifles, like the pockets of an European, are also worn hanging from the neck. Rings of ivory, of which, among the Koossas, a certain number only could be worn, and that solely by persons of the royal family, because all the elephants' teeth are the king's property: such rings are very common among the Beetjuans, but they are scarcely ever worn any where, excepting on the lower part of the arm, between the elbow and wrist. The making these rings is very tedious; for although they are mere parallel circles, cut from the hollow part of the elephant's tusk, yet as the use of the saw is unknown, they would not be able to cut them through, but for a method they have discovered of softening the ivory. They let it lie for some days in sour milk, by which it becomes so soft, that it may be cut with a knife; the operation is, however, performed very slowly, and not without a great deal of trouble.

Much more extraordinary is it, that these people should have found the means of making elastic rings of brass-wire. This wire is flat, being beat with a hammer till it is made thin to a degree almost incredible, and which cannot be accomplished but at an immense expense of labour. I should think that they must have received the first idea of such a manufacture through the medium of the commercial intercourse subsisting between the people on the eastern coast, and the Europeans. They shewed me some pieces half prepared, by which I perceived that they could not make any above a foot in length, so that the rings cannot be composed of one entire piece; they must be bound together at certain distances with a thicker piece of wire. The poorer Beetjuans wear heavy copper rings*, and those who

* It is worthy of remark, that the chief physician, Klaproth, having examined one of these rings, found the metal of which it was made to consist of ninety-three parts of copper, and seven of tin; consequently, that it was very much the same as caldaric ore. As no mineral containing tin has yet been found in Southern Africa, it is very probable that these rings come farther northwards, and perhaps in some of the former wanderings of the Caffres were brought hither.

cannot afford even them, wear leather ones, cut whole out of the skin of the rhinoceros or the river-horse. Only old people have caps on their heads: they are made of skins sewed together, with the rough side worn inwards. Young men and women go with the head bare, the hair being rubbed over with the shining ointment, and made up into little bunches. Here is, consequently, a difference between the Beetjuans and Koossas, since among the latter the women never appear with their heads uncovered.

For what concerns their diseases, and their superstitious modes of curing them, the physical education of their children, the usual length of their lives, the ceremonies in contracting and celebrating their marriages, they are, with some very slight deviations, the same as among the Koossas, to which, therefore, the reader may be referred.

The power of the chief or king among the Beetjuans is much more extended than among the Koossas. This is a natural consequence of their having permanent habitations, which renders the means employed with so much effect by those more wandering tribes to resist all encroachments in power on the part of the prince impracticable. The king of the Beetjuans has nearly uncircumscribed power, since he can punish all offences according to his own pleasure, and no one has any right to oppose his decisions. He seldom, however, exercises his power, for there is no positive law of which the king can be regarded as the executor. Single combats for the possession of property, or against acts of oppression, take place before the king, without his interfering in them in any way, even though they should be carried on to the death of the parties. If, however, a complaint be laid before him, and his judgment be requested, he takes the matter up very warmly; and the missionaries have seen examples when he has scourged some of his subjects almost to death for robberies committed by them. He is himself the executor of his own sentence, even when the criminal is condemned to death, which is the constant punishment of any one who has betrayed the cause of his country in war. The mode of execution is, that the criminal is laid upon the ground, and the king thrusts him through with a hassagai. The title of the chief is *Murina*—lord; a word strongly resembling *Murimo*, which expresses the Godhead. He has no other outward mark of distinction, but the people have a certain veneration for his person, and for every thing about him. He receives, as a tribute, the breast and tongue of every ox killed, and of every

animal taken in the chace. He has, besides, a right to all the elephants' teeth, and to the skins of all leopards and lions taken by his subjects; yet he seldom uses these skins for cloathing. His counsellors are chosen by him from among the richest and most distinguished of his people: he commonly takes their counsel on the subject of peace or war, though he has himself full power to regulate all the relations of the exterior by his sole will. His sons are born leaders of the armies, and ambassadors; and the eldest is the heir to the throne. The tribe of Maatjaping has been governed by the ancestors of the present king from time immemorial. There is a species of nobility among the Beetjuans, which is derived from the wealth and distinction of their ancestors, and from relationship with the family of the chief.

In their wars, they observe the same proceedings as the Koossas, and in the negociations which precede and accompany the breaking out of hostilities the utmost openness and contempt of all chicane or deceit is manifest; a proof of innate rectitude, and consciousness of natural strength. Their weapons differ very little from those of the Koossas, only that the hassagais are of better workmanship; the blade has commonly two points on the back, and the inner shaft is jagged at the edge. The shields are scarcely half so large as the Koossas' shields, but the kirris, on the contrary, are longer in the handle.

A singular custom prevails here not to be found among the Koossas. After a successful war, a festival of triumph is held, of which every warrior who has killed an adversary partakes. As a proof of his achievements, he must bring a piece of flesh from the person he has killed, with the skin cut from the body, having the navel in it. The priest collects the heroes by night in an enclosed place, with a low fence round it: here no man enters who cannot produce this piece of flesh; the rest of the men, with the women, remain on the outside as spectators. The warriors range themselves round a large fire, stick the piece of flesh into the glowing embers, and when it is sufficiently roasted, eat it. This custom is not the result of any cannibal ideas, but arises from an ancient superstition, that eating human flesh inspires courage, and by degrees makes the warrior invincible; so far, however, are the people from considering this repast with delight, that most of them feel a sort of abhorrence of it, and yield to it only from superstition. But the ceremony does not end here. The priest now takes a sharp hassagai,

with which he makes a long cut in the skin of each warrior, from the hip down to the knee, which, for the remainder of his life, is a palpable token of his heroism. Notwithstanding this wound, the festival concludes with a dance, which is often continued till sun-rise. One of the king's old counsellors had no less than eleven of these cuts in his thigh, and I saw several men with five or six.

Kok, in relating this custom to me, mentioned a circumstance which I afterwards heard fully confirmed by Koster and Janssen, as equally eye-witnesses of it. A few weeks before our arrival, a horde of Bosjesmans had been attacked by the Beetjuans, with such a superiority of numbers on their part, that many of the combatants must necessarily return without the requisite testimony of their valour. One of them, who, however, was well-known to be far from deficient in bravery, was so mortified at the idea of being excluded from the festival, that, no longer master of himself, he ran home, killed one of his own bondsmen, and carried away the proper trophy as a passport for his admission. Kok added, that this was the only instance in which he ever saw a Beetjuan weep: rage had forced the tears from his eyes, before he thought of having recourse to the above horrible expedient. The deed, for the rest, was never condemned; it was rather applauded as an ingenious device: a proof that the life of prisoners taken in war is at the absolute disposal of the conquerors, and is considered as a present whenever spared. These bondsmen are regarded, indeed, as a separate class of people, and are called Mutjanka; no other servants are included under this appellation, only the prisoners of war.

But among the most remarkable superstitions of the Beetjuans, is the consecration of their cattle by the priest, before they go to war. By this ceremony, these animals, the possession of which is often the subject of the contest, are secured against the enchantments of the enemy, and even against all danger of being forcibly carried away by him. This consecration consists in the priest's taking each animal individually, as it is brought to him, and painting a particular mark upon its hind leg, with a jackal's tail dipped in a kind of black paint. This he performs kneeling, pronouncing at the same time certain mysterious words, during which, another person, kneeling behind him, repeats the same mark with a little brush upon his back or arms. Among their most common charms, is to put round the necks of their

children a number of the shells of a large beetle, the *brachycerus apterus*, strung on a little strip of leather. This is believed to be an effectual preventative of certain diseases, particularly to facilitate the cutting of the teeth.*

Their ideas with respect to the deity are not much clearer than those of the Koossas. They venerate an invisible Being, whom they call Murimo, as the cause of all appearances in nature, and the origin of all the good and evil that happens to them, without any act of their own. They are not, however, agreed among themselves whether this being is an entirely beneficent or malevolent being; and if on the one hand they thank him for any good received, they never hesitate to shew their indignation at any ill experienced, or any wish unaccomplished, by the most bitter curses. They have no religious worship, and could never be persuaded by the missionaries that this was a thing pleasing to God. Of their language I shall treat in a separate Appendix: I now return to our journey.†

---

* A representation of these shells is given in *Edwards's Natural History of Birds*, Vol. IV. Table 178. He obtained one from a friend, who brought it from the island of Madagascar, and supposes that they are used by the Caffres as a sort of whistle to call their herds together.

† The annexed plate represents various objects of ornament and household utensils, with other things particularly worthy of note among the Beetjuans.

1. A hassagai, of a form very much in use among them. The blade, terminating at the back in two points, and the jagged shaft, render it a much more formidable weapon than the hassagais of the Koossas. A part of the handle only is here given: the whole weapon is seven feet in length, always tapering towards the end.

2. An iron bodkin, used for boring the holes in the skins that are to be sewed together; also used in weaving rushes; and as a chirurgical instrument: it is worn frequently hanging to a strip of leather round the neck.

3. The double edged knife, made by the Beetjuans.

4. The wooden sheath to the knife, having the figures burnt upon it, and the leather straps affixed, by which it is hung round the neck. A piece of hard wood for whetting it, and some copper rings, as ornaments, are attached to the leather.

5. A fan of ostrich feathers used by Mulihawang to keep off the flies; a present to me from the king's own hand. The poorer people use a jackal's tail fixed to a stick for the same purpose. Both are also employed to wipe the sweat from the face.

6. Beetjuan spoons, made of mimosa wood, with figures burnt upon them. The handles are sometimes made to represent the head and neck of a giraffe, or of some bird, and are remarkable as the first essays of an uncivilized nation in the art of sculpture.

7. The head-dress of a dancer, made of porcupine's quills, as described in page 318.

To face page 331

Swaine Sc.

Household Utensils, Ornaments, and Weapons of the Bechuanas.

London Published May 1st 1815, by H Colburn, Conduit Street

8. A pot made of dark red clay, hardened in the sun: instead of a handle, a leather strap is fastened to the brim.

9. A leather bag, worn slung round the neck, for keeping various trifles. The women wear it very commonly hanging on the arm. The tufts of strips of leather are attached to it as ornaments.

10. An amulet of the shells of beetles, as described in page 332.

11. The magical dice made of the cloven feet of antelopes, as described in page 317. I could not learn the signification of the figures carved on the outside: one is not unlike the double Hebrew *schin*, a sign to which great consequence was attached by the Jewish priests, and which, in common with many other things in the customs, manners, and modes of life, among these people, reminds us very much of the ancient eastern nations. The antiquarian would perhaps find in these dice the *tali* and *astragali* of the ancients.

CHAP. LII.

Return to the Colony, amidst various Hardships and Privations.—The Author obliged to abandon his favourite Horse.—The Travellers joined by two young Beetjuans.—Some of the party ill with eating Bulbs.—The Dancing and Music of the Corans.—Dangers in repassing the Orange River.—The Red Ebony Tree.—Fruitless Endeavours to shoot River-Horses, and to catch Gerboas.—Baviansbak.—Eruptive Disorder among the Cattle.—Sufferings of the Travellers from Wet and Cold.—The Leeuwenfontein.—The Silurus Anguillaris.—The African Wild-Goose, and its remarkable Nest.—Small-pox among the Bastard Hottentots.—Arrival again at the Sack River.—Extraordinary Train of Caterpillars.—The Roggeveld.—The Karroo.—Arrival at Tulbagh.

On the morning of the second day, we arrived again in the valley of Koossi, having by the way chased several giraffes and antelopes: some of the latter were killed. We also met a flock of that beautiful species of antelope, hitherto unknown to me, which is called by the Beetjuans *p'halla*, but to which I gave the name of *antelope melampus*. We were so fortunate as to kill a very fine male, of which the annexed plate is a faithful delineation. This animal is particularly distinguished by the strikingly disproportionate size of its beautiful angular horns, by a black stripe down the back, which from the root of the tail spreads out on each side in the form of a crescent over the thigh, and by the brilliant black spots upon the outside of the knee and heel. The colour of the back is a chesnut brown, which towards the neck softens into a reddish yellow; about the eyes and under the chin the animal is white. The brown of the back also softens into the same reddish yellow, as it approaches the belly: the belly itself is white. The length of the animal, from the tip of the nose to the end of the tail, is about five feet and a half. Its height in front to the tip of the shoulder is about three feet.*

On the second day, the fifth of July, in the evening, we arrived at the Klipfontein, where we experienced a pretty severe degree of cold. From this, our oxen and horses, already extremely exhausted, and for whom in the

* With the plate of this animal is given that of two Caffres fighting with the kirri, which by mistake was omitted in the first volume.

To face page 334

Caffres fighting with the Kirri.

Antelope Melampus, or P'halla.

London Published May 1st 1805 by H. Colburn Conduit Street

latter days but a very scanty supply of food could be procured, suffered so much, that several from weakness and lameness could go no farther, and we were obliged to leave them behind. Among them was my best horse, from whom I parted with sincere grief of heart, thinking of the faithful services I had received from him, and the melancholy fate to which he was abandoned. Notwithstanding this, I could not resolve to put an end to his life, especially as my companions persuaded me, that here, where some few small green plants were growing, which would serve him as food, he might recover. I afterwards reproached myself exeeedingly with this mistaken feeling of compassion, this want of a little resolution, convinced that he must soon have been discovered by the Bosjesmans, at whose hands he would doubtless receive a death of tortures, instead of the mild one he would have found from mine.

Indeed, the melancholy situation of our cattle, on whose account we had even more to apprehend from the cold than from want of food, called upon us very urgently to hasten our journey as much as possible. Nor this circumstance alone—the state of our provisions, our wine, and other objects of the first necessity, as well as our small remaining stock of powder, all concurred to excite in us an almost painful longing once more to reach an inhabited country. We therefore generally travelled by night, leaving our oxen time to rest and feed in the day. In this manner, we arrived, on the eighth of July, at Ongeluksfontein, having in the night passed by the grave of the Hottentot Jantje. Here again the Bosjesmans had taken up the body and mangled it; we only found some of the limbs strewed about, which had been torn off either by the savages or the hyenas: these we collected, and replaced them in the grave, which was still open, covering it over hastily with stones.

Leaving Leeuwenkuil on our left, we came by a shorter way to Witwater, where we rested for a day with the Bastard Hottentots, exchanging with them twenty of our weakest oxen and two horses for their fresh cattle. At the Rietfontein, we received a visit from our Coran chief, Sigeb, who reminded us of our promise to take him and his company with us to the colony; from hence, therefore, he joined our convoy, providing for his own subsistence, and his own means of travelling.

From the Bastard Hottentots, at Laauwaterskloof, we received the oxen that we had left under their care; but they were not in much better condition

than when we parted from them, and our anxiety for the rest of our journey was not much diminished. We also made an exchange here at a considerable loss for some fresh cattle, and continued our journey with them, notwithstanding that a frost had come on so severe as to have covered the little stream with ice as thick as the finger. On the eleventh of July, we arrived at the Orange river, on the bank of which we pitched our camp. We were here much surprised at the arrival of two young Beetjuans, who, as they told us, urged by a desire to see foreign countries, had left their parents secretly, and followed the track of our waggons in hopes of coming up with us. They now begged us earnestly to take them into our service, and to let them accompany us to the colony.

We at first endeavoured to dissuade them from pursuing their idea, representing to them that if hereafter they should feel a longing to return to their native country, the journey over the inhospitable district which they must traverse would be very fatiguing and dangerous. To this they answered, that young men must seek to establish themselves in the world; that their father was a poor herdsman, and had scarcely any thing to eat himself; that at home their situation in the service of the rich was not very happy, and that they were not uneasy about their return, for they were accustomed to hardships, and could go so well on foot, that they had been only seven days in coming from the Kuruhman hither, consequently, notwithstanding our superior means, they had been more expeditious by two days than we. From the Bosjesmans, they added, they had nothing to fear, since they had no cattle with them; like them, they were themselves often constrained, at the worst season of the year, to live on such little bulbs as they could scrape out of the ground, and sometimes for days together they were hard pressed indeed with hunger.

As we found them so resolute, and could collect from other assurances they made that they had conceived the greatest confidence in us, and were resolved to pay the entertainment they solicited by the most faithful discharge of their duty, if we would only take them into our service, we at length consented, and never had any reason to repent the compliance. During all the remainder of our journey, they were eager to do every thing that their confined knowledge of our habits and ways of life would permit, and omitted no pains to learn many little arts, such as harnessing the oxen, pitching and striking the tents, or any thing else in which they thought they could be

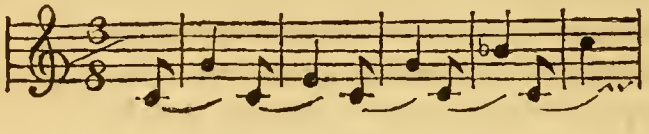
useful. They also laboured so earnestly to learn the Dutch language, that they could make themselves understood by the Hottentots in so short a time as to excite our utmost astonishment. Both took names of animals, according to the custom of their own country: one called himself *Makabi*, a draught ox, the other *P' holla*, a Kudu antelope. When we arrived at Tulbagh, they remained in the house of the Landdrost, who fed and clothed them, and paid them wages; and they conducted themselves with great diligence and regularity. After four months, however, they suddenly disappeared, yet taking nothing with them but the clothes which they had on. Most probably they returned home, though, notwithstanding all possible inquiries, no trace of them could be discovered on their route to the boundaries of the colony.

In a valley where we stopped during the latter days of our journey, some of our party had collected a quantity of bulbs, which, when roasted in the embers, were found to have a very pleasant flavour, much resembling that of chesnuts. Probably from not being sufficiently acquainted with these roots, it was not the proper eatable bulb of the *iris edulis* that they had got, but one of the sorts that are of a pernicious quality, for all that had eaten of them were soon after seized with violent cholicky pains, from which they suffered so much, that however urgent it seemed to lose no time, we were obliged to postpone our journey, and exert all our cares for their restoration. By the use of proper remedies, the next day they were so much recovered as to be able to proceed.

The preceding night being the full moon, the Corans who accompanied us spent it in singing and dancing: the dance was of so peculiar a nature, that I had seen nothing at all resembling it in any other tribe with which I was acquainted. One of the men stood in the middle, leaning on two sticks, which he supported against his shoulders, with his arms twined round him, now bending to the right, then to the left, at the same time stamping with his foot to beat time. Eight or ten women were squatted upon the ground in a circle round, with their hands joined together, and held up towards him. They all made a howling noise, intended for singing, with their utmost might, in which they were joined by a number of men, who were sitting quietly without the circle: some of these men accompanied the singing with a small deadened hollow sounding drum. This drum consisted of a simple kind of vessel made of the stem of an aloe, the original use of which was to keep milk in, over which was stretched a sheep-skin, not prepared in any way.

The dancer, who was commonly the aged Sigeb, turned himself constantly during all this singing upon his crutch-like sticks, first one way, then the other, with his head stretched out, bowing himself now to one of the women, then to another, all preparing to receive him in their arms; till at length, after he had appeared for a long time to be making his choice, he sunk into the lap of one, and fell with her to the ground. Soon, however, starting up again, they returned to their places, the others remaining all the time squatted, and the same was repeated over again, till after awhile they were replaced by fresh dancers.

Their singing was divided into the same extraordinary intervals, as have been noticed before in speaking of the *t'gorrah*, and which, if written down according to our system of notation, would be nearly as follows:



Only it must not be forgotten in this figure, that there is no pure third, fifth, or little seventh, but that the tones are always between two pure intervals and the nearest half-tones, and always nearer, the greater the interval is, so that it appears very doubtful whether the modulation is in a *sharp* or a *flat*, and any one who hears it scarcely knows how to decide either for the one or the other. So much is this at variance with what are considered among us as the fundamental rules of harmony, that it seems as if among the nations of Southern Africa the whole diapason was an octave divided into four parts, formed by their smallest intervals. According to this, the interval following the principal tone would be equal to our third, *minus* two rests; the second interval would be like our fifth, *minus* four rests, therefore nearly a little fifth; and the third would be only two rests higher than the sixth, consequently nearer to this than to the little seventh. This is a matter worthy the investigation of future travellers, and the Cape offers a rich field in this respect to an experienced inquirer, since the various slaves from different nations, from Mozambique, and Madagascar, the Malays, and above all the Bugonese, have each their own peculiar melodies, with intervals not in any way adapted to our diatonic scale.

In the same night we had an eclipse of the moon, for which, owing to the neglect of fixing the true time, I was not prepared beforehand, and

therefore, to my great mortification, so good an opportunity of ascertaining in some measure the l ngitude of the spot where we were was wholly lost.

On the twelfth of July, we sent the waggons alone round by the tedious way, which we ourselves had equally taken before, on account of the turn in the river, and went on foot the nearest way along its banks. Here, for the first time, we again saw Karroo mimosas, which do not grow north of the Orange river: they seem the exclusive produce of the countries near the coast in Africa. In the parts we had lately visited, their place was occupied by several species nearly related to them, as the beautiful *giraffe tree*, the *elephant's thorn*, and the *red ebony tree*. The wood of the latter is the hardest and finest of any in this country, next to the giraffe tree, although the stem is seldom more than four inches thick in diameter. The trouble which our people had when they were sent out for firewood to cut the boughs of this tree first led my attention to the hardness of the wood. From the experiments I then made, I found that in its specific weight, closeness, and hardness, it far exceeds the black ebony, and in working acquires so fine a polish, that an attention to it may very well be recommended to the inhabitants of the colony, as an object of trade from which great profit might be derived.*

At the Red-broken-rock, we waited the arrival of our waggons, and from its summit enjoyed the fine prospect over the whole turn of the river, and the peninsula formed by it. When, after a short rest, we set forwards again, we soon met with an immense swarm of locusts, of the sort already described, which in a short time completely covered the ground all round us. They were pursuing their course northwards across the river, into which so many had fallen, that the whole surface of the water, as far as we could see upwards, seemed overspread with them. In a quarter of an hour we had passed

* This wood, for example, is of a remarkably fine quality for making wind-instruments, as I can affirm from the experience of a flute made of it by M. Eisenhardt of Gottingen, a most excellent musical-instrument-maker. The tone of this flute, from the hardness of the wood, is particularly fine and full. For the rest, none of the sorts here enumerated have as yet been arranged in the system, the giraffe-tree excepted, of which some account has been given by Patterson; even the names of the others are not known. From the specimens which I brought, Professor Wildenow classes them all collectively in the species *acacia*, and calls these two principal sorts *acacia giraffæ*, and *acacia hæmatoxylon*. This is a little piece of information by the way for botanists; in the sequel they shall find the subject more amply discussed.

through this cloud, as it might truly be called, when we saw it spreading out a great way behind us to the right.

Between hills, whose summits were crowned with large stems of aloes, we proceeded on our way to the ford of Priskob, on the Orange river. I hastily cut off a branch of an aloe, but was obliged to forego my wish to carry away a whole stem, since most of them were at the root a foot in diameter. We found the water in the river still lower now than when we crossed it before, and therefore commenced the passage immediately: it was not performed without some danger. The Hottentot boys, who led the foremost oxen in the waggons, and who, on that account, were obliged to be breast high in the water, were so benumbed with its extreme coldness, and had so much difficulty to resist the force of the stream, that they failed in taking the right direction, and sinking into a hole, they could only save themselves by holding fast to the leading rein. The drivers sitting in the waggons endeavoured, in vain, to turn the oxen right: they had now got the cords under their feet, and were so much entangled with them, that it was necessary to stop the whole cavalcade in the midst of the stream. Nothing but the presence of mind of these Hottentot drivers, who hastily sprang into the water, and loosened the oxen in an instant from the yoke, saved the waggon and the whole team from being carried away. By this means the oxen were disentangled, and we happily arrived in safety on the other side of the river.

Near the place where we had before encamped on the south side of the stream, we found so many marks of river-horses, that we resolved immediately to commence a chase of them. Although night was setting in, we went downwards along the banks of the stream, and soon heard the snorting of three of these monstrous creatures, as they came up to the surface of the water to breathe. There was not, however, sufficient light remaining to distinguish the place where the nose was above the water with sufficient accuracy to take a successful aim; and when once a shot was heard they all vanished immediately, so that after watching them awhile, in vain, we were obliged to return, wholly disappointed and half frozen, to the camp. As little successful were we the next morning in our pursuit of the gerboas, the holes of which we found in vast numbers at the foot of a neighbouring mountain. Although all our Hottentots set to work with spades and pick-

axes, to remove the earth, and find out the subterranean passages to their retreats, and although we every where found fresh remains of them, we were at length obliged to abandon the attempt, since the passages crossed each other so repeatedly, forming such an absolute net-work, that it was impossible to follow the course of any one in particular. Our Hottentots also assured us that these animals make their way under ground much faster than it is possible for any man to follow them with his spade; that the only means of taking any number is to turn the water of the river into their habitations, which would immediately drive them out; but this, on account of the height that we were above the river, could not now possibly be done. In hasty showers, a man may catch as many of them as he pleases with his hands only: the wet which drives them out of their holes deprives them at the same time of that agility, which enables them, by taking leaps of three or four ells at one spring, to outstrip the swiftest dogs.

On the thirteenth of July we passed through the Great River's-gate. In the afternoon a number of antelopes were shot, among others a beautiful striped female kudu.* The night was passed at Baviansbak, where, the next morning, we were obliged again to leave some of our sick oxen behind us. From the general and increasing weakness of these creatures, a sort of eruptive disease, not unlike the itch, began to prevail among them, of which many at length died. This, though in some respects a great disaster to us, had yet an advantageous side on which it might be viewed—that henceforward we were spared all apprehensions of being molested by the Bosjesmans: they always found a sufficient supply of food at any place where we had encamped. By this means, during the whole of our return, we never saw any of these people; and if, sometimes, we stopped for the night, our dogs never appeared uneasy, except when the roaring of the lion, or the howling of the fox, was heard. As little did we see on our return, to our no small joy, the importunate Caffres, from whom we should not easily have disengaged ourselves, all our objects of traffic having been disposed of among the Beetjuans. It is much to be feared that our poor Corans fell either into their hands, or into those of the Bosjesmans, for we had never seen them since we crossed the Orange river, and expected in vain that they

* *Antelope Strepsiceros.* The male only of this species has horns.

would rejoin us; neither had any thing been heard of them in the colony as long as I remained in Africa.

When we were in the neighbourhood of the Saltpans, a cold rain fell, which continued for two days, changing to snow in the evening, so that at every step the travelling became more difficult, and wearying both to men and animals. We had not now indeed to struggle against the want of water, which had been so great a distress to us on our journey into the country; but the want of shelter, and the difficulty of making a fire to warm ourselves, was even a greater evil. Our waggons being, according to the custom of the country, more calculated to protect us against the sun than against the cold and wet, kept us dry but for a very short time: the rain soon came through the thin linen tilts, soaking not only our clothes but all our packages, even the very mattrasses and coverlids which we used at night. Our tent, which was not set up without some difficulty, stood upon ground entirely wet: every thing was wet that was brought into it, or soon became so from the rising vapour: ship-biscuit, and dried flesh, were our only articles of food; and the night was passed in conversation, wrapped in our wet cloaks. I had a better protection than any of the party in my Beetjuan mantle, on which, well rubbed over as it was with the ointment of fat and mica, not a drop of rain stood. Our people, however, suffered the most in their leathern jackets, without either shirt or upper garment, obliged to spend almost the whole day in the wet, and at night even less protected from the snow and frost than ourselves. Hitherto the great want of firewood had in some sort been supplied by the dung of the oxen left in our journey upwards at the places where we stopped, and which was now so dried as to make excellent fires. But the rain having deprived us of this resource, our people were sometimes an hour collecting a quantity of the low brushwood, which was burnt out in a few minutes. Indeed, if this weather had continued for six or eight days, we should have suffered much more severely from it than from any of the former vicissitudes we had experienced. Perhaps, considering the manner in which our cattle were evidently affected, not one of them would have survived, and we should have been under the greatest embarrassment how to pursue the remainder of our journey. Such an example is sufficient fully to confirm all that has hitherto been said of the many hardships and difficulties which travellers are liable to encounter in this country; it is

almost impossible, indeed, to calculate upon all that may occur, consequently no provision can be made against them.

On the third night the wind abated, and turned to the south: it snowed hard till midnight; and the sun rose in a very clear sky, casting a bright purple tint all over the wintry landscape. Our tent was frozen so hard that it remained standing after we had loosened the cords, intending to strike it. We were, therefore, constrained to wait till the sun had melted the snow, nor could we proceed till about noon; we were even then obliged to leave behind six of our oxen, they being so entirely lamed that they could not move. Here we were again in the neighbourhood of the Karree mountains, the remarkable summits of which were at every moment more and more distinguishable. Innumerable icicles glittered in the refts of the highest stratum, which gave the even borders of these hills the appearance of each summit being encircled with a broad silver band. About noon a large rhinoceros came pretty near to our tent; he was pursued, but the ground was so extremely slippery, that his pursuers could not make any way; and as he trotted off, he was soon lost among the heights. We stopped awhile at Krieger's grave, and enjoyed for the first time, after so long a privation, a hot meal and some refreshing sleep.

In the great plain which was bounded to our left by the varied mountains and deep vallies of the Karree, we again saw a profusion of wild animals, as ostriches, quaggas, eland-antelopes, and springbocks: of these a sufficient number to serve us for several days were shot with very little trouble. On the seventeenth of July we reached the Shietfontein, and on the eighteenth the Leeuwenfontein, where we agreed to take a day's rest. We observed here, in one of the basins of the spring, a number of large fish; but when we threw our nets to catch them, they took refuge very adroitly under the rocks, so that our nets, when drawn out, were scarcely half filled. To my great astonishment, when I came to examine our prisoners, I found them to be the *silurus anguillaris* of Linnæus, a species nearly allied to our *silurus glanis*, or sheath-fish, which in the *systema naturæ* is given as an inhabitant of the Nile. Some among them were three foot long, and weighed eight pounds: we thought them very well-flavoured, and were exceedingly glad of the change, after having lived for so long a time on nothing but flesh. At first it appeared to me wholly incomprehensible how these fish could have come into so small a place, unconnected, in the remotest degree, with any

river, at the utmost having some mode of communication with a stagnant lake. Soon, however, finding in the vicinity a nest of the large African wild-goose,* which we saw not far off swimming on the water, the idea very naturally occurred to me that these birds might probably have brought the spawn of the fish with them from the Orange river, where, as we were told by our companions, they abound. The nest itself excited my attention very strongly. The foundation of it was thick hard reeds, very artificially woven together; it was of a regular quadrangular form, and laid dry and soft upon reed-straw and leaves; within, it was lined with feathers and the wool of certain plants. There were no eggs in it, but it seemed quite fresh made, as if this was the season for laying and setting. Some of these animals whom we shot at the Orange river appeared then to be moulting.

When we arrived at the Brakke river, on the twentieth, after a very fatiguing chase of some quaggas, to our great astonishment we found there the missionaries Koster and Janssen, and learnt from them, that by the time they arrived at the Orange river, some of their Hottentots fell ill with the small-pox, on which account they had not been able to proceed on their journey. To prevent any farther delay, Koster immediately inoculated all his people, even his wife, and none of them had the disorder severely. Most were able to go out on the tenth day, and attend to their work; and he was only now staying the time required by the Landdrost, according to the written instructions which had been given him, for obviating all danger of infection either from the persons themselves, who had had the disease, or from their clothes. The last of his people who was ill had now been recovered a fortnight, and he, therefore, hoped soon to receive full permission to return into the colony. As it was our own intention to stop some days at the Sack river, the missionaries were desired to follow us into that neighbourhood, where, after an accurate examination into all circumstances, they should receive their final orders. On the following day we arrived at Kicherer's Institution, where was the family of our Kok: among these people also this formidable disease had broke out. They had, therefore, faithful to our orders, not gone among the Hottentots, but taken up their abode at about half an hour's distance

* This goose is considered by some persons only as a variety of the *Anas Ægyptiaca* of Linnæus: with what justice I cannot pretend to decide, as I know so little of either. They are certainly, at least, very nearly related.

from them. I examined those who had gone through the disease, most of whom had been recovered some weeks. Some of them were pretty strongly scarred. My advice was, that after well cleansing and purifying every thing belonging to them, they should remove in about a fortnight into the Roggeveld. This advice was followed: and the evil which, perhaps, at a hotter season of the year, and in the houses of the colonists, might have assumed a very malignant character, was, through these precautions, happily averted. But for the accidental circumstance of our journey lying in such a direction as that we came into the proximity of the places where the disease prevailed, the consequences might have been more disastrous. The government of the colony must, however, be always very careful, supposing a greater intercourse to be hereafter established between the European colonists and the nations on the other side of the Orange river, to prevent this evil becoming more serious. I gave my free opinion to the Governor respecting the regulations that ought to be made on this point; together with an account of all that I had myself witnessed, and all the information I could obtain.

During our stay at the Sack river, we occupied ourselves very much with examining into some small establishments which lay scattered within a circuit of about three or four miles. All these places were the habitations only of single families, and all had a like melancholy aspect. A little scanty spring, a hut of rushes, full of filth and vermin, a little cattle kraal, with a low fence round it, and, at the utmost, eight or ten meagre oxen, are the most striking objects by which such a spot, standing in the midst of a most naked and unfruitful district, is distinguished. The Hottentots who have selected such a place of residence belong to Kicherer's Institution; but have separated themselves from the rest, as being the richer part of the community, and not willing to share their wealth with their poorer brethren. They only go to the principal institution on a Sunday, to attend divine worship at the church. There is no doubt that even the wild Corans lead more active and happier lives than these men; and there is probably not one, even of the poorest, among the Beetjuans, who would change situations with them.

On the news of our return being spread in the neighbourhood, the Field-Cornet Olivier, and some other colonists, who had been ordered to form a

part of our escort, came to our camp, and endeavoured, by a thousand hollow excuses, to apologize for having failed in their duty. Some confessed, with great frankness, that fear was the sole cause of their neglect; since they were perfectly convinced, in their own minds, that not one of our party would survive the expedition. Had they conceived the smallest idea that we should return so soon, and so happily, they should never have thought of eluding the orders they had received. We pardoned them so much the more readily, as they had not been at all missed by us, and as their company would only have contributed the sooner to exhaust our stores of all kinds.

On the twenty-sixth of July, we again set out from the Sack river, and encamped for the night at the Quagga Fountain, where we were much annoyed by the lions: their roaring kept both us and our cattle upon the alarm all night. From the different noises, we could make out plainly that there was a whole family together, the father, the mother, and the child. Not far from the Karree mountains, we had, in the middle of the day, roused such a company from their rest; when, taking to flight, we could trace their footsteps for three days along the waggon road. They seemed to have followed it by preference, as the most convenient route they could take. Perhaps it was the very same party that we now heard, and in a country so poor in wild animals they were driven by hunger to come so near us.

On the following day's journey we met with another remarkable phenomenon, an enormous train of caterpillars. They were the larvæ of a species of the *bombyx*. Several millions of them, pressed closely together in rows, were crawling in the same direction. Every row was a foot, or a foot and a half from the other, and was the breadth of five or six of the animals. It did not appear as if they were urged by the want of food; for not one sat quietly on any plant; all crawled along restless upon the ground; and, farther than the eye could reach north and south, these parallel rows appeared, pursuing their course. The origin of such an enormous number of these creatures, and the motive of their migration, is certainly still more difficult to be divined than the history of the locusts. The specimens that I carried away changed in a very short time; but not a single one remained alive, so as to arrive at its full developement.

This country again abounded exceedingly with ostriches; several of which,

single ones only, we hit when we fired at them, and killed one. That it was their time of sitting was evident from the great number of nests which we discovered in our hunting parties. We collected a pretty good stock of eggs, to carry as presents to our friends at the Cape Town. Even here the Bosjesmans had been evidently indulging themselves in their thirst of destruction. The produce of whole nests were trodden to pieces, and the impressions of the feet by which they had been crushed were still remaining in the sand. The superabundance of which these plunderers cannot avail themselves, they are resolved no other shall enjoy. They have a particular hatred to the ostrich, on account of his being so long-sighted and so suspicious, that he often betrays them to the antelopes and quaggas, whom they are lurking after, when they are got pretty near to them. Many of the remarks which I have made upon the ostrich, on a former occasion, were the result of the opportunities which I had in this district of investigating their habits and manners.

We made another capture of fish in the Little Riet river, at the Gannakraal, among which were abundance of carp; and in this region also was the botanical harvest again plentiful; while on the heights, none but small liliaceous plants were beginning to blow. At Seldery-fontein, a colonist, by name Meintjes, was brought before the Landdrost, to answer charges made against him of harsh treatment of his Hottentots. From these people we learnt, that, a few weeks before, some of the neighbours had been robbed of all their cattle in the night by the Bosjesmans; but, having united in pursuing the robbers, they were overtaken, and three, who had shot poisoned arrows from a lurking place, were themselves shot in return. Two of these were among the number whom we had had in our power at the Sack river, but had released.

In our journey from the Groote river to Kuilenberg's river, we had again some very cold weather, with snow showers; and in the Roggeveld we found the snow not only drifted in the hollow ways to the depth of several feet, but the fields were also covered with it. The houses were all empty, the inhabitants being still at their winter habitations in the Karroo. The nearer we came to the edge of the Roggeveld mountains, the more severe was the cold; and if we had not found a house and cattle kraals at the farm in the Jackal valley, we should hardly have remained all night in the open air;

we should, notwithstanding our fatigue, have been constrained to hasten, with all possible expedition, down to the Karroo. Immediately on our arrival here, a messenger was dispatched to announce our being returned into the neighbourhood of the Karroo, and to order fresh teams of oxen to be prepared for us. He returned before daybreak, bringing with him some fresh bread, and a flask of brandy. These were costly presents to us; since, for the last week, we had had nothing but ginger-water and mutton tea, or tea of antelope's flesh, to drink. He also brought a packet with newspapers and letters from the Cape Town, which had been some time waiting there for us. With what eagerness they were read may easily be imagined. The pleasure I had found, however, in all the novelties which I had been witnessing, was now wholly embittered by the afflicting news of the death of Lieutenant Janssens, my former pupil, and the companion of my earlier travels, whom I so ardently longed to see again. With him died a thousand fond hopes, which my heart had cherished, of the future figure this amiable youth, with such talents as he possessed, would make in the world; nor could I now think, but with the most poignant anguish, of returning among the melancholy circle whom I should find lamenting so severe a loss.

In descending the Roggeveld mountains, one of our waggons ran against the rock, in a most dangerous place. Most of the things in the waggon suffered no less by the shock than the waggon itself. What I had, above all things, to regret, was, the injury done to my collection of skulls and bones of animals. Some of the most rare were wholly lost; and I found others, when I came to examine them the next day, broken almost to pieces. In arranging the things in the waggon, after the accident, the Hottentots had paid very little attention to them; as they could not conceive that mere bones could be of any value.

In the Karroo we were heartily welcomed home by the whole collected inhabitants of the Roggeveld, at the place of John Van der Westhuizen; and since the stock of bread, wine, pulse, and fruits, began to run very low also among these people, for the harvest of the former year in these articles was very poor, and the like luxuries do not, at any time, abound very much in this part of the colony, one brought this, another that, according to what they could best spare from their own little stock, to supply our wants.

The difference in the temperature of the air was striking; and, while we saw the edges of the mountains every morning bordered with a white frost, we found ourselves here in a very pleasant degree of warmth. Indeed, sometimes at noon it was rather more than pleasant; it was almost overpowering. We stayed here some days, partly to get the waggons repaired, partly to settle with the colonists the damages to be paid for the oxen that had perished in the journey. My attention was particularly called by my hosts to a phenomenon observable in the diseased oxen who had reached their homes. They sought out the half-decayed bones, which were every where strewed about, and would masticate them, for hours together, with great pleasure, as it appeared, particularly at night, or when they laid down to chew the cud. We had several times on our journey observed them doing the same thing; and we were told here that this principally occurs when they are removed suddenly from one kind of feed to another, particularly if the feed is changed from the *sweet* to the *sour fields*. It is very probable that the practice may arise from these animals being troubled with acidity in the stomach, which instinct teaches them the bones will correct.

At this time, the body of an unknown female Hottentot was found dead in a field some miles from hence, and the Field-Cornet Nel ordered some of the people of his district to assemble there for a judicial examination of the body. In the hope of being able to procure some interesting preparations, I did not hesitate to take half a day's journey, in order to be present at the investigation: but when we arrived, the body was already in such a state of corruption, that nothing but the skull could be saved.

On the fourth of August we quitted this place, and, at the same time, took leave of our faithful travelling companions, Vischer and Van der Westhuizen; to whom, as well as to all the rest, handsome presents were made, in the name of the government. Spirited horses carried us, in one day, through the still green and cheerful-looking Karroo; and, on the seventh, after passing over the Witsemberg, we arrived again happily at Tulbagh, where we were received with shouts of joy by the family of the Landdrost. We had been absent exactly three months; and, in this short time, had travelled nearly three hundred and fifty German miles, the farthest point we

had reached, lying a hundred and seventy-eight miles from the Cape Town. Our first care was now to make ourselves fit for the society of civilised beings; to change our linen regularly, and to have our beards shaved. So powerful, however, is the influence of custom, that the first night we went regularly to bed, we almost all found ourselves far from comfortable, and were not so much refreshed as we had often been with a short sleep upon the ground, wrapped in our cloaks, and our heads rested on our saddles.

CHAP. LIII.

A Leopard caught alive by a Colonist.—Fight between him and the Dogs.—Return of the Author to the Roggeveld, to spread Vaccination among the People.—Poorness of Living among the Colonists here.—Their Devotion.—A Hottentot killed by the Author's Side, shot by a Bosjesman, with a poisoned Arrow.—Return again to Tulbagh, and afterwards to the Cape Town.—Death of Kok.—A new Journey over the Black Mountain to the Bosjesveld and the River Zonder-end.—The Colony attacked by the English in 1806.*—Capitulation of the Dutch Troops.—Departure from the Cape.—Stay at the Island of St. Helena.—Return to Europe.*

From the Sack river we had sent dispatches to the Governor, to announce our safe return into the colony, and to give him a general sketch of the fruits of our journey. In former dispatches, the prevalence of the small-pox beyond the colony had been mentioned; and I suggested, in order to preclude, as much as possible, all danger of the disorder rising to any height in the colony, supposing it to be brought thither, that every encouragement should be given to vaccinating all persons who had never had the small-pox. In case this advice was followed, I offered to go myself into the country where there was the most danger of the infection being communicated, to recommend this preventative, and inoculate as many as were willing to avail themselves of it. I now only waited here to receive the Governor's orders, with those of my chief, the Director of the Hospitals, Dibbetz.

During this interval, I occupied myself very much in wanderings about the valley of Roodezand, which was now in high beauty: and indeed, from the great variety of plants that it boasts, it is one of the most important spots in the colony to the botanist. One of the colonists, who lived not far from the drosty, having, just at this time, caught a large leopard, he sent round to his friends to inform them of it; inviting them, according to the custom of the country, to assemble on a day appointed, in the afternoon, to see the combat between this animal and the dogs, who would bite him to death. After partaking of an excellent dinner, we were conducted to the snare where the creature was still confined, whence he must be taken very cautiously to be

carried to the place of combat. This snare was in the remote part of a mountain dell, and was enclosed by a wall of rough pieces of stone; so that two large blocks like the others formed the entrance: for the rest, with regard to the mechanism, it was constructed upon the same principle as a mouse-trap, only with the proper difference of proportions. The snares made for hyenas are of a similar construction, excepting that they are open above: this, on the contrary, was covered with rough planks, between which we could look down upon the beautiful and enraged beast; and on which stood the people who were now to fetter him. They began with throwing in slings, by which first one paw, then another, was caught; and the legs were thus drawn together, while he in vain raged and roared most terribly. When this was done, another person went in, who threw a sling over the head; by the assistance of which, the creature was half drawn out. A strong muzzle was then tied over his mouth; and, thus secured, he was carried to the place of combat. A cord was now thrown round his body, just above the haunches, to which a chain was affixed, and that was fastened to a strong post. By degrees his bandages were taken off, and at length he was left with no other confinement than being tethered to the post. He soon recovered his strength and agility, and began alternately his wild springs and his graceful movements to and fro, exhibiting indeed a very fine spectacle. It was one of which no person can have an idea who has only seen these animals in the cages where they are shewn about by the exhibitors of wild beasts in our own country, humbled and tamed as they are by chastisement, hunger, and the damp cold of an European climate. This South African leopard differs from that of Northern Africa, the true panther, in the form of its spots, in the more slender structure of its body, and in the legs not being so long in proportion to the body. In watching for his prey, he crouches on the ground, with his fore paws stretched out, and his head between them, his eyes rather directed upwards. In this manner he now laid himself down; and, being held fast by the chain, stretched himself to such a length, that he appeared entirely a different animal. He then unexpectedly twined his body about sidewards, this way and that, so that his movements very much resembled those of a snake. Convinced that he was sufficiently secured by the chain, we ventured close to him. We even sought to teaze and provoke him to spring and roar, by throwing little stones

at him, and by playing other tricks. As evening was, however, coming on, a consultation was held, whether it would not be adviseable to set the dogs upon him; for hitherto they had been kept in confinement, that we might first see as much as we wished of the manners and behaviour of the prisoner. The question being determined in the affirmative, most of the company went to prepare these new combatants for the field; when the leopard, making a grand effort, broke the chain, and, being thus left entirely at liberty, made a formidable spring at the Landdrost and me, who had ventured rather too near him. We took to flight, under the utmost alarm and astonishment; but happily the leopard's strength being somewhat exhausted, he missed his aim, and, at that important moment, before he could attempt a second spring, the dogs, who were now let loose, rushed upon him, and immediately seized him by the throat and ears. One of them, who had from age lost a tooth upon our journey, was easily shaken off by the monster, who killed him immediately, by a desperate bite on the head. The rest of the dogs now fell furiously upon him; and two of them bit him in the throat so effectually, that in less than a quarter of an hour not the least spark of remaining life was to be discerned. In the conflict another of the dogs was so severely wounded, that he died the next day. In dissecting the animal, I found all the muscles about the throat and neck bit, but not the smallest hole made in the skin. As it was wholly uninjured, I purchased it of the farmer at the usual price given here for leopard skins, ten dollars. I took, besides, as an addition to my collection, the skull, and some of the most important parts of the bones.

As no letters had been received from the Governor by the fifteenth of August, I prepared to accompany the Landdrost to the Cape Town; when, just before the time appointed for our departure, a messenger arrived, by whom I received a commission to repair immediately to the borders of the colony; and, according to my proposal, to spread the vaccine inoculation as much as possible among the colonists; also to take any other precautions I might think adviseable for preventing the introduction of the small-pox. For this purpose matter for the vaccine inoculation was sent, and an order, on my behalf, to the Field-Cornets of the several districts to furnish me with every thing that might be wanted for the prosecution of my undertaking. I accordingly set off again from Tulbagh on the seventeenth of August; but, on account of a trifling indisposition, which obliged me to stop two days by

the way, I did not arrive at the foot of the Roggeveld mountains till the twenty-fourth. Here I took up my quarters at the house of my friend Van der Westhuizen. I performed the whole journey on horseback, never having any other companion than a single Hottentot, who was furnished me from one station to another. Thus it was impossible for me to carry any provisions with me: I was obliged to content myself with partaking the very humble fare to which the good people, whose guest I was, are accustomed from their youth. In this way I got upon more confidential terms with my hosts, and became more thoroughly acquainted with the domestic economy of the houses, and with the manners and habits of the colonists in these parts, than in my former travels; and learnt, farther, that such a confidential intercourse alone can enable any one to give a really fair and just account of a foreign nation. Many features in the characters of these Africans, both censurable and commendable, were now first known to me; and I was enabled to correct many errors into which I had fallen with respect to them.

That the object of my journey might be fulfilled without delay, immediately on my arrival I inoculated some Hottentot boys, belonging to the followers of Kramer and Edwards, who were on their way to Anderson's Institution. Moreover, as these two sensible men were already convinced of the efficacy of this preventative, I gave them a written memoir, with directions for the inoculation, establishing the full security it afforded against the infection of the small-pox. By them the vaccine inoculation was carried to the Sack river, where Krieger and Botma, equally instructed by me, were active in engaging the families on the borders to avail themselves of it. It was much more difficult to persuade the incredulous and prejudiced inhabitants of the Roggeveld to conform themselves to our wishes. I, however, won at length so much upon their favour and confidence, that I succeeded in removing their scruples; the rather, since the examples I could shew, in the Hottentots vaccinated under my care, convinced them that the illness attending upon this mode of inoculation was very trifling indeed. Thus by degrees the fame of this preventative offered against a disease so much dreaded as the small-pox, was so widely spread over the country, that the people in the Karroo, on the days appointed for inoculation, brought their children, their slaves, and their Hottentots, in great numbers to undergo the

operation: nay, several fathers of families themselves, with their wives, were inoculated. Some of the old people, however, thought it scarcely worth while to make the experiment, thinking that they had no reason to have any apprehension of catching the small-pox. In the four weeks that I stayed here, I inoculated nearly three hundred persons; and, through the zeal of the Field-Cornets Nel and Marits, the good opinion of this practice even increased after my departure. Thus I could happily consider the views with which I undertook the journey as fully answered.*

But, during this space of time I had to endure many inconveniences, and lived even more sparingly than in the latter half of my recent journey. Scarcely any other food than mutton ever appeared at the table of my host, or of his neighbours. Two or three sheep were killed every day: the entrails and feet were cooked with the fat of the tail, for breakfast, after a fashion which is very much in vogue throughout the colony, under the name of *pens en pootjets*. The dinner consisted generally of a strong soup, and roasted mutton: the remaining scraps of the sheep were made into a sort of hash for supper. Not a morsel of bread had we to eat with our meat; and, for a while, not even salt, for none was any where to be procured. It did indeed require a pretty strong appetite and sound health, to live in such a way for several weeks together. But the worst part of the story was, that the water was scarcely drinkable, on account of its being so strongly impregnated with natron. A sort of decoction of tea was the constant liquor at all our meals. Wine, beer, brandy, and vinegar, were things wholly out of the question; and milk I only got occasionally, as a present from patients who wished to pay me some tribute of gratitude. Almost all the milch-cattle, from the scarcity of grass hereabouts this year, were sent to a distance, where feed was more abundant. My worthy host, to whom I complained that the want of bread was the greatest privation I experienced, spared no pains in endeavouring to procure some corn from his neighbours; but a hatful of barley was all he could obtain. Of this the good wife made me a sort of cakes, which were kept entirely for my use: no one besides was allowed to touch them. For-

* The cow-pox was brought, in November, 1803, to the Cape Town by a Portuguese slave-ship from Mozambique, after the English Government had in vain attempted to introduce it from England.

tunately, at this season of the year single colonists were occasionally coming from the blessed Bokkeveld into the Karroo, with fruits, brandy, and tobacco, which they bartered with the peasants of the Roggeveld, at a high price, for their fat sheep. After long expectation, some of these people came, and I procured from them a stock of pomegranates, and a flask of very indifferent brandy, for which I paid them in ready money. They, at the same time, from pure friendship, let my host have some pounds of salt. All these things, how insignificant soever they may appear, made the remainder of my stay much more supportable to me.

At first I found ample employment in writing down directions to distribute among the Field-Cornets of the district, in case the real small-pox should, notwithstanding all our precautions, break out. Two things in particular I inculcated very strongly, as duties of the utmost importance: one was, the immediately removing any person on whom the disorder declared itself, with their clothes, and every thing belonging to them, to a situation remote from all danger of others taking the infection from them; the second was, that all strangers, coming from the farther side of the Orange river, should undergo a strict examination before they were permitted to travel into the interior of the colony. When I was afterwards more at leisure, I did not omit my usual walks in search of rare insects and plants; and I often took rides, both to near and distant neighbours, who wished to have my medical advice. Several days were spent in endeavours to prepare soda from the ashes of certain salt plants of the species of *salsola* and *salicornia*, that grow abundantly hereabouts. In this I succeeded so happily, that the specimens I carried with me were thought equal to the best Spanish barilla.

Much time was also passed in the services of devotion, at which I regularly attended; although it must be acknowledged, that for the most part I found them very tiresome. The day was begun regularly with a psalm being sung, and a chapter from the Bible being read. Not only the children, but all the slaves and Hottentots, were required to attend. Among the latter, almost all the women had learnt the favourite psalms by heart, and joined in singing them with their sharp and shrill tones. The flocks were then driven into the field, the shepherds received their portions of raw meat, and, after breakfast, every body retired to their respective employments. When the flocks returned home in the evening, and had been counted over,

and when the shepherds had received their evening rations, the whole collective body of people belonging to the house were again assembled. In the first place came a female Hottentot, with a large tub full of water, in which the feet of every individual in the family, from the father to the smallest infant, were washed. A table was next set out, at which all the Christians seated themselves; the slaves and Hottentots squatting, as in the morning, round the room. The father then read some extracts from his old sermons, which was followed by the whole company singing a psalm. The ceremony was concluded by the evening blessing. Besides this, on the Sunday morning a solemn service was performed; at which a long sermon was read. Since there were no other books in the house but the sermons and the Bible, and I was observed to study the latter by preference, I acquired the reputation not only of being very pious, but of being deep read in scriptural learning; and I was soon requested to undertake the evening readings, explaining, as was the custom among the travelling missionaries, every evening, a chapter of the Bible. I was so much the more ready to comply with the wishes of these good people, as I found the pious discourses of the old preachers very wearisome, and began to be heartily tired of them. The exposition of my own religious opinions I thought would be much more edifying and entertaining. In choosing the subjects for my commentaries, I studied chiefly to select such passages in the Bible as would afford me the best opportunities of correcting the false principles of devotion inculcated by the missionaries, or of enforcing upon my auditors, in the strongest manner, that there could be no true piety without the love of our neighbour; without forbearance and complacency towards each other (virtues in which the African colonists are apt to be somewhat deficient); and that we must not hope, merely by affected humility and self-abasement, to render ourselves acceptable in the sight of God. Notwithstanding these somewhat bold and free hints, I had the satisfaction of observing that my doctrines were received with approbation. A striking proof of this was, that the neighbours soon began to attend at our evening devotions, and to listen to me with attention and applause. I could not help often being inwardly amused with the very singular situation in which I now stood, as a member of the Lutheran Church, transformed into a Dutch reformed preacher. So grossly ignorant and intolerant, however, are these people, that, if they had conceived the least

idea of my being a Lutheran, they would all have deserted me with no less disgust than they now attended to me with satisfaction.

A short time before my departure the news arrived of a fresh inroad made by the Bosjesmans, and one of a hitherto unheard-of nature. They had set one of the empty houses upon the mountains on fire; and, since this could not be prompted by hunger or cupidity, since it could proceed only from malice, from a desire to do all the injury possible, it occasioned the greatest terror and consternation among the colonists. The old active Field-Cornet resolved, however, to examine into the matter himself; and, as it was to be the excursion of a day only, I determined to accompany him. We had two Hottentots with us, armed; one of whom, from the many conflicts in which he had been engaged with the Bosjesmans, was become a most skilful combatant. He even made it a great boast, that he had shot more than one of these marauders.

We arrived about noon at the farm designated, which was indeed only an insignificant cattle-place, upon the Little Fish river; but we found, to the justification of the Bosjesmans, that the dwelling-house was not injured: a small outbuilding only was burnt down; and it seemed probable, from appearances, that they had not intentionally set it on fire, but had made a fire too near, for the purpose of warming themselves, and cooking the victuals they had plundered; and, in their careless way, neglecting to extinguish it at their departure, it had caught the building, and destroyed it. With this consolatory information we returned home at night, not attending, as much as we ought to have done, since darkness was coming on, to keeping in the right road. By this means I was placed in a situation of more imminent danger than any I had hitherto encountered. It was almost dark when we crossed a little branch of the Rhinoceros river, and came to the foot of a considerable rocky hill. As we were very cold, we agreed to dismount from our horses, and warm ourselves by ascending the hill on foot. The Field-Cornet, with one Hottentot, went on before, and I followed with the other at a little distance. On a sudden we heard the twang of a bow on one side of us; and, at the same moment, my Hottentot gave a scream, and exclaimed that he was wounded: then hastily turning round, fired his gun. The arrow stuck in his side, between the sixth and seventh ribs, and entered nearly two inches deep. Our companions hastened up to us

immediately, and assisted me to draw it out carefully. In this we partially succeeded, notwithstanding the hook that turns back; but we found, alas! that the iron point, which is generally loosely fastened on, was left in the wound, and with it, as we were afraid, some of the poison. Destitute as we were of every kind of remedy, nothing remained but to seek the nearest house with all the haste possible. We turned therefore directly to the right, and descending the hill by a steep path, brought our wounded man to a winter habitation directly at its foot, though the latter part of the way he experienced such dreadful agony from the wound, that he was scarcely able to sit upon his horse. Every possible assistance was here given us by the good people of the house; but a too great length of time had elapsed before this assistance could be obtained: in an hour and a half after our arrival the poor creature expired. Probably the poison was of a very subtile nature, for the patient lost all recollection, and died in strong convulsions. It seems very probable that we had been seen in the day by the lurking Bosjesmans, who recognised their old antagonist, and resolved to be revenged on him. A bunch of white ostrich feathers, which he wore in his hat, rendered him very conspicuous, even though it was nearly dark, so that they could see to take their aim with tolerable certainty, and nothing could avert his doom. Amidst all the affliction which this accident occasioned me, I had much reason to rejoice that the Bosjesmans were such skilful marksmen; for, if the arrow had deviated the least from the direction it took, I was so close to the Hottentot, that I should have received it, and he would have been saved.

I now longed more ardently than ever to quit this melancholy region, and with the utmost delight mounted my horse on the twentieth of September to set out on my return. I pursued a different route from that by which I had come thither, visiting by the way some colonists with whom I was already acquainted, and examining the *Schoorsteen* Mountain with that part of the Karroo of the Bokkeveld which it borders. Through the ignorance of my guide, I was wandering about half one night in the waste, the remainder of it being passed, as we could not find the habitation we sought, sleeping upon the ground with my saddle once more for a pillow. After all these adventures, I arrived safe at Tulbagh on the twenty-fifth, where I remained a few days, and then proceeded to the Cape Town, re-entering it on the thirtieth, having been absent exactly five months.

During some part of my return, I had travelled in company with our friend Kok, who now first, having concluded his business in the Karroo, visited the Cape Town. An examination into his conduct while among the Beetjuans having been instituted by the government, as well as the department of the European Missionary Societies at the Cape, he was determined to have acted with perfect propriety and rectitude. This done, he furnished himself with every thing necessary for making a stay of many years among his old friends, and in a few weeks set out on his return. Although he continued to be generally beloved both by the king of the Beetjuans and the people, he happened, in the year 1808, unfortunately to get into some private quarrel with an individual, by whom he was killed. His widow returned into the colony, having first received a solemn promise from the king, that the offender should be punished with the utmost rigour. Whether he kept his promise was not known at the time that the last intelligence I received from the Cape was dispatched. The information we had brought from the Beetjuan country continued then to be the latest. A party extremely well equipped set out in the year 1807, under the auspices of the then English governor, Lord Caledon, at the head of which was a physician of great knowledge and science, Dr. Cowan. The object of this expedition was to pass through the Beetjuan country, and if possible to penetrate by that route to the settlement of the Portuguese, in the neighbourhood of Mozambique. There is reason to fear that it has ended unfortunately. In May, 1810, no tidings had been heard of the party; nothing was known subsequent to dispatches which they had sent in September, 1807, when they were only on the borders of the colony. From the spirit of inquiry, however, so prevalent among the English, we may be allowed to hope that they will not be deterred by one disastrous experiment from pursuing their researches, and I must still flatter myself with the idea, that before the expiration of many years, I shall find my observations confirmed, and my knowledge encreased by some enlightened and enterprising person of that nation.

A few week after my return, General Janssens once more sent two officers, the captain of dragoons, Labat, and the captain of artillery, Mossel, to visit some of the nearer parts of the colony. Once accustomed to an unsettled life, I availed myself with pleasure of his permission to accompany these gentlemen, principally for the purpose of obtaining a more accurate know-

ledge of the mountainous country about the sources of the Zonder-end, and ascertaining whether they were properly laid down in the map of the colony, on which I was now employed. We set out from the Cape Town on the twenty-third of October: in two days we reached Stellenbosch, and then crossing the mountains, arrived at the warm-baths on the Black Mountain, on the very day when Doctor Hassner laid the first stone of his new bath-house. A very numerous assemblage of persons was collected together upon this occasion, among whom were many even from the Cape Town: several were now staying here to use the baths, and spoke highly of the very improved accommodations which the guests already found. Three dollars per day was the price given by each person for lodging and board, not including foreign wine; that, if required, was paid for separately.

From hence, we visited again the brethren at Baviansklooof, where we found a sort of little inn established, which, from the constantly increasing number of strangers visiting these parts, answered, as we were informed, tolerably well. Then proceeding along the banks of the river Zonder-end, and the woods upon the neighbouring mountains, once more I had the pleasure of finding myself in Zoetemelk's valley. Here, on the second of November, we experienced one of the most dreadful hurricanes that was ever known in the colony. The venerable old oaks before the house of the postholder were deprived of their largest and soundest boughs by the impetuosity of the storm; and such a violent rain fell at the same time, that the river was in a few hours swelled beyond example. On the same day, all the ships in Table-Bay were torn from their anchors, and most of them, among others the beautiful French frigate the Atalanta, were stranded. From Zoetemelk's valley we went along the banks of the river upwards, traversed the mountains where it rises, with the whole Bosjesveld, and came, on the seventh of November, to Tulbagh. Some days were passed with our friends here, and we then returned by Waggon-maker's-valley, Paarl, and Stellenbosch, to the Cape Town. A few days before I arrived for this last time at Tulbagh, the old *beard-man* had died in prison. I got his corpse taken up, that I might have his skull, which, while he was alive, I had observed to be in many respects very remarkable. At my return to Europe, this, with the skin of his face, was deposited in the admirable collection of Counsellor Blumenbach, at Gottingen.

The following weeks of my stay at the Cape Town were passed in drawing out a detailed report which I was to make to the government, and in arranging my papers and natural curiosities. Notwithstanding the increasing favour shewn me by my superiors, and the former bonds in which I was daily united with my equals, I began, while I was thus occupied, to feel an eager longing after my native country, my dear Germany, there to talk over all I had seen, and all the knowledge I had acquired, with the learned and scientific men whose friendship I could boast. The wish at last became so powerful, that I could not forbear communicating it to the Governor, when he promised to promote my views by every possible means. Though from the interrupted communication with Europe, and the high price of transport, he was afraid that I should find very great difficulties. Fortune, however, as it seemed at the first glance, threw in my way a Danish ship, the physician to which had died at Batavia, and I was entering upon a treaty with him, which would have proved a mutual accommodation, when suddenly the news arrived that a large English fleet was approaching, and that an immediate attack upon the colony was to be expected. The news was brought by an American ship, the captain of which said that he counted sixty sail; that they were somewhat south of the line, and were steering southwards: the truth of this statement was confirmed a few days after, when a French vessel was driven on shore by an English frigate nor far from Hout-bay. All remained quiet, however, till the fourth of January, 1806, when, at daybreak, this large enemy's fleet was espied at a distance, which, the nearer it approached, appeared the more formidable: towards evening it came to anchor between Robben Island and the coast, to the amount of sixty-three sail.

The detailed account of the attack that ensued, and of the measures of defence taken by the general-in-chief, belong properly to the historical part of my work, where they will be introduced in regular connexion with the preceding events, and with some strictures upon the military situation of the Cape Town. I was myself an eye-witness of some of the most important circumstances, being at the place of landing, when the battalion in which I served made a feeble attempt at resistance. I consequently retreated with this battalion to the principal corps, with which, two days after, on the eighth of January, I was present in the engagement that decided the fate of the Cape Town, and ultimately, though not immediately, that of the whole

colony. The town, weakly defended by the citizen militia, and the auxiliary troops, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Von Prophalow, capitulated on the ninth, and the Waldeck battalion became prisoners of war. General Janssens, steady to the plan he had formed, retired with the small remains of his army to the heights of Hottentot's-holland. Here, from the precautions taken to provide stores on the other side of the mountains, his little army of scarcely fifteen hundred men might long have bid defiance to the overpowering force of the enemy, at least till from Tulbagh he could be taken in flank; even then the passage of the Houhock would always have furnished a favourable point of defence. But the council of war were unanimously of opinion that it was better to accept the honourable terms of capitulation repeatedly offered by the English; so that the General at length consented, and the whole colony was surrendered, on condition of the army being transported free to Holland. This capitulation was signed at the foot of the hill on the twenty-third of January, by persons empowered on both sides, and the following day we removed to the Wine-hills, where we were to be encamped till our departure.

I accompanied the General to the Cape Town, where all possible respect was shewn him by the English commanders, Sir David Baird, Sir Home Popham, and General Beresford. The month of February was passed in making the necessary preparations for the departure of the troops, and early in March they were distributed on board the seven cartel ships destined to receive them. The very convenient and spacious transport ship, the Bellona, was placed at the entire disposal of the General, on board of which, besides his family, he carried a small train, among whom I was so fortunate as to be included. On the fifth of March, we went on board. Much as I wished to return to my own country, I could not without lively emotions take leave of a town, and of friends to whom I owed so many obligations, and should probably never see again. We set sail the next day under a favourable south-east wind, being saluted by the castle and the English ships of war. By degrees the well-known country faded from before our eyes, which now, as we parted from it, seemed much more dear than it had ever appeared before. In a few hours the Table-Mountain was seen only as a dark cloud in the horizon, and before night closed in, no other objects were in view but the sea and the sky.

On the twentieth of March we arrived at the Island of St. Helena, and

anchored the same day at noon before James-Town. The governor of the island, Sir Robert Patton, not only gave us permission to come on shore, and purchase refreshments, but received us with the most distinguished attention and politeness. Every day a number of the Dutch officers were invited to his table, and the opulent inhabitants of the place seemed emulous to vie with him in hospitality. Nobody received a more ample share of these civilities than myself. General Janssens thought it not adviseable, for many reasons, that he should leave the ship: he considered it as inconsistent with the dignity of a general, who was not a prisoner of war, to be seen in the fortress of an enemy. For himself, therefore, he declined all the governor's invitations, pressing as they were: this did not prevent these truly honourable men feeling the most sincere esteem for each other, and the frequent communications they had respecting exchanges of prisoners of war, or the surrender of ships taken, gave them reciprocal opportunities of knowing how much both were worthy of esteem. Governor Patton, therefore, did not hesitate to relax somewhat on his side, and to pay the first compliment, by coming voluntarily on board our ship. A repeated invitation, that the ladies of the General's family might be permitted to make those of the governor a visit at the country-house of the latter in the interior of the island, was for the same reasons declined. General Janssens, however, had the kindness to think of my love for natural history, and obtained permission of the governor for me to make a little tour about some of the most important parts of the island. It was a general regulation that no foreigner was to be permitted to ascend the heights, since some years before, two travellers, who were considered as wholly unsuspicious persons, were detected upon the heights in taking drawings of the fortifications about the town. The governor, notwithstanding, complied with the general's request, and at daybreak I went on shore. After breakfasting with this polite Englishman, I found an excellent horse prepared for me, and the overseer of his gardens, a certain Mr. Porteus, ready to accompany me.*

* Captain Krusenstern, the Russian circumnavigator, mentions in the account of his voyage, that foreigners are not allowed to go about the island of St. Helena, assigning the same cause for this regulation that is here given: he also mentions that an exception had been made, a few weeks before, in favour of Dr. Lichtenstein, who happened to be at the Cape when it was captured by the English, and had a particular recommendation from Sir David Baird.—Translator.

St. Helena combines in itself the excellencies of several climates. It lies in the torrid zone, under the sixteenth degree of southern latitude; but being, as it were, one enormous rock, with a vast plain at the top, which is almost always enveloped in clouds that entertain an unvaried moisture, and being surrounded by the sea, the heat is never insupportable. Besides, which is very remarkable, the south-east wind constantly blows here at all seasons of the year, and the strongest at the time when at the Cape of Good Hope, which lies directly to the south-east of it, the north-west wind prevails there. About the equator, at this time of the year, navigators have often to complain of calms, by which they are extremely annoyed—a phenomenon not easily to be explained. James-Town lies in a narrow dell, among the mountains, through which a small stream flows into the sea. This is the landing-place, and it is defended by a respectable battery upon the shore. The road is commanded by very formidable works, erected at different heights upon the mountains on each side. The island is considered, in its present situation, as wholly impregnable. A convenient and substantially built mole facilitates the landing of the boats; which otherwise, from the heavy swell of the sea, would sometimes be very difficult. From hence the road goes to the right wing of the strand battery, beyond which a fine avenue of the large Indian fig-trees, *ficus religiosa*, leads to the gates of the town. This lies nearly in the centre of a wall which runs from one hill to the other, and which divides the town from the strand. On entering the town, the Government-house, a very spacious building, lies directly to the left; and from hence runs a long street, which, with some houses scattered upon the heights, comprehends the whole town. Directly at the end of the street lie the gardens of the governor, and some private gardens: behind the latter stands a centinel, who prevents any stranger going farther.

In the governor's garden are plants from all climates. The principal walks are bordered with the *ficus religiosa*, or the *ficus bengalensis*. Some of the bye-walks are formed of bamboo-canes, which grow to a great height, and afford ample shade. Here are to be seen European plants by the side of natives of Africa, of the East Indies, of New Holland, and of South America, all appearing equally thriving and healthy. Nothing excited my interest and attention so much as a tree, which the celebrated Cook, at his return from his second voyage, planted here himself, giving it the name of the *Barringtonia*

speciosa. It is now of a considerable size; and, at the present moment, when every branch was full of the most splendid flowers, it really presented one of the most glorious spectacles that the world of plants could offer. Some idea of it may be formed by conceiving a very beautiful lime-tree, with a large flower of the *cactus* at the end of every twig. The smell is indeed scarcely less balsamic than that of the beautiful *cactus*, which we prize so much in our hot-houses, and which blows only in the night. *Protea*, *erythrina*, *sophora*, and other well-known plants of the Cape, were presented to my view, as if once more to bid us farewell: while in the moister parts of the garden were cocoa-trees, with date and fan-palms. These latter seemed to have found here a soil much more congenial to them than that of the Cape, where they never will thrive.

When we had gone over this garden, which indeed I had visited before on the first day of my arrival, we proceeded on our way. This led first still deeper into the dell, and then ascending, for about half an hour, by a very steep path, we arrived at the plain. Here we saw every way a number of farms among fine verdant fields and meadows, which reminded me more of European, particularly of English houses, than any I had seen in the colony. Fat cattle were feeding upon luxurious grass; yet my companion said that the island could not furnish such a supply of food to these creatures as they required. The character he gave of the inhabitants was such as may be applied to European colonists in most parts of the world. Courage, hospitality, propensity to oppose the government, eternal quarrels with their neighbours, neglect of cultivating the mind,—these, as he said, are the principal features of their characters. The country soon became more uneven and hilly, till we reached a highly romantic spot, where neat farms, in deep recesses in the mountains, planted round with oaks and poplars, presented themselves on every side. I absolutely revelled in the enjoyment so long denied me, of the moist mountain air, and luxurious pastures. Our route carried us to the north-westerly and highest point of the island. Here the soil was less fertile, and the houses smaller. About the hills stood many single trees, natives of the country, in general from ten to twelve feet high, with naked stems and large broad leaves, the systematic names of which my companion could not give me. Three sorts of them are here called *cabbage-trees*, and two other sorts *gum-trees*. The higher we went, the more moist

we found the soil, and the more did the grasses, which were almost all of the pure European sorts, give way to ferns. We rode constantly in a mist, or small rain; and I learnt that the sun is here seldom seen. Clouds are always resting on this part of the island. After seeing many very rare and beautiful plants of the *polypodium*, *asplenium*, *blechnum*, *jungermannia*, and *marchantia* species, with a variety of others, we came at length to the spot which is the true native place of the largest among all the ferns, *dicksonia arborescens*. This plant may very fairly be likened to the palm, which, however, it far excels in the beauty of its leaves. The stems of many of the plants were from twelve to fourteen feet in height: they stood singly, growing out of refts in the rocks. They are only found on this one spot in the island, and grow in no other country; so that it would not be a difficult matter to extirpate the race from the earth.

My companion now led me along the crest of this hill to one of the finest points in the island, from which the eye wanders over a very remarkable country. To the left, the green heights stretch in a direct line, declining always towards the western border of the island; behind which the horizon of the sea, seen from this height to an immense distance, seems to rise in an immeasurable arch. On the other side tower, in fearful contrast, monstrous naked masses of rock, of equal height with the opposite jagged summits. It seems wholly inexplicable why there should be here no symptom of vegetation, when in most parts of the island it is so luxurious. Nothing, however, is to be seen about these rocks, excepting the nests of the sea-fowl, which are built in the cavities, and seem to be suffered to remain there undisturbed. That the wild and romantic character of the valley may be preserved even in its name, the first discoverer consecrated it to the memory of one of the heroes of Ossian; and, at this day, it bears the name of *Ryno's Vale*.

From hence we were obliged partially to measure back our steps, since there is only one path by which these heights can be reached. We then turned towards the northern shore of the island; and in the afternoon arrived at the governor's country-house, where we found him himself, surrounded by his three most amiable daughters. The good taste displayed in the house, and in laying out the gardens, reminded me, in the most pleasing manner, of England. Each of the young ladies was mistress of some art. The eldest

played very finely, and the second sung with equal taste, while the third shewed me a room filled with the most excellent oil-paintings, the produce of her own hands. Six large pictures represented the finest views on the island. I knew them immediately; and contemplated, with transport, such a spirited and faithful representation of Ryno's Vale. A better judge than myself, seeing these pictures in a gallery, might have supposed them the production of some great master. The few hours that I spent with this interesting family, will always be reckoned among the happiest of my life. After dinner, which was not over till night was closing in, I returned back to James-Town, in company with Lieutenant Pritchard, Adjutant to the General. I just arrived at the town in time to go on board my ship with the last boat.

The next day we weighed anchor, and pursued our voyage with a continued favourable wind. On the twenty-ninth we passed the island of Ascension; and on the fourth of April crossed the line, in twenty degrees of longitude west of Greenwich. We soon came into the course of the north-east trade-wind, which continued to prevail till the twenty-seventh of April. It had brought us by that time to the latitude of the Canary Islands. A storm then came on from the north-west; in the midst of which, on the fifth of May, we passed the Azores. On the sixteenth, we first found a bottom at eighty-five fathom water, and the next day the Scilly Islands were visible. We were here at the entrance of the Channel visited by several English ships of war; and our proud Captain, not always choosing to give an immediate answer, we were fired at by some. On the twentieth, we came to anchor before Plymouth. Here we learnt all the most important political occurrences that had recently taken place, but not one of us was permitted to set a foot on shore. After as short a stay as possible, we pursued our course; and, at length, on the fifth of June, arrived safely and happily at Flushing. I remained four months in Holland, and in October once more reached my native country, having been absent five years and a half. In the arms of my friends, I found a most delightful recompense for all my toils and labours.

END OF PART THE SEVENTH, AND OF THE TRAVELS.

APPENDIX.

No. 1.

On the Language of the wild Hottentot Tribes, particularly of the Corans and Bosjesmans.

IN the colony, and in the service of the Europeans, very few Hottentots are to be found who are not able to speak the Dutch language, or who speak their own language pure and entire. Most of them only retain some particular expressions, which are mingled with the Dutch, Portuguese, and Malay languages, spoken by the slaves and common people, in the proportion of not more than a fourth part. On the borders alone are some Hottentots to be found who speak their own language; but among them several foreign words are introduced, spoken with the Hottentot accent and snort. It is, therefore, a vain endeavour to become acquainted with this language in the colony itself: it is only beyond the borders that any one can hope to procure such results upon the subject as may serve for a foundation on which to confirm or refute what has been said by former travellers. Much of the information I have procured from other writers, who have occupied themselves with such researches, illustrated by many observations of my own, has already been given to the world, in the Essay which I published in *Bertuch and Vater's Ethnographical Archives upon the Languages of the Savage tribes in Southern Africa;* I shall, therefore, only give here, in addition, such general observations as appear to me the most worthy of attention.

The extraordinary characteristic of these languages has attracted the notice of all travellers. The Portuguese, who first landed here with Vasco de Gama, called the Hottentot manner of speaking stammering. Later observers, among the English and Dutch, repeated this inapplicable comparison, finding the pronunciation so difficult, that, for instance, in Lancaster's voyage in the year 1601, not one of his people, during a stay of seven weeks, could pronounce a single word accurately. Dapper compared the Hottentot manner of speaking with the gobbling of a turkey-cock; but, this set aside, he describes the language as fundamentally good. Ten Rhyn is the writer who speaks with more accuracy upon this subject than any other, when he gives the clacking with the tongue, and the speaking with open rounded lips, as the most striking characteristics of the pronunciation. Le Vaillant is the most diffuse of our modern travellers; but he heard too little of what can be called pure Hottentot, to judge of it fairly; and many

things said by him are therefore erroneous. For various reasons, indeed, it is almost impossible to give, in writing, information that shall be intelligible upon languages of such a nature, or to treat of them after the manner in which we should treat of a language reduced to a regular system. My remarks must therefore appear desultory, and, in some sort, like broken fragments; yet, I trust, they will be found not destitute of merit or utility, in comparison with those of former writers.

To give an idea of the general impression made on the ear by the sound of this language on first hearing it, a man must figure to himself that he is listening to short sentences, pronounced with a quick and rough voice, deep in the throat, accompanied by a sharp aspiration and clucking with the tongue, in which double vowels occur perpetually. Nothing strikes so much as the croaking in the throat, and clucking with the tongue. Most of the tones are formed deep in the mouth between the back of the tongue and the gums. Labial letters are scarcely to be heard at all: or only, as it were, by chance, at the end of a sentence in closing the mouth. This clucking seems the most striking distinction to be observed between the pronunciation of these languages, and of all others. Le Vaillant was the first who taught us that there were several degrees of it to be distinguished, of which he particularly describes three. Van der Kemp describes six, which, he observes, all have their different powers; those powers, arising from the point of the tongue, being struck against the inside of the double teeth, or of the front teeth, or from the back of the tongue being struck against the roof of the mouth. The smallest degree is compared by Le Vaillant to the tone with which a man drives a horse. For the stronger, it is difficult to find a comparison; and it is nearly impossible to be imitated by an European. The peculiar conformation of the skull of a Hottentot, where the bones of the gums are less wide asunder, and the roof of the mouth is less arched than among us, at the same time that the tongue is shorter and thicker, must be considered as the foundation of this very extraordinary sound. The principal difficulty is not so much in producing the sound singly, as in following it immediately with another letter or syllable. It will easily, therefore, be comprehended that it cannot accord with many consonants, since they must be produced by the lips: that the sound must much rather be expressed by vowels, or guttural letters; though occasionally *n*, *s*, and *t* occur. Le Vaillant made use of signs invented by himself to express these sounds; but I think they will be more easily comprehended by following Van der Kemp's method,* and employing the numbers 1, 2, 3, to distinguish the degrees of the sound; and, after the example of Sparrman, to precede many words with the *t*, which gives a pretty accurate idea of that particular sound.

In sounds which may be described by the letters of our alphabet, the Hottentots have none corresponding with *l*, *f*, *v*, *w*, and *x*; nor have they any sound similar to the hissing of our *sch*. In guttural sounds they abound much more than we do: they have all that proceed from *h*, through the Arabic *hha*, the *ch*, the Dutch *g*, to our German *g*, *k*, and *kch*. The strong aspiration, which occurs in so many words, is, above all things, characteristic in these languages; yet Le Vaillant goes too far when he would give it a distinctive sign, since it

* This enthusiastic converter of the Hottentots, printed, with his own hands, in the year 1806, a catechism in the Hotteotot language for the use of the missionaries.

is much better expressed by the sounds given above. The gradations in this sound are so minute, that an European ear has often much difficulty in distinguishing one sound from another, which presents a directly opposite idea, and is distinguished only by the greater or less degree of aspiration. In the sounds formed by the teeth and lips, they are much more careless, and confuse every moment *d* with *g*, and *b* with *d*; so that one is doubtful which of these letters ought to be employed to express the sound. The abundant terminations in *ihb* and *ihng*, in *uhb* and *uhng*, have often the same meaning. The termination in labial letters, on the contrary, as *b* and *m*, have a marked distinction from those ending in *s*. The *b*, or *m*, is always the sign of the masculine, the *s* of the feminine; as, *t'ghub*, a ram; *t'guhs*, an ewe; *chaib*, a man; *chaisas*, a woman; *t'kaam*, brother; *t'kaans*, sister.

Vowels and double vowels abound, and are very distinct in all their gradations: *o* and *u* are those that occur the most frequently; *e* the most rarely. They are pronounced throughout much more long than short, and the sound rests upon them. The radical words are, for the most part, of two syllables: in these the consonants are pronounced much more rapidly. *A* and *o* have here, as in most languages, the greatest variety of shadings; and occur, in various ways, as double sounds with the other vowels. It is, therefore, with a particular view that I make use of different signs to distinguish such double sounds, although in our language they would pass for the same as *aa* and *ah*; and with equal design I write *ou*, *au*, *eu*, *oi*, *öi*, *ö*, *ch*, *ee*, *ä*, *ei*, *ai*, as indicating gradations which must be expressed by distinctive symbols, if we would make the Hottentot understood in writing. An idea of what I mean may be collected from the following list of words nearly allied to each other:—

t'^{1} a u b.....the neck.
t'^{2} a a u b.....blood.
d a u b.....the zebra.
d a a u b.....a road.
g a u b.....the gnu.
t'^{2} g a a u b.....cold.
t'^{2} k a u b.....a snake.
t'^{1} k a a u b.....a buffalo.
t'^{2} k a a u b.....a party of soldiers.
t'$_{2}$ k c h a u b.....a fish.
t'^{3} k c h a a u b.....the field.
k o u b.....the heart.
t'^{2} k o u b.....fat.
t'^{2} k o o b.....flesh.
t'^{1} k h o o b.....a knapsack.
t'$_{1}$ k o b.....a child.
t'^{3} k o o b i.....death

Ai, *ei*, *eu*, and *oi*, have in other words similar relations; as here *au* and *ou*, which must all be distinguished by the different degree of clucking with the tongue, and of which it is therefore very difficult to give an idea in writing.

As to what concerns the grammatical formation of the language, the following remarks seem to me worthy of attention. There is no article; so that there is no means of shewing the declensions of nouns but by the connexion, the intonation, and the gestures. In some particular cases these are assisted by the particles, which are very abundant, and which appear to be introduced very arbitrarily; so much so, that at first, people endeavoured to convert them into terminations, or into the article itself. Farther, there are no auxiliary verbs; and the Hottentots, even in speaking Dutch, do not know how to make use of them. As little

could I succeed in finding out any thing like conjugation of verbs; so that there reigns throughout in the language a want of precision, which is only to be supplied by the variations of the countenance, and the animation of the gestures. The arrangement of the words seems also very arbitrary; at least, notwithstanding all my endeavours, I could not arrive at any satisfactory results in this respect. Indeed, every inquiry which I made as to the reason why such a word was put in such a place, or what was the use of an intermediate syllable, only led to my being more and more embarrassed. There is no doubt, however, that much elucidation of this matter might be obtained by remaining for a long time with one particular tribe, so as to obtain a complete knowledge of the language. All that I could learn, respecting these intermediate syllables, was, that they used them principally to render the expression more clear and more forcible. They are, therefore, the most in use among the most rude and wild of the tribes, abounding much more in the Bosjesman language than in the Coran. They change, indeed, almost in every single horde; and where the nouns and verbs themselves are the same, the thought is expressed by a different intermediate syllable. The verb, standing by itself, always signifies the third person: there are appropriate pronouns to distinguish the first and second. The want of auxiliaries to express the time, is often transferred by the Hottentots into the Dutch language. Personal pronouns are as little declined as substantives. The adjectives are, for the most part, either verbs or substantives, with such trifling variations, that they can scarcely be distinguished from participles.

Among all the Hottentot dialects, none is so rough and wild, and differs so much from the rest, as that of the Bosjesmans; so that it is scarcely understood by any of the other tribes. It is, in the first place, much poorer in sounds: many sounds, which may be expressed by our letters, in the Gonaaqua, the Coran, and the Namaaqua languages, are either totally wanting among them, or very rarely occur. Pure vowels are seldom to be heard; but the cluck and the diphthongs are much more frequent. The cluck, in particular, seems the most completely at home among them: scarcely a word occurs without it. The gurgling in the throat is much deeper, and hence ensue the most disagreeable nasal tones. The speech ends with a sort of singing sound, which dies away by degrees, and is often some seconds before it wholly ceases. To avoid saying any thing about the language, I rather give a short vocabulary of words and modes of speech. I do not make it very ample, since no one who may happen, after me, to visit this people, will wish to learn so rude a language, except upon the spot itself: they may yet, however, be glad to have some specimens of it.

VOCABULARY.

	Coran.	*Bosjesman.*
One	t'^{1}ko-ei	t'^{1}ko-ai.
Two	t'^{1}koam	t'^{2}kuh.
Three	t'^{1}norra	They are entirely destitute of
Four	hakka	the other numerals.

APPENDIX.

	Coran.	*Bosjesman.*
Five	kurruh	
Six	t'ǀnani	
Seven	honko	
Eight	t''kaissee	
Nine	t'ǂgoissee	
Ten	diissi	
A Man	köhn	t'ǀkubi.
The head	minnong	t'ǀnaa.
The eye	muhm	t'ǀsaguh.
The nose	t'ǀgeub	t'ǀnuhntu.
The mouth	t'ǂkchamma	tub.
The teeth	t'ǀkuhm	t'ǀkei.
The tongue	tamma	t'ǀinn.
The beard	t'ǀnomkoa	t'ǀnomm.
The hair	t'ǀonkoa	t'ǀuki.
The ear	t'ǀnaum	t'ǀno eingtu.
The neck	t'ǀaub	t'ǂkau.
The breast	t'ǀhamma*	t'neintu.
The arm	t'ǂkoam	t'ǀoo.
The hand	t'ǀkoam	t'ǀaa.
The finger	t'ǂunkoa	
The body	t''kaab	t''kauki.
The belly	t'ǂkomma	t''kautu.
The entrails	t'ǀgeunkoa	t'ǀgeun.
The back	t'ǂkam, t'ıkaib†	t'ǂkooih.
The thigh	tiim	t'hee.
The leg	t'ǂnuh	t'ǂkoah.
The foot	t'ǀkeib	t''noah.
Father	Aboob	Oa.
Mother	Eijoos	Choa.
Brother	t'ǂkaam	t'ǂkang.
Sister	t'ǂkaans	t'ǂkaach.
Husband	köub / keub / chaib	t'ǂna.

* The same word in the Beetjuan language signifies the neck.

† Literally, the *behind man.*

APPENDIX.

	Coran.	*Bosjesman.*
Wife	chaisas }	t'!aiti.
A girl	t'!kos }	
A youth	t'!karoob	t'koang.
A child	t'!kob	t'!kat'!koang.
Sir, master	t'!gausab	t'!nuh.
A garment	t'!nama	t'!no-cing.
A cap	kabaab	t'²ki.
Slippers	t'²abokoa	t'!kuki.
A hassagai	koans	t'²gorkĕka.
A bow	kehaab	t'²hau.
An arrow	t'³koab	t'!gnoa.
A quiver	guruhs	t'³ko-ai.
A bag	t'!khoob	t'²koih.
Game	chammarieb	t'²kaai.
A lion	chamma	t'³kaang.
A leopard	choassaub	t'³kuih.
A hyena	t'²juhnkam	t'²goang.
A jackal	t'²geu-eeb	t'²kooru.
A dog	Arrieb m. Arries f. ..	t'!kŏing.
An elephant	t'³koaab	t'³koah.
A river-horse	t'³kaaus	t'²gah.
A buffalo	t'³kaaub	t'³kau.
Cattle	gummande	choro.
A bull	kchrama	t'³go-aih.
A cow	gumango	t'³goaiti.
An ox	dwiman	dibi.
A calf	t'!nom	t'²goorkŏa.
A sheep	t'²guhb	t'²gai.
An eland	t'²kannam	t'!sah.
A gnu	gaub	t'³kori.
A springbock	t'huuns	oai.
A hare	t'³koamp	t'²knau.
An ape	t'²naitaab	t'!hoho.
A bird	t'³karinde	t'²kanni.
A crow	t'²guraab	t'!aaki.
A fish	t'²kchaub	t'³ko-cings.
The sun	soröhb	t'²koăra.
The moon	t'!khaam	t'²kaukaruh.

APPENDIX.

	Coran.	*Boyjesman.*
The stars	kambrokŏa	t'!koaati.
Fire	t'³aib	t'³jih.
Water	t'!kamma	t'!kohaa.
Land, the field	t'³kchaaub	t'²kauguh.
A river	t'!kahp	t'!ka.
A spring	muhmt'!kamma	t'!kohaat'!saguh.*
A tree	heikoa	t'!huh.
Wood	t'²nomma	t'!hauki.
Rain	t'huus	t'huus.
Thunder	t'³guruh	t'³guruh.
Lightning	t'²abaa	t'²koahkaung.
Wind	t'²koaab	t'!kooih.
Day	sorökoa	t'³gaa.
Night	t'²kaib	t'²kaankuh.
Summer	t'!kuraam	t'²koara.
Winter	tsauba	t'²naa.
A mountain	t'²eub	t'³aau.
A road	daaub	t'!kau
Flesh	t'²koob	aa.
Fat	t'!gneub	s'jeuni.
Milk	diib	t'²koaiti.
Honey	dariings	t'²kaau.
Good	t'³kain	teteini.
Bad	t'huh	t'²kauaki.
Young	t'³aa	t'³aa.
Old	geida	t'!nutara.
Warm	t'²koang	tant'³jih.
Cold	t'²goaub	tissariti.
Ill	t'²aissen	t'²koaissing.
Dead	t'³koab	t'³kuhb.
Easy	süih	t'²kirri.
Hard	t'³kom	t'!nangua.
White	t'²chatih	t'³ko-eita.
Black	t'!nuh	t'!nua.
Red	t'!abaa	t'²küja.
I	tire	ää oder mm.
Thou	saats	aa.

* Literally, *the eye of the water*. In almost all the Eastern languages, the word *ain* signifies equally the *eye*, and a *spring*.

APPENDIX.

	Coran.	*Bosjesman.*
He	t'²naakeub ..... (this man.)	haha.
We	sida	ji oder sisi.
Ye	sakaau	ŭ-ŭ.
They	t'²naakaau	(wanting.)
Mine	tli	inng.
Thine	sachuhb	aaka t'₂so-ing.
His	t'²naa keub huhb ..... (this man good.)	haka t'₂so-ing.
Ours	sidachukŏa.....	sisika t'₂so-ing.
To eat	uhng	haa.
To drink	t'³kchaa.....	t'³koa.
To smoak	t'¹kei	t'²ohii.
To sleep	t'²kchom	t'²ko-ing.
To hunt	t'²kchammi.....	t'³kohaa.
To ensnare	t'¹koo	t'²keia.
To strike	t'¹naau	t'₂gauchu.
To shoot	t'¹noaa	t'²khaaiti.
To hit	t'¹noaa-hó	
To fail	t'¹noaa-sá	
To stand	maa.....	t'²khee.
To go	t'²kuhung	t'³aai.
To run	t'¹ku-üh	t'²koachi.
To speak	kabaa.....	t'¹kakki.
To laugh	t'²kaing	t'²koaing.
To stop.....	t'²koo.....	t'²kaa.
To be hungry ...	t'²karroo	t'²kanga.
To be thirsty.....	t'²kang	t'¹keunja.
To live	t'¹ko-ing	t'³kaua.
To die	t'³koo	t'²kuki.
To lie	t'²kamüh	t'³koaja.
Good day	dnabeh	t'¹abch.

Whence come you? .....

C. Hamt'²kubb saat goacha.*
Whence you come?

B. Achang t'³aintidi.
Whence come?

* The syllable *Ham* or *ha*, among the Corans, as well as the Bosjesmans, always denotes a question, as *Acha*, *Achang*, *Achasing*, and spares a change of tone. Under what circumstance these syllables are changed, and whether they are introduced arbitrarily, or according to any rules, I could not learn.

I come from thence	C.	t'^{2}doa daaub tir' goacha.
		This way I come.
	B.	t'^{2}kang ing t'^{3}ainti.
		There I come.
What is your name?	C.	Ham-ti sa unna.
		What thy name.
	B.	Achang aa taide.
		How you call.
I am a colonist, an European, a white man	C.	t'$_{2}$uhmbe tire.
		Colonist I.
	B.	Mm t'^{1}koanga t'^{2}huh.
		I man white.
Have you seen any game?	C.	Chammaring muhsti ha.
		Game seen ask.
	B.	Achasing t'^{1}au t'^{2}kaaiti.
		Ask seen game.
Yes	C.	Eijoo.
	B.	Kangee-ha.
No	C.	Aa or Haa.
	B.	t'^{2}kau-iha.
Where did you see it?	C.	Babaatsi muhtsi ha.
		Where seen ask.
	B.	Tire chasing t'^{1}aua.
		Where ask seen.
Whither do you go?	C.	Babaatsi t'^{2}kuhng ha.
		Where go ask.
	B.	Acha kaung t'^{3}aintidi.
		Ask where go.
Give me some tobacco.	C.	Bachab maa.
		Tobacco give.
	B.	Ake twakka.
		Give tobacco.
I have none	C.	t'^{2}gaiah. Bachab oreke-aa.
		It fails. Tobacco have not.
	B.	Mm t'^{1}koang t'^{2}au t'^{2}keikei.
		I man none have.
Take it	C.	Uh.
	B.	t'^{2}kaa.
Are you thirsty?	C.	t'^{2}kaantsi t'^{2}kang.
		Thirstest thou thirst.
	B.	Acha t'^{1}keunja.
		Ask thirst.

I am thirsty	C.	t'²kaare t'¹kang.
		Thirst I thirst.
	B.	Mm t'¹koang t'¹keunja
		I thirst.
Drink, here is water	C.	t'kamma t'³kohaa.
		Water drink.
	B.	t'₁kohaa t'²kaukhe.
		Water drink.
You are a good man	C.	Sa-t'³kaina keub.
		You good man.
	B.	Aa t'koang tetéini.
		You man good.
This man is not good	C.	t'³kaina tite t'²naa keub.
		Good not this man.
	B.	hua t'¹koang t'²au teteini.
		This man not good.
Do you know him?	C.	Entse hen keub.
		Know ask man.
	B.	Achaa injii.
		Ask know.
Give me meat	C.	t'²koob maa.
	B.	Ake aa.
You shall come to-morrow	C.	t'aati uh.
		Morrow take.
	B.	t'³uhnkaissi ahat'²gaui.
		Morrow.
You must come again	C.	t'²kaaba ha.
		Come ask.
	B.	Aa kossi t'²kangsi

APPENDIX.

No. 2.

Upon the Language of the Beetjuans.

ALTHOUGH this has been already mentioned as a dialect of the Koossa language, and that there is a striking resemblance in the radical words of both, yet the same differences are to be found as between two dialects of any European language. That of the Beetjuans is full-toned, soft, and pleasing to the ear; rich in simple sounds, poor in diphthongs, and is spoken slowly and in short sentences. It is deficient in some of the simple sounds of the Koossas; but it has also some not known to them. The snorting of the Hottentots does not prevail among the Beetjuans; and the *f*, with all the relative sounds, is wholly wanting: the croaking *r*, however, occurs in many words, and the cluck with the tongue, which I also distinguish here by the mark -, is much more prevalent than among the Koossas. What is said of the declamation and of the construction of the language among the latter, is equally applicable to the Beetjuans; but in the use of the auxiliaries, and the preceding mute syllable, there is a great difference. They do not mark the relations of time, like them, by the declension of the pronouns, but have actual auxiliary verbs: *acho*, have, for the past—*rata*, will or shall, for the future. They have no word to represent the idea *his;* nor have they, like the Koossas, augmentatives by introducing the *m*, *n*, *am*, or *in;* but they have the less occasion for these, as their language, from not having the croaking in the throat, and from not being overcharged with words that begin with vowels, is very easy to be spoken.

The annexed vocabulary, I collected, with great diligence, from the mouths of the Beetjuans themselves: some particular remarks I have subjoined in their proper places. It is true, that upon our journey into the country, the missionary Kok imparted to me many observations which he had made upon the language; but none are put down here upon credit only; all have been proved and corrected by my own experience. The two young men of this nation who accompanied us in our return, gave me moreover a fine opportunity for extending my enquiries.

VOCABULARY

Of Words of the Beetjuan Language.

A man	Muhntŏ.
Meo, people	Baatŏ.
A husband	Monuhna.
A wife	Massari, Bassari.*
A pregnant woman	Magatza.
A father	Raacho.†
A mother	Maacho.
A child	Unjana.‡
A youth	Mossihman.
A virgin	Mossisanna.
A brother or sister	Naka.
An elder brother	Muchuluäh.
A younger brother	Minna.
A king, a master	Murinna.
A slave, a servant	Mutjanka.

The head	Kocho.
The hair	Murihr.
An eye	Liklo.
The eyebrows	Loossi.
The ear	Zäbe.
The nose	Ongkŏ.
The mouth	Mulumŏ.
The tongue	Lolehmi.
The teeth	Meno.
The beard	Litehro.
The neck	T'ham.
The breast	Sehuba ‖
The back	Makotja.
The body	Mmele.

---

* *B* and *m* are very often changed among the Beetjuans, in the same manner as was the case in many of the Grecian dialects. *Ari* is here the feminine termination, as among the Knossas the syllable *asi*.

† The Beetjuans swear by their father, *Kar raacho*. The Corans make use of death as a word to excite terror, and as a curse; *t'koobi muhtsi*, death sees thee; or, *t'koobi kamsi*, death take thee.

‡ *Ana*, or *jana*, is also in this language a diminutive termination.

‖ As the Beetjuans have not the *f*, they put another sound instead into the word where the Knossas use it; thus of *Isifuhba* is made *Sehuhba*; of *Imfeeni*, *Tjöni*; of *Imfuhbu*, *Kuhbu*; of *Infuhla*, *Puhla*, &c. &c.

The stomach	Mochohru.
The entrails	Mmala.
The arm	Maboch.
The hand	Sseaakja.
The finger	Munona.
A nail	Nonaala.
The thigh	Siruhpi.
The leg	Lessaapo.
The foot	Lonaŏ.

Wild animals in general	Polleholle.
An ape	Tjöni.
A lion	Tau.
A leopard	Onkoäh.†
A grey wild cat	P'haach.
A red wild cat	T'huani.
A mottled wild cat	Zipa.
A hyena	P'heeri.
A jackal	P'húkujeh.
A dog	Intja.
An elephant	Kau.
A rhinoceros	K'homba.
A river-horse	Kuhhu.
A giraffe	T'hókoa.
Cattle in general	Komo.
A bull	Paaha.
A cow	Komòna-namagări.
An ox	Komotuna.
A draught ox	Makàba.
A calf	Namàni.
A buffalo	Nerri.
An eland antelope	Pohu.
A kudu antelope	T'holla.
A hartebeest	K'ham.
A gnu	K'hokong.
A springbock	Zebe.
A sheep	Ongkuh.
A goat	Puhri.

---

* *Ongkŏ* signifies the nose; probably the name of the leopard is therefore derived from the acuteness of his smell. In like manner *zabe* signifies the ear, *zebe* a springbock, doubtless from the quickness of hearing in this animal.

A horse, a quagga	P'heetsi.
A bird	Nonjani.
A vulture.....	Manoug.
An ostrich	Intjeh.
A crow	Makakābi.
Fish	Tjapi.

Flesh	Nama.
Fat.....	Mahur.
Milk.....	Maassi.
Fresh milk.....	Maassi lobehsa.
Honey	Rinoossi.
Corn, bread.....	Mabehli.
Victuals in general	Lijo.
Tobacco.....	Montjuko.
A pipe	Kakauna.
A house, a hut, a waggon ...	Moossi or Ontjuh
A garment, a cloak.....	Kobŏ.
A head-dress	Kurru.
Sandals	Sittako.
Beads	Sehacha.
Buttons	Thalama.
A bag.....	K'heetsi.
A hassagai	Leruhmo.
An arrow.....	Musa.
A bow	Bura.
A quiver	K'hobuhlo.

Land, the field	Lehaatsi.
A river	Malappo.
A spring.....	Noka.
Water.....	Meetsi.
A tree	Moka.
A shrub	Sekar.
A thicket.....	Sekarre.
Wood.....	Loehuhm.
Fire	Mulehlo.
The air, the heavens.....	Maaro.
The sun	Leetshaatsi.
The moon	Köhri.
The stars	Linaleeri.
Rain	Puhla.

Thunder	Tjarre.
Lightning	Lechorima.
The wind	Pechu.
A mountain	Majeh.
A hill	Majanna.
Stone, a rock	Lintsjoäh.
Hard, heavy stone	Linjakomo.*
Soft stone	Linjapuri.
Smooth stone	Tootsjo.
A road, a path	Sela.
Day	Motsichari.
Night	Bussecho.
Twilight	Bussecho-Busschlo. (Dark, clear.)
Red morning	Mukuku.
The year	Ongacha.†
Summer	Sclehmo.
Winter	Marihcha.
To-day	Chompijeno.
To-morrow	Kammuhscho.

Good	Manati.
Bad	Bussuhla.
Great	Buchula.
Small	Patsijana.
Young	Khubuka.
Old	Muhtsjuäh.
Warm	Choteetsi.
Cold	Seraami.
Ill, sick	Bukuhk.
Dead	Sjoa.
Alive	Sirihle.
Light, in weight	Meheehu.
Heavy	Tatta.‡
Rich	Koossi.
Poor	Malaala.

* Literally, *ox-stone*, as the following is literally *goat-stone*.

† The Beetjuans divide the year into thirteen lunar months, some of which are named after certain colours. In this designation of the seasons they seem to be followed by the Corans, by whom they are still more used and better known.

‡ This word signifies equally *hard, strong, hasty, quick*; and, to describe a high degree of any of these qualities, it is frequently repeated.

APPENDIX.

Long	Telehle.
High	Chorimo.*
Alone	Heessi or Noossi.
White	Mosjeho.
Black	Muhntju.
Red	Kuhnu.
Red-spotted	T'hammacha.
Black-spotted	Tilluhri.†

To eat	Jah.‡
To drink	Noa.
To sleep	Roballa.
To smoak	Chocha.
To hunt	Tjuma.
To ensnare	Tjoarra.
To strike	Bectsa.
To hit	Bectsahula.
To miss	Bcetsahoossa.
To fight	Ent'hŏa.
To stand	Eema.
To lie down, to be at rest	Rula.
To rise up	Zchuca.
To go	Z'hamma.
To run	Z'hamma tatta.
To dance	Piua.
To sing	Opehla.
To beg	Rapchla.
To speak	Bua.
To lie	Maaka.
To laugh	Zccha.
To see	Bona.‖
To hear, to feel	Hukoa.
To give	Na.
To take	Mch.
To have, to possess	Najo.

---

* This is one of those words, that, in the sense in which it is used, has a great resemblance to the Arabic and Chaldäic. Words with an Arabic sound are, however, principally to be observed in the names of the tribes, and of the chiefs.

† The two last words are applied principally to distinguishing the different cattle.

‡ In this language the verbs end almost all in *a*, and very few have more than two syllables.

‖ The hammer, being a tool with which they have only lately become acquainted, has, therefore, received from them the derivative appellation of *sebonje*.

To hold, to grasp	S j u a r r a.
To hack, to cut.....	C h o r e m m a.
To slice	L o o t s a.

I	K e.
I myself.....	K e - n a h.
Thou	O i n a or O.
He	M u h n t o - s i h.* (The man here.)
We.....	T j o n a.
Ye	N o - i n a or No.
They	B a a t o - s i h.

Mine	A a m i.
Thine.....	C h à g o.
His.....	A k k a m u h n t o.
Us	A t j o n a.

These positive pronouns are, as among the Koossas, substantives, to which the idea of possession is attached.

This — *sih*, or *tio* (not *zio)* is, as among the Koossas, a demonstrative article added to the words.

This thing	S s e h l o - s i h.
This dog.....	I n t j a - s i h.
There is the dog.....	I n t j a - t i o.
What?	N o.
What is that?.....	N o s s e h l o - s i h.
Who is that man?	N o m u h n t o - t i o.
Where? wherein? whither?..	K a i.
There	K o a h.
How.....	I n g.
How large?.....	B u c h u h l u - i n g.
A little.....	J a n a.
Very hasty.....	T a t t a.
Only, simply	H e e l a.

Mongaheela, the number *one*—*Ke z'hama heela*, I go only so, I wander—*Nama si heela*, this meat only; that is to say, this is all the meat I have: all that was given me. This *heela* precedes almost all particles with various significations; it always ends the phrase, and increases the force, like other particles, by repetition.

* The s at the beginning of a syllable is always sharp.

Much	Itzinzi.
Very much	Itzinzin-zi.
Yes	Eh.
No	Njaa.
Not	Chasih or Chagoh.

Exclamations.

To express astonishment, admiration	O-ŏ.
Joy, applause	Ehii-O-ih.
Suspicion, distrust	O-ah.
Pain	Uhsch.
An oath	Karr-re.

Numerals.

One	Mongahcela.
Two	Babeeri.
Three	Tharro or Bararro.
Four	Innni.
Five	———
Six	T'hanno.
Seven	Liasjupa
Eight	Arrinnni.
Nine	———
Ten	Sjume.

The numbers are commonly expressed among the Beetjuans by fingers held up, so that the word is rarely spoken: many are even unacquainted with these numerals, and never employ any thing but the sign. It therefore occasioned me no small trouble to learn the numerals; and I could by no means arrive at any denomination for the numbers *five* and *nine*. Beyond ten even the most learned could not reckon, nor could I make out by what signs they ever designated these higher numbers. For the rest, the resemblance between the proportional numbers of three and six, of four and eight, is worthy of remark. The word for the number ten is the same in both the Caffre dialects, and accords with that given both by Sparrman and Mr. Barrow, though the rest of my numerals differ essentially from theirs.

Specimens of Phrases.

Good day	K r u m c h l a or C h u r i m u r i h s a.
Whence come you?.....	O z'h a. k a i. (Thou comest whence.)
I come from Koossi	K e z'h a k o a h K o o s s i. (I come thence ——.)
What is thy name?	L i n a c h a a g o i n g. (Name thine what.)
I am a colonist.....	K e M a k u a.* (I colonist.)
Have you seen any Bosjesmans?	O - a c h o b o n a M a k a u t u. (Thou hast seen Bosjesmans.)
I have seen none.....	K e c h a s i h h e e l a. (I not so only.†)
Nor I neither	K e n a h c h a s i h. (I myself not.)
They have stolen some oxen..	A c h o m e h k o m o n a. (Have taken oxen.)
Who will follow and bring them back ?.....	T j o n a z'h a m m a s j u a r r a t a t t a t a t t a. (Who go hold fast fast.)
I am hungry	K e b o l a k e t j a l a. (I suffer I hunger.)
I am thirsty	K e b o l a k e l i n j o r a.
I have a pain in my head	K e b o l a k e k o c h o. (I suffer I head.)
Give me some drink	L e e k o a n n o k e n o a h e e l a. (Give here I drink.)
Drink, here is milk.....	N o a m a a s s i - t i o. (Drink milk here.)
There is a party going to hunt	L e e t j u - e h l o p o l l e h o l l e k o a h. (A number armed game there).
They are going to hunt springbocks	R a t a t j u m a Z e b i. (Will hunt Zebi.)
I have seen a great many gallinas	K e a c h o b o n a K'h a k a i t z i n z i.

* This was the name by which they heard the first white man called that ever came into their country; and they now designate by it all foreigners who are not Hottentots or Caffres.

† This is also used to express, *I never thought much about it.*

They are good for nothing ...	C h a g o h m a n a t i.
	(Not good.)
Their flesh is hard	N a m a r a b i h l e t a t t a.
	(Flesh hard very.)
Take him, hold him awhile...	S j u a r r a j a n a.
	(Hold awhile.)
I will go with you	K e z ' h a m m a j a n a.
Whither are you going?.....	O - z ' h a m m a k a i.*
	(You go whither.)
I am going to the Kuruhman..	K e k h a m m a k o a h K u r u m a n a.
Do you go alone?.....	Z ' h a m m a h e e s i O i n a.
	(Go alone thither.)
Are you hungry?	T j a l a b o l a O - i n a.
	(Hunger pain thee.)
The sun is going down	L e e t s h a a t s i s j u l e.
	(Sun dies.)
The sun rises	L e e t s h a a t s i l e e t j a b i h l e.
I am weary	K e a c h o l a p p a o r k e l a p p i h l e.
We will go home and sleep...	Z h a m m a r o b a l l a n a M o o s s i.
	(Go sleep at home.)
Go along	Z ' h a m m á j a.
Go a little out of the way....	Z ' h a m m a j á n a.
Give me tobacco.....	L e e k o a n n o m o n t j u k o.
I have none.....	C h a g o n a s e e p i.
	(Not have any.)
I will not.....	K e c h a n n a.
	(I decline.)
I will readily, I am ready....	K e a c h o r a t i.
	(I have willed.)
I do not understand	N a c h a s i h u k ŏ a.
	(Not hear.)
Have you found water?.....	N a h u k ŏ a m e e t s i.
Have you tasted the bread?..	N a h u k ŏ a m a b e e l i.
I smoke tobacco.....	M o n t j u k o k e h u k ŏ a h e e l a.†

---

* Although the same word signifies *to go*, and *to come*, it will be observed, by comparing this example with the above, that the pronouncing the word short gives it a different sense; and that by this alone is determined whether the moving *to* or *from* a place is intended. I have observed the like with other words, without being able to find the circumstances under which it was done.

† The same word, *hukoa*, signifies to hear, to smoak, to taste, to feel, to perceive, to understand, to find, to be aware of. From hence it is easy to see how poor the language is still, and how much this want of precision in the words requires the assistance of gesticulation.

I have killed a kudu	Ke acho beetsa T'holla.
I hit it directly	Acho beetsa hula hula.
Have you seen a leopard? ...	O-acho bona Ongkoäh.
Where did you see him?.....	O-bona-kai.
	(You saw where.)
Do you know the river?.....	O-ina heetsi Malappo-sih.
Is the river deep?.....	Chorimo malappo-sih.
The river is deep.....	Malappo-sih chorimo.
Give me an egg to eat.....	Leekoanno maji ke jah.
	(Give egg I eat.)
You shall have it to-morrow..	Ikekeh kammuhscho.
	(Wait a little, morrow.)
You must return	O charocha chapeh.
	(You come again back.)

INDEX.

A.

Accident, a colonist caught in a snare for wild beasts, 16

Acorus Palmita, or Palmiet reeds, this plant described, 118

Æthiopian tribes, Bruce's account of them compared with those of ancient writers, 47, note—Like the modern Bosjesmans, *ib.*—Pliny's account of these tribes, 49, note—And Pomponius Mela's, *ib.*

African Colonists, their manner of travelling, 38

Africanus, the Hottentot, account of him and his depredations, 226

Agriculture, course of it in the colony, 155

Aloe perfoliata, or quiver plant, 198

Anderson, an English missionary, his exertions in civilizing the Savages, 243—His habitation, 257—Description of him, *ib.*

Animals, a profusion of wild ones in the Karree Mountains, 211

Ants, the white, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44

Arbutus, or strawberry tree, 104

Aromatic plants, salutary food to animals, 24

Atjar, an African dish described, 84

Auctions, how carried on in the colony, 80

Auge, the blind botanist, the author's visit to him, 133

Ausspannplatzen, the principal ones in the Karroo, 65

B.

Barilla, extracted by the author from plants in the colony, 356

Barringtonia speciosa, a tree planted by Captain Cook at St. Helena, 365

Barrow, *Mr.* strictures on some of his opinions of the African colonists, 5

Bastard Eland, a species of antelope, 283

Bastard Hottentots, arrival of the travellers at their settlements, 239—First knowledge of the existence of this republic, 240—Situation in which it was found by the travellers, 241—Institutions, 244—Reception of the party, *ib.*—The small pox prevalent among these people, 248—Their traffic with the colonists, 259—Deserving the attention of the government, 260—Cases of two who were wounded by Bosjesmans, 188

Baviansklooff, visited again by the author, 124—His last visit to it, 361—An inn established there, *ib.*

Beard-man, a Bosjesman so called, account of him, 190—His death, 361—The author gets his skull, *ib.*

Beetjuana, unfortunate expedition of a party of English thither, 360

Beetjuans. Arrival of the author and his party in their country, 288—First interview with the king, 291—The king returns the visit, 292—Visit to the capital, 296—Audience of the king, *ib.*—Presents made to him, 297—The capital described, 298—Construction of the houses, 299—Unsuspecting behaviour of the Beetjuans, 290, 299, 307—The high-priest, 300, 314—Population, 301—Names of persons, 302—Carvings on the sand stone in the mountains, *ib.*—Entertainment given to the king, 304—Plurality of wives, 306—Market opened with the people, 308—The women, 310—The king's wives, 311—The king's presents to the visitors, 312—Love of snuff and tobacco, 295, 313, 318—Cleanliness, 314—Hard work done by the women, 315—Traffic in slaves, 316—Prophetic dice, 317—Mode of expressing astonishment, *ib.*—Their dances, 318—Reasons of the travellers for quitting the country, *ib.*—Their departure, 321—Corporeal structure of the Beetjuans, 323—General characteristics, *ib.*—The different tribes, 324—Their food, 326—Cloathing and ornaments, 327—Works of art, 328—Their institutions, 329—The kingly office, *ib.*—The princes, 330—Their wars, *ib.*—Their weapons, *ib.*—Their festivals of victory, *ib.*—Consecration of their cattle, 331—Their belief in charms and amulets, 332—Ideas with respect to the Deity, *ib.*—Superstition concerning a serpent, 322

Beetjuan youths, two, join the travellers on their return, 336

Berg-valley, the district of, very fertile, 100

Bokkeveld, *Warm*, one of the most fertile parts of the colony, 161

Bones, eaten by the diseased oxen, 349

Bonteberg, a great lurking place for the Bosjesmans, 178

Bosjesmans, four skeletons of in a field, 21—Those of the Sea-cow river tolerably peaceable, 39—Visit of some to General Janssens, on the Orange river, 42—Their stature and colour, *ib.*—Their physiognomy, 43—Modes of snaring animals, *ib.*—Live much on the banks of rivers, *ib.*—Their modes of catching fish, 44—Objects on which they feed, *ib.*—Extremities to which they are sometimes reduced for food, 45—Their great propensity to robbery and plunder, *ib.*—They have no settled residence, 46—Their voracity, *ib.* and 219—Indolence which follows it, *ib.*—Make themselves nests in the bushes, *ib.*—Hence their name derived, 47—Called by some travellers Wood Hottentots, *ib.*—No household utensils, *ib.*—Their mode of drinking, 48—The matrimonial tie among them, *ib.*—No social union, 49—No individual names, *ib.*—Compared with the ancient Æthiopian tribes, 47, note, 49, note—Their passion for destruction, 50—Animosity of the colonists against them, *ib.*—The more peaceable to be distinguished by their dress, 53—Names given to some of them by the colonists, *ib.*—Their ornaments, 54—Their exertions to get a river-horse that had been shot, *ib.*—And to save a colonist from being drowned, 55—One taken into the service of General Janssens, 59—Depredations committed by them, 169—More depredations, 171—Complaints made against them by some Caffres, 175—More complaints, 177—Lurk very much about the Bonteberg, 178—Other complaints, 188—Conspiracy of some to murder their master, 189—Several taken prisoners, 190—Request to the Governor to send troops against them, 191—Suggestions of the author for civilizing them, *ib.*—Inhospitable nature of their country, 193—Animals that inhabit it, *ib.*—Great scarcity of water, *ib.*—Corporeal structure of these people, *ib.*—Acuteness of some senses and dulness of others, 194—Their societies, *ib.* Nearest to brutes of any class of men, *ib.*—Their perseverance, 195—Their address in making signals, 196—Instances of their extraordinary acuteness of sight, *ib.*—Their weapons, *ib.*—Poison used by them for their arrows, *ib.*—Their manner of using it, 197—Mode of ascertaining the most poisonous serpents, 198—Dexterity in catching serpents, *ib.*—The quivers for their arrows, *ib.*—Manner of lurking after game, 199—A party seen in the Karree mountains, 210—One at the natron lake, 217—Remarks upon him, *ib.*—Intoxicated with smoaking, 218—He steals away, *ib.*—Five more met by the travellers, *ib.*—Two more, 224—Ape-like appearance and manners of these people, *ib.*—A family met beyond the Orange river, 229—Ugliness of the children, 230—Their forwardness, *ib.*—A party falsely accused of setting fire to a house, 358—A Hottentot servant killed by them, *ib.*

Botma, a missionary, his zeal in the cause, 184—Sacrifices made by him to support it, 187

Bread, scarcity of it in the colony, 120

Breedi, signification of the word, 82, note

Buffalo, a man nearly trodden to death by one, 215, note—Other instances of a similar kind, 255—A buffalo shot, 276—Peculiarity in the rib-bones of this animal, *ib.*

Buffalo's thorn, a shrub so called, 223

Bulbs, a sort much eaten by the Bosjesmans, 45—The travellers made ill by eating some bulbs, 337.

C.

Caffres, a party of, come to beg of the travellers, 175—Another party, 225—Their emigration from their own country, and subsequent history, *ib.*

Camphor tree, several in one particular spot, 104

Carp, abundance caught, 181

Caterpillars, a remarkable train of, 346

Cattle places, many farmers have them on the coast, 119

Church, a very handsome new-built one, at Stellenbosch, 97

Climate, beyond the Orange river, remarks on it, 238

Cold, sufferings of the travellers from it, 334, 342

Colonists, not very blameable for their animosity to the Bosjesmans, 50—Comfortable situations of those about the Berg river, 99—Their modes of living, 355—Their devotions, 356

Colony attacked by the English, 362—Capitulates, 363

Compass-mountain, height of, 2

Corans, the oldest original inhabitants north of the Orange river, 252—A totally distinct race from the Bosjesmans, 253—An enervated people, *ib.*—Their cloathing, *ib.*—Celebrated for training oxen, *ib.*—No regular habitations, 254—Form of government, *ib.*—

Nicknames common among them, 255—Instances of several wounded by buffaloes, *ib.*—The Coran women, 256—Their extraordinary conformation, *ib.*—Their dances, 337—Their music, 338

Costumes, great variety among the travellers, 263

Cowan, Dr. unfortunate expedition of him and others to Beetjuana, 360

Cynanchum obtusifolium, or monkey's cord, vast length of its runners, 131

Cyprinus, abundance of, caught, 181.

D.

Danster, a Caffre, account of him and his party, 225

David and Jantje, two Hottentots, murdered by the Bosjesmans, 266

De Beer, the colonist, his singular character, 69—Names of his children, 70

De Clerk, a colonist, his productive farm, 32—Tyranny exercised by his mother, 33

Desserts, the excellent ones in the colony, 84

Devil's bush, botanical visit of the author to it, 130

Devotion, much time spent in it by the colonists, 356

Dishes, several African ones described, 83

Dogs, the breed among the African colonists described, 13—The Bosjesman dogs, 272—They never bark, 273

Dyke, curious account of one made in the Berg river, 97.

E.

Education, an institution for the purpose of, 97

Eland, the largest species of antelope, described, 23

Elephant, a colonist killed by one, 213

Elsenberg, a farm celebrated for its fertility, 100

Enchanted spring, and Enchanted mountain, 20

Epidemic disease, a terrible one among the troops at the Cape, 145

Everlasting flowers, much prized in the colony, 121.

F.

Farm, Meyburgh's excellent one, much visited by strangers, 110

Fashion, women in the colony dressed in the height of it, 123

Feathers, the ostrich's much valued in the colony, 27

Fern, an extraordinary large species in the Island of St. Helena, 367

Ferry, one over the Breede river, 128

Festival, a wedding one celebrated by the Hottentots, 231

Fiefs, the nature of them in the colony, 93

Field-Cornet Marits, accused of misconduct, 172—Honourably acquitted, 174

Fig trees, extraordinary size of them, 161

Fires, two alarming ones at Stellenbosch, 102—Fires in the kraals, not uncommon, 168

Fish, a prodigious draught of in the Riet river, 181

Flamingo, a Bosjesman servant, so called by General Janssens, 59

Frost, a pretty severe one, 177—Astonishment of the Mozambique slaves at it, *ib.*

G.

Geitjes, a species of lizard, reputed poisonous, 167

Gemsbock, a very daring kind of antelope, 23—Defends itself with its horns against dogs and wild beasts, *ib.*

Gerboas, difficulty of catching them, 340

Giraffes, two seen by the travellers, 277—Extraordinary manner in which this animal moves, *ib.*—One shot, 279—Excellent food, 281—Another killed, 282—But carried away by the Bosjesmans, *ib.*—Four more seen, 283—And afterwards ten more, *ib.*—Chased, but none killed, 284

Gnu, a species of antelope described, 40—One sent a present to the Empress Josephine of France, *ib.*—Called by the Africans *het wilde beest*, *ib.*

Goedhart, (good heart,) a Bosjesman so called, 151—Bad character given of him by his comrades, 189—The author and others go in search of him, 206

Gorrah, the 't gorrah, a Hottentot musical instrument, 232

Great river, called by Colonel Gordon the Orange river, 40—Arrival of the travellers at the Great river's gate, 220

Green-hill, a beautiful hill so called, 93.

H.

Harpuisbosjes, or rosin tree, description of it, 176

Heroism, a characteristic of the colonist women, 34

Hex-valley, the, described, 81

Hommes des forets, the Bosjesmans so called by some French writers, 47

Horses, those of the colonists well trained for hunting, 211
Hottentots, their vengeance to dead bodies, 21—Deplorable fate of two murdered by Bosjesmans, 265, 266
Hottentot-figs, a fruit so called, 45
Hottentots' Holland kloof, 104—Fine view from this mountain, 105
Hunting parties, interesting ones in the journey to Beetjuana, 211—Address of the horses in them, *ib.*
Hurricane, a violent one in the colony, 361
Hussar, the author taken for an old one for one of Prince Lichtensteiu's family, 76
Hyena, the spotted, described, 15.

I.

Ill-humour of a colonist and his wife, 127—Curious mode of giving vent to it, 138
Indolence, extreme of the Hottentot converts, 186
Inns, nature of them in the colony, 103—A place fixed on for establishing one in the Karroo, 167—One established at Baviansklooof, 361
Invalid soldiers, their comfortless situation in Africa, 77
Itch, a disorder resembling it, among the oxen, 341

J.

James Town, St. Helena, its situation and strength, 365
Janssens, General, extract from his Journal, 37—Visits the Bosjesmans on the Sea-cow river, *ib.*—Death of his son, 348
Jantje and David, two Hottentots, murdered by Bosjesmans, 268
John Bloom's fountain, bad character of Bloom, 271
Jokes played upon a colonist by the travellers, 114—Practised among each other, 216
Josephine, Empress, a gnu presented to her, 40.

K.

Kalebassbreedi, an African dish, described, 82
Kambroo, a bulb so called, 45
Karree mountains, first view of them, 206—Described, 208—Large flock of ostriches and quaggas there, 209
Kerri, an African dish, described, 83
Kicherer, the missionary, his institution at the Sack river, 183—Ill success of it, *ib.*—His return to Europe, 184—Interesting particulars respecting the institution, 185—Wretched state of some habitations connected with it, 345
Kok, Cornelius, father to the missionary, probably known to Le Vaillant, 252
Kok, Solomon, the missionary, first meeting of the travellers with him, 235—Alarms excited among some of the party by his followers, *ib.*—Engaged to join the party, 236—Enquiry into his conduct by the government, 360—His honourable acquittal, *ib.*—His death, *ib.*
Komberg, height of this mountain, 2
Kraals, the dung in some on fire, 168
Krieger, a colonist banished among the Corans, 201—He joins the travelling party, *ib.*—Description of him, *ib.*—His brother's grave, 212—Manner in which the latter lost his life, 213
Kweek valley, fertility of De Beer's farm there, 67—Medical plants raised by him for the apothecaries, 68—Quantity of fruits dried there in one year, *ib.*—Character of De Beer, 69.

L.

Laboratory, one erected at Zwellendam, 219—Unfortunately blown up, 147
Lattaignant, a colonist, caught in a snare for hyenas, 16
Leeuwenkuil, a missionary village; described, 258
Leopard, combat between one and the dogs, 351—Superior beauty of these animals when running wild, 352
Lions, the proper mode of attacking them, 29—Two anecdotes of lion-hunting, 30—Three different sorts of lions in the colony, 31—A large number assembled together, 74—Extraordinary manner in which one was shot by a colonist, 179
Little-ride, the term how used by the colonists, 79
Lizards, a poisonous species called geitjes, 167
Locusts, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44—Manner in which they are caught, *ib.*—A vast swarm of them, 250—Observations upon these animals, 251—Another swarm, 339

M.

Marits, the field-cornet, accused of misconduct, 172
Merwe, Van der, the mixture of children in his family, 82
Mesembryanthemum, a species of this plant eaten by the Bosjesmans, 45

Meyburgh, his excellent farm on the Eerste river, 110—All sorts of trades carried on there, *ib.*—His journeys to the Orange river, 111—Nice works performed by his daughters, 112

Missionary, curious account of one at Goudinie, 86

Missionary Institution, Kicherer's, at the Sack river, 183—The church, 185—Extreme indolence of the pupils, 186—Order of the devotions there, 187—Clothing of the pupils, *ib.*—Their occupations, *ib.*

Monkey's cord, extreme length of the runners, 131—Sticks made from the stem of this plant, *ib.*

Moon, an eclipse of, 338

Morkel, Captain, his farm, 113—His hospitality, 114—Jokes played upon him, *ib.*

Mostertshoek, the pass of, described, 160

Mozombique slaves, their astonishment at seeing ice, 177

Murder of a colonist by a Malay slave, 156

Musical instrument, a Hottentot one described, 232—Notes played upon it, 233.

N.

Natron, a remarkable circumstance attending it, 74—A thick crust of natron about the Riet river, 178—A natron lake, 216—Another, 217—Another, 218

Nieuweveld mountains described, 35

Noxious animals, credulity of the colonists upon this subject, 167.

O.

Oaks, plantations of in the Warm Bokkeveld, 162

Orange river, the name given by Colonel Gordon to the Great river, 40—Subject to terrible inundations, *ib.*—Lost in the sands on the western coast of Africa, 41—Journeys of the colonist Meyburgh along its course, 111—Arrival of the author and his party upon its banks, 221—Description of the river, *ib*—Arduous passage of it, 223—Bands of robbers settled on its banks, 226, 227—Extraordinary curve in the river, 229—More remarks on this curve, 234—Danger of the travellers in recrossing the river, 340

Ostriches, their habits particularly described, 25—Their nests, *ib.*—Their eggs a favourite food with the Hottentots, *ib.*—Their feathers, 27—A large flock seen in the Karree mountains, 209

Otter, a fish-otter, from the Hex river, given to the author, 82

Oxen, often unable to work from the scanty supply of food, 119—Bones often eat by the diseased ones, 349.

P.

Paarl mountain, the name whence derived, 98—Errors in some descriptions given of it, *ib.*

Paarl, village of, described, 97—A curious work to restrain the waters of the river, *ib.*

Palmiet reeds, *Acorus palmita*, numbers growing in several of the rivers, 118

Parents, respect shewn them by their children, 34

Partridge, an English physician of that name, drowned, 118

Partridges, a vast profusion of, 283

Pasties, great variety at an African dinner, 84

Phœnomenon, a curious one, with regard to some of the rivers, 156

P'halla, a species of antelope, described, 334

Pintadoes, vast numbers of them, 283—Their eggs excellent, *ib.*

Pliny, his account of the ancient African tribes, 49, note

Plunderers, a band of Christian ones on the Orange river, 227

Poison, wild beasts killed by baits of poisoned flesh, 17—Different sorts of poison used by the Bosjesmans for their arrows, 196

Pomponius Mela, his account of the ancient African tribes, 49, note

Pools, several in the Riet river, full of fish, 181

Prehnite, a very fine one found by the author, 180

Protestantism, the genuine spirit of, where to be found, 96.

Q.

Quagga, a tame one, 162—One killed, extreme wildness of these animals, 204—A large flock seen in the Karree mountains, 209

Quagga fountain, scanty supply of water there, 182

Quartz, *green*, hills of this mineral, 218

Quiver-plant, a sort of aloe so called, and why, 198.

R.

Ravens, a great number assembled about the camp, 212

Red-broken-rock, a curious one so called, near the Orange river, 234

Red-ebony-tree, hardness of the wood, 339

Refugees, French, a number settled on the

Berg river, 95—The genuine spirit of Protestantism retained among them, 96
Rensburg, a colonist, killed by a lion, 31
Riet river's gate, the pass of, 178
Ring mountains, definition of this appellation, 163
Rivers, a curious phœnomenon relative to some in Africa, 156
River-horses, or Sea-cows, abundance in the Orange river, 42—One shot by the followers of General Janssens, 54—Carried away by the stream, *ib.*—Efforts of the colonists and Bosjesmans to recover it, *ib.*
Roodezand kloof described, 92
Rosin tree, the, 176
Ryno's vale, a valley so called in the island of St. Helena, 367

S.

Sack river's gate, pass of, 182—Latitude of it ascertained, 203
Saint Helena, island of, the author arrives there, 363—Description of the island, 365—A tree planted by Captain Cook, *ib.*—Departure from the island, 368
Salicornia, a saline plant, barilla extracted from it, 356
Salsola, another saline plant, 356
Sambal, an African dish, described, 84
Sambeh, the Caffre, two nephews of his met by the travellers, 225—Both cross-eyed, 228
Scriptures expounded to the colonists by the author, 357
Sea cows, or river horses, abundance in the Orange river, 42—Modes of catching them among the hunters, *ib.*—Pits for snaring them made by the Bosjesmans, 43
Sea-cow river, the country about not altered from its original state, 37
Serpents eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44—Ideas of the Bosjesmans concerning the most poisonous, 198—Superstition of the Beetjuans with regard to a serpent, 322
Sheath-fish, the *Silurus anguillaris*, resembling them, 343
Shrub, a remarkable one, excellent for making hedges, 220
Sibihlong, curious caves of, 275
Silurus anquillaris, numbers of this fish caught, 343
Sigeb, a Coran, with his followers, met by the travellers, 254—Some account of him, 255—Called in the colony Slapparm, *ib.*—He rejoins the party, 335—His apprehended fate, 341
Signals established about the country, 139
Skeletons, four of Bosjesmans, lying out in the field, 21
Slave, a Malay one, murders his master, 156
Small-pox, reported by the Caffres to prevail in the country, 228—The news confirmed by some missionaries, 235—Prevalent among the Bastard Hottentots, 248—Ideas concerning the native country of this disease, *ib.*—Broke out among the Hottentots, 344
Snares, those made for catching hyenas, 16—A colonist severely hurt by one, *ib.*
Snow mountains, the, described, 2
Soda, or barilla, extracted by the author from saline plants, 356
Springs, the African ones often dried up, 18
Spring guns used for shooting wild beasts, 17
Stellenbosch, village, or town of, 102—Twice much damaged by fire, *ib.*—Bad situation of the tradespeople there, *ib.*
Stell Van der, various useful objects introduced by him into the colony, 104
Sticks, pretty ones made of the plant called monkey's cord, 131
Strawberry tree, or arbutus, 104
Straw hats, very neat ones made by the African women, 112
Surgeon major, the author appointed to this office in the Hottentot battalion, 145
Sus Æthiopicus, or wild boar, one seen, 32.

T.

Tame Bosjesmans, a conspiracy of some to murder their master, 189
Tanqua, a river, dangerous from its overflowings, 168
Termes fatale, or white ants, eaten by the Bosjesmans, 44
Time, a Hottentot's curious mode of defining it, 71
Tjaard, Van der Walt, his dexterity in shooting a lion, 30
Toit Du, a numerous family in the colony, 83
Towerberg, many mountains in the colony so called, 20, note
Towerfontein, the name explained, 20
Trading class, their uncomfortable situation in the towns, 102
Trial of Marits, the field-cornet, for misconduct, 173—Acquittal, 174
Trithorn, a shrub so called, 210
Tromp, a missionary, troubles excited by him, 96
Tyger mountain, fine view from it, 153
Tyranny practised by a colonist woman over her son, 33

V.

Vaccine Inoculation introduced into the colony, 353

Valley, a curious rugged one, among the Black mountains, 73

Vegetation, rapidity of it in Africa, 137

View, very fine one from Hottentots' Holland kloof, 105—Another from the Tyger mountains, 153—Another above the Karroo, 170 Another on the Orange river, 237

Vogel valley, or Bird valley, a dried lake, described, 93

Vultures, the travellers followed by a number, 212

W.

Wandering men, a class of persons in the colony so called, 66

Warm baths, those in the Black mountain, 140—First stone of a new bath house laid, 361

Warm Bokkeveld, a very fertile district, 161

Water, scanty supply at the Quagga fountain, 182—Great want of it, 214

Water-spout, three thousand sheep destroyed by one, 33

Wax tree, or *Myrica cordifolia*, 142—Manner of collecting the wax, 143—Quality of the candles made from it, *ib.*

Weddings, the manner in which they are celebrated, 79—Celebration of the eve of one, 163—A Hottentot one, 231

Wilde beest, signification of the term, 40

Wild boar, one seen by the travellers, 32

Wild goose, the large African one, 344—Its curious nest, *ib.*

Wolf's bane, a poison used for destroying wild beasts, 17

Wolvehuis, a snare for catching hyenas, 16

Women, manners of those in the colony, 123

Wood Hottentots, a name given by some travellers to the Bosjesmans, 47

Wyk Van, a colonist, the daring manner in which he killed a lion, 179.

Z.

Ziekenhuis, a small cave, why so called, 139.

THE END.

B. CLARKE, Printer, Well Street, London.

406 O 1919